CA Identity Manager™

Administration Guide

12.6.5

This Documentation, which includes embedded help systems and electronically distributed materials (hereinafter referred to as the “Documentation”), is for your informational purposes only and is subject to change or withdrawal by CA at any time. This Documentation is proprietary information of CA and may not be copied, transferred, reproduced, disclosed, modified or duplicated, in whole or in part, without the prior written consent of CA.

If you are a licensed user of the software product(s) addressed in the Documentation, you may print or otherwise make available a reasonable number of copies of the Documentation for internal use by you and your employees in connection with that software, provided that all CA copyright notices and legends are affixed to each reproduced copy.

The right to print or otherwise make available copies of the Documentation is limited to the period during which the applicable license for such software remains in full force and effect. Should the license terminate for any reason, it is your responsibility to certify in writing to CA that all copies and partial copies of the Documentation have been returned to CA or destroyed.

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, CA PROVIDES THIS DOCUMENTATION “AS IS” WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OR NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT WILL CA BE LIABLE TO YOU OR ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY LOSS OR DAMAGE, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, FROM THE USE OF THIS DOCUMENTATION, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, LOST PROFITS, LOST INVESTMENT, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION, GOODWILL, OR LOST DATA, EVEN IF CA IS EXPRESSLY ADVISED IN ADVANCE OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH LOSS OR DAMAGE.

The use of any software product referenced in the Documentation is governed by the applicable license agreement and such license agreement is not modified in any way by the terms of this notice.

The manufacturer of this Documentation is CA.

Provided with “Restricted Rights.” Use, duplication or disclosure by the United States Government is subject to the restrictions set forth in FAR Sections 12.212, 52.227-14, and 52.227-19(c)(1) - (2) and DFARS Section 252.227-7014(b)(3), as applicable, or their successors.

Copyright © 2015 CA. All rights reserved. All trademarks, trade names, service marks, and logos referenced herein belong to their respective companies.

CA Technologies Product References

This document references the following CA Technologies products:

- CA CloudMinder™ Identity Management
- CA Directory
- CA Identity Manager ™
- CA Identity Governance (formerly CA GovernanceMinder)
- CA SiteMinder®
- CA User Activity Reporting
- CA AuthMinder ™

Contact CA Technologies

Contact CA Support

For your convenience, CA Technologies provides one site where you can access the information that you need for your Home Office, Small Business, and Enterprise CA Technologies products. At http://ca.com/support, you can access the following resources:

- Online and telephone contact information for technical assistance and customer services
- Information about user communities and forums
- Product and documentation downloads
- CA Support policies and guidelines
- Other helpful resources appropriate for your product

Providing Feedback About Product Documentation

If you have comments or questions about CA Technologies product documentation, you can send a message to techpubs@ca.com.

To provide feedback about CA Technologies product documentation, complete our short customer survey which is available on the CA Support website at http://ca.com/docs.

Contents

Chapter 1: Role Planning 17

Roles for Identity or Access Management 18
Role Characteristics 18
Role Profile 19
Tasks for the Role 19
Account Templates 19
Member, Admin, and Owner Rules 20
- Scope Rules 21
- Evaluation of Operators 24
- Case-Insensitivity of Rules 25
- Add and Remove Actions 25
- Member Policies 26
- Admin Policies 26

Role Planning Checklist 27

Chapter 2: Admin Roles 29

Admin Roles and Admin Tasks 29
- Admin Roles and CA Identity Manager Environments 29
- Admin Roles and the User Console 30

Create an Admin Role 30
- Begin Admin Role Creation 31
- Define the Admin Role Profile 31
- Select Admin Tasks for the Role 31
- Define Member Policies for an Admin Role 32
- Define Admin Policies for an Admin Role 33
- Define Owner Rules for an Admin Role 33

Verify an Admin Role 34
Allow Users to Self-Assign Roles 34

Chapter 3: Admin Tasks 37

Admin Task Planning 37
- A Sample Admin Task 38

Admin Task Usage Options 41
Default Admin Tasks 42
How to Create a Custom Admin Task 42
Define the Profile of the Task 44

Admin Task Profile Tab 44
Task Configuration Properties 48
Define the Task Scope 49
Search Screen Configuration 50
Choose Tabs for the Task 57
Account Tabs 58
Schedule Tab 60
View Fields in the Task 61
View Role Use 61
Assign Workflow Processes for Events 61
Manage an Active Directory User Store 61
The sAMAccountName Attribute 62
Group Type and Scope 62
External Tasks for Application Functions 63
The External Tab 64
The External URL Tab 65
Advanced Task Components 65
Create Business Logic Task Handlers 66
Admin Tasks and Events 67
Primary and Secondary Events 68
View the Events for a Task 68
Events Generated for Unmodified Profiles 68
Admin Task Processing 69
Synchronous Phase Processing 70
Asynchronous Phase Processing 71
Images for Admin Tasks 73

Chapter 4: Administrators and Users 75

Creating Administrators 75
Roles for Identity or Access Management 76
Delegated Administration 76
Designate a Role Administrator 77
Delegation Steps 78
Delegation Example 78
Creating Users 79
Create the User Profile 81
Assign a Group to a User 81
Assign a Role to a User 82
Assign a Service to a User 83
Allowing Users to Self-Register 83
Self-Service Tasks 85

Access Self Service Tasks 85
Embed a Self-Service Link in a Corporate Web Site 86
Configure Multiple Self-Service Tasks 87
Restrict Access to the Self Manager Role 90

Chapter 5: Password Management 91

Password Management in CA Identity Manager 91
Password Policies Overview 92
Create a Password Policy 93
Enable Additional Password Policies 93
Apply a Password Policy to a Set of Users 94
Configure Password Expiration 96
Configure Password Composition 99
Specify Regular Expressions 100
Set Password Restrictions 102
Configure Advanced Password Options 105
Manage Password Policies 105
Password Policies and Relational Databases 106
CA Identity Manager and SiteMinder Integration Password Criteria 106
Reset Password or Unlock Account 107
Install the Credential Provider 107
Configure the Credential Provider 107
Credential Provider Registry Settings 109
Cube Browser Registry Settings 110
Customize the Powered by Message 112
Reset a Password for a Windows Login 112
Credential Provider Silent Install 113
Synchronizing Passwords on Endpoints 115
Password Synchronization on Windows 115
Password Synchronization on UNIX and Linux 124
Password Synchronization on OS400 138

Chapter 6: Groups 145

Create a Static Group 145
Create a Dynamic Group 146
Dynamic Group Query Parameters 147
Create a Nested Group 148
Static, Dynamic, and Nested Groups Example 150
Group Administrators 151

Chapter 7: Managed Endpoint Accounts 153

Integrating Managed Endpoints 154
Import the Role Definition File 155
Create Correlation Rules 155
Add the Endpoint to the Environment 157
Create an Explore and Correlate Definition 158
Explore and Correlate the Endpoint 160
Synchronize Users, Accounts, and Roles 161
Synchronize Users with Roles 163
Synchronize User with Account Templates 163
Synchronize Endpoint Accounts with Account Templates 165
Reverse Synchronization with Endpoint Accounts 168
How Reverse Synchronization Works 169
Map Endpoint Attributes 170
Policies for Reverse Synchronization 172
Create an Approval Task for Reverse Synchronization 176
Execute Reverse Synchronization 178
Extend Custom Attributes on Endpoints 179
Account Tasks 180
View or Modify Endpoint Accounts 180
Create a Provisioned Account 181
Create an Exception Account 182
Assign Orphan Accounts 182
Assign System Accounts 183
Move Account Task Screen 183
Delete an Endpoint Account 184
Change Password for an Endpoint Account 184
Performing Actions on Several Accounts 185
Advanced Account Operations 185
Change the Global User for an Account 185
How Automatic Exploration Works 186
Delete Accounts 187
Use Delete Pending 187
Recreate Deleted Accounts 188

Chapter 8: Provisioning Roles 189

Provisioning Roles and Account Templates 189
Creating Roles to Assign Accounts 189
Create an Account Template 191
Create a Provisioning Role 192
Role and Template Tasks 193

Import a Provisioning Role 193
Assign New Owners for Provisioning Roles 193
Passwords for Accounts Created by Provisioning Roles 194
Provisioning Role Event Processing Order 194
Enable Nested Roles in an Environment 196
Include a Role in a Provisioning Role 197
Attributes in Account Templates 197
Capability and Initial Attributes 197
Rule Strings in Account Templates 198
Values for Attributes 200
Advanced Rule Expressions 201
Combining Rule Strings and Values 201
Rule Substrings 202
Multivalued Rule Expressions 203
Explicit Global User Attribute Rules 205
Built-in Rule Functions 206
Provisioning Role Performance 208
JIAM Object Cache 208
Session Pooling 209
Provisioning Tasks for Existing Environments 210

Chapter 9: Managed Services (Basic Access Requests) 211

Creating a Service 212
Understand Service Creation 214
Begin Service Creation 215
Define the Service Profile 215
Define Admin Policies for the Service 217
Define Owner Rules for the Service 217
Define Prerequisites for the Service 218
Configure Email Notification for Service Renewal 218
Understand Fulfillment and Revocation Actions 219
Define Fulfillment and Revocation Actions for the Service 220
Assign a Service to a User 221
Confirm Service Assignment 222
Making Services Available to Users 222
Assign a Service to a User 224
Confirm Service Assignment 225
Modifying a Service 225
Adding a Search to Request and View Access 227
Deleting a Service 228
Verifying and Removing Service Members 229

Deleting a Service 229
Renewing Access to a Service 230

Chapter 10: Synchronization 231

User Synchronization between Servers 231
Inbound Synchronization 231
Failover for Inbound Synchronization 231
Outbound Synchronization 231
Enable Password Synchronization 233
Synchronize Users in Create or Modify User Tasks 234
Synchronization Tasks 235
Why Users Become Out of Sync 237
User Synchronization 237
Account Template Synchronization 240
Account Synchronization 244
Synchronizing Users, Accounts, and Roles 245

Chapter 11: Workflow 253

Workflow Overview 253
WorkPoint Process Diagram 254
Workflow and Email Notification 254
WorkPoint Documentation 255
Workflow Control Methods 255
Use Workflow Control - Template Method 256
Prerequisite: Enable Workflow 257
Place Admin Tasks under Workflow Control - Template Method 257
Task or Event-Based Workflow 258
Types of Process Templates 264
Types of Participant Resolvers 268
Set an Email Policy for a Workflow Process 273
Workflow Example: Create User 273
How to Use the WorkPoint Method 275
Configure WorkPoint Administrative Tools 277
WorkPoint Processes 281
Workflow Activities 286
Participant Resolvers: WorkPoint Method 289
Processes in WorkPoint Designer 299
Jobs and Process Instances 302
Performing Workflow Activities 303
Workflow Server Completes the Activity 305
Workpoint Job View 306

Add the View Job Tab to Existing Approval Tabs 307
Policy-Based Workflow 307
Objects of Rules 309
Rule Evaluation 310
Policy Order 311
Policy Description 313
Approval Policies and Multivalued Attributes 314
Attributes Highlighted as Changed on Workflow Approval Screens 315
Policy Examples 315
How to Configure Policy-Based Workflow for Events 317
How to Configure Policy-Based Workflow for Tasks 319
How to Configure an Approval Policy 320
Policy-Based Workflow Status 321
Global Event Level Policy-Based Workflow Mapping 321
Online Requests 323
Online Request Tasks 323
Online Request Process 324
Online Request History 325
Using Online Requests 326
Workflow Action Buttons 326
Workflow Buttons in Approval Tasks 327
Button Configuration In CA Identity Manager 328
Adding Workflow Action Buttons 328
Work Lists and Work Items 331
Displaying a Work List 331
Enabling Work List Search Screen 333
Reserving Work Items 333
Delegating Work Items 335
Reassigning Work Items 340
Bulk Operations on Work Items 342

Chapter 12: Email Notifications 345

Email Notifications in CA Identity Manager 346
How to Select an Email Notification Method 347
Configure SMTP Settings 348
Configure SMTP Settings on JBoss 348
Configure SMTP Settings on WebLogic 349
Configure SMTP Settings on WebSphere 350
How to Configure a Unique Administrator Email Address for Each Environment 350
How to Create Email Notification Policies 351
Email Notification Profile Tab 352

When to Send Tab 353
Recipients Tab 354
Content 356
Modify Email Notification Policies 357
Disable Email Notification Policies 357
Use Case: Sending a Welcome Email 358
How to Use Email Templates 359
Enable Email Notification 360
Configure an Event or Task To Send Email 360
Email Content 362
Email Templates 362
Create Email Templates 365
Custom Email Templates 365
Email Template Deployment 383

Chapter 13: Reporting 387

Configuration Overview 387
The Report Process 389
How to Run a Snapshot Report 390
Configure the Report Server Connection 392
Create a Snapshot Database Connection 393
Create a Snapshot Definition 394
Example: Creating a Snapshot Definition for a User Entitlement Data 396
Manage Snapshots 397
Capture Snapshot Data 397
Associate a Snapshot Definition with a Report Task 399
Synchronize Endpoint Accounts with Account Templates 400
A Sample Admin Task 400
Request a Report 403
View the Report 405
How to Run a Non-Snapshot Report 406
Configure the Report Server Connection 407
Create a Connection for the Report 408
Associate a Connection with a Report Task 408
Request a Report 409
View the Report 410
Set Reporting Options 411
How to Create and Run a Custom Snapshot Report 412
Create a Report in Crystal Reports 414
Create the Report Parameter XML File 414
Upload the Report and Report Parameter XML File 418

Create the Report Task 420
Request a Report 423
View the Report 424
Troubleshooting 424
Viewing a Report Redirects To the Infoview Login Page 425
Generating User Accounts for over 20,000 Records 425

Chapter 14: Identity Policies 427

Identity Policies 427
Identity Policy Set Planning Worksheet 428
Create an Identity Policy Set 429
Manage an Identity Policy Set 439
How Users and Identity Policies Are Synchronized 440
Identity Policy Sets in a CA Identity Manager Environment 443
Preventative Identity Policies 448
Actions for Preventative Identity Policy Violations 449
How Preventative Identity Policies Work 450
Important Notes about Preventative Identity Policies 451
Create a Preventative Identity Policy 451
Use Case: Preventing Users from Having Conflicting Roles 452
Workflow and Preventative Identity Policies 453
Combining Identity Policies and Preventative Identity Policies 457

Chapter 15: Policy Xpress 459

Policy Xpress Overview 459
How to Create a Policy 459
Profile 460
Events 464
Data Elements 465
Entry Rules 467
Action Rules 468
Advanced 473

Chapter 16: CA Identity Manager Mobile App 475

The CA Identity Manager Mobile Application Architecture 476
How the Implementation Process Works 480
How the Application Configuration Works 481
How the User Registration Works 481
How to Configure CA Identity Manager to Support the Mobile App 482
Configure Required Attributes 483

Import Admin Tasks 486
Create a Web Services Configuration 487
Modify the Registration Email 489
How to Configure SiteMinder Support for the Mobile App 490
Configure a Mobile App 491
Configuring Additional Properties 494
Download the Mobile App 495
Troubleshooting the Mobile App 496

Chapter 17: CA User Activity Reporting 499

CA UAR Functionality 499
CA UAR Components 499
Integration Limitations 499
How to Integrate CA UAR with CA Identity Manager 500
Integrate Additional CA UAR Reports or Queries with CA Identity Manager 508
Configure the Enterprise Log Manager Viewer Tab 509

Chapter 18: Access Roles 511

How Access Roles Manage Entitlements 511
Example: Indirect Profile Attribute Modification 512
Create an Access Role 512
Begin Access Role Creation 513
Define the Profile of an Access Role 513
Define Member Policies for an Access Role 513
Define Admin Policies for an Access Role 514
Define Owner Rules for an Access Role 514

Chapter 19: System Tasks 515

Default System Tasks 515
How to Add Users with a Feeder File 516
Bulk Loader Considerations 517
Create a Feeder File 519
Loader Records Details Tab 521
Loader Actions Mapping Tab 521
Loader Notification Details Tab 522
Acknowledge Bulk Loader Task Changes 522
Configure Email Notifications for Bulk Loader Tasks 523
Schedule a Bulk Loader Task 524
Modify the Parser File for the Bulk Loader 524
Web Service Support for the Bulk Loader 525

JDBC Connection Management 525
Create JDBC Connection 525
Logical Attribute Handlers 526
Create a Logical Attribute Handler 526
Copy a Logical Attribute Handler 527
Create a ForgottenPasswordHandler Logical Attribute Handler 527
Delete a Logical Attribute Handler 528
Modify a Logical Attribute Handler 528
View a Logical Attribute Handler 529
Select Box Data 529
Configure Correlation Attributes Task Screen 530
Configure Global Policy Based Workflow for Events Task Screen 531
Task Status in CA Identity Manager 532
How CA Identity Manager Determines Task Status 533
View Submitted Tasks 533
User History Tab 542
Cleanup Submitted Tasks 547
Recurrence Tab 547
Cleanup Submitted Tasks Tab 551
Delete Recurring Tasks 551
Configure Enterprise Log Manager Connection 552
Delete Enterprise Log Manager Connection 553
Manage Secret Keys 553

Chapter 20: Task Persistence 555

Automated Task Persistence Garbage Collection and Archiving 555
Recurrence Tab 556
Cleanup Submitted Tasks Tab 557
Execute a Job Now 558
Schedule a New Job 558
Modify an Existing Job 559
Delete a Recurring Task 559
How to Migrate the Task Persistence Database 559
Update the tpmigration125.properties File 560
Set the JAVA_HOME Variable 560
Run the runmigration Tool 561

Index 563

Chapter 1: Role Planning

To plan your roles, you decide what kind of roles your business or organization needs and how you will delegate the management of users and their application access. Based on these decisions, you determine each role's characteristics.

To use roles effectively, consider these types of questions about user needs and administrator responsibilities:

- Which departments and organizations have users to be managed?
- What additional accounts in managed endpoints will users need?
- Which users should be administrators of other users?
- Who should manage the administrators?
- What admin and access tasks are needed in each role?
- Who should create roles and tasks?
- How can I use roles to delegate work?

  The last question concerns sharing the work of managing users and granting application access. More information about the delegation model exists in Delegated Administration.

Based on your answers to these questions, you can decide how many and what kind of roles are needed.

This section contains the following topics:

Roles for Identity or Access Management (see page 18)
Role Characteristics (see page 18)
Role Profile (see page 19)
Tasks for the Role (see page 19)
Account Templates (see page 19)
Member, Admin, and Owner Rules (see page 20)
Role Planning Checklist (see page 27)

Roles for Identity or Access Management

To enable management of user identities and their access to other accounts, CA CloudMinder provides the following types of role:

Type of Role	Purpose
Admin role	Contains admin tasks that, when granted that role, a user can perform in CA CloudMinder, such as tasks for changing a user password or group membership. Admin roles can also include any task that appears in the User Console.
Provisioning role	Contains account templates that define accounts that exist in managed endpoints, such as an email system. The account templates also define how user attributes are mapped to these accounts.
Access role	Access roles provide an additional way to provide entitlements in CA Identity Manager or another application. For example, you can use access roles to accomplish the following actions: ■ Provide indirect access to a user attribute. ■ Create complex expressions. ■ Set a profile attribute that another application can use to determine entitlements.

Role Characteristics

When you create a role, you define the characteristics shown in the following table:

Characteristics	Definition
Role Profile	General characteristics of the role.
Tasks	Tasks for an admin role.
Account Templates	Templates that define accounts in managed endpoints for a provisioning role.
Member Rules, Member Policies	A member rule defines conditions for a user to be an access or admin role member. A member policy combines a member rule with scope rules. **Note:** Provisioning roles have no member rules and policies. To make a user a member, you use Modify Provisioning Role Members/Administrators.

Characteristics	Definition
Admin Rules, Admin Policies	■ An admin rule defines conditions for a user to be a role administrator. ■ An admin policy combines an admin rule with a scope rule and administrator privileges for assigning the role.
Owner Rules	Conditions for a user to be a role owner.
Scope Rules	Limits on which objects can be managed by the role.
Add Actions, Remove Actions	Changes to a user profile when a user is added or removed as a role member or administrator.

Role Profile

The role profile is the name and description of the role and whether or not the role is enabled. If enabled, the role is available for use as soon as it is created.

Tasks for the Role

For an admin role, you can choose one or more admin tasks, including external tasks, from one or more categories.

Account Templates

Each provisioning role contains account templates. They define the accounts that exist in managed endpoints. For example, an endpoint for an Exchange account might define the size of the mailbox. The account templates also define how user attributes are mapped to accounts.

You can choose one or more endpoints for each endpoint type. A user who is assigned the role receives an account in the endpoint.

Member, Admin, and Owner Rules

Each role includes rules about who can be a member, administrator, or owner of that role. Therefore, a user could be a member of one role, several roles, or no roles.

Member, admin, and owner rules use the conditions in the following table:

Rule Condition	Example	Rule Syntax
The user must match one attribute value.	Users where title starts with senior	where <user-filter>
The user must match multiple attribute values.	Users where title=manager and locality=east	where <user-filter>
The user must belong to named organizations.	Users in organization sales and lower	in <org-rule>
The user must belong to organizations that meet a condition specified by attributes on the organization.	Users in organizations where Business Type=gold or platinum	in organizations where <org-filter>
The user must belong to specific organizations and match specific user attributes.	Users where title=manager and locality=east and who are in organization sales or marketing	where <user-filter> and who are in <org-rule>
The user must belong to a specific group.	Users who are members of 401K group	who are members of group [set the product group or family]
The user must be a member of a role.	Users who are members of the Help Desk role	who are members of <role-rule>
The user must be an administrator of a role.	Users who are administrators of the Sales Manager role	who are administrators of <role-rule>
The user must be an owner of a role.	Users who are owners of the User Manager role	who are owners of <role-rule>
The user must belong to a group which meets a condition specified by attributes on the group.	Users who are members of groups where owner=CIO	who are members of group <group-filter>

Rule Condition	Example	Rule Syntax
The user must meet a condition based on an LDAP query.	(Use an LDAP directory for situations where a query created in the CA Identity Manager User Console is insufficient)	user returned by the query ldap_query

Some rules may involve comparing a value to a multi-valued attribute. For the rule to apply, at least one value in a multi-valued attribute must satisfy the rule. For example, if the rule is Attribute A EQUALS 1, and the value of attribute A is 1, 2, 3 for User X, then User X satisfies the criteria.

The user who creates the role may be unable to modify the role. To be able to modify the role, that user must meet the conditions in the owner rules.

Note: In large implementations, it may take significant time to evaluate member, admin, and owner rules. To reduce the evaluation time for rules that include user-attributes, you can enable the in-memory evaluation option. For more information, see the *Configuration Guide*.

Scope Rules

You combine member and admin rules with scope rules. *Scope rules* limit objects on which the role can be used.

- For a role member, scope rules control which objects can be managed with the role.
- For a role administrator, scope rules control which users can become role members and administrators.

Scope applies to the primary object of the task. For example, user is the primary object of the Create User task. However, scope does not apply to the groups for that user, because group is a secondary object.

For most object types, you can specify the types of scope rules in the following table.

Rule Condition	Example	Rule Syntax
All	Role members can manage all objects	All
The object must match one or more attribute values.	Users where **title** starts with **senior**	where <filter>

When you select the filter option, CA Identity Manager displays two types of filters:

<attribute> <comparator><value>

An attribute in the object's profile must match a specific value.

<attribute> <comparator> admin's <user-attribute>

An attribute in the object's profile must match an attribute on the administrator's profile. For example: Users where manager = admin's UserID.

Additional options, which are described in the following tables, are available for user, group, and organization objects.

Note: The following user scope rules are examples. You can create other rules to handle different relationships between the administrator and the users that the administrator can manage.

Rule Condition	Example	Rule Syntax
The user must match one attribute value.	Users where member of group sales or cell phone does not equal null	where <user-filter>
The user must match multiple attribute values.	Users where title=manager and locality=USA	where <user-filter>
The user must belong to named organizations.	Users in organization Australia or New Zealand **Note:** Organization scope rule apply to suborganizations of the organization that meets the rule. For example, if the organization rule is "in Organization1", the scope rule applies to Organization1.1 and Organization1.2, but does not apply to Organization1.	in <org-rule>
The user must belong to organizations that meet a condition specified by attributes on the organization.	Users in organizations where Business Type=gold or platinum	in organizations where <org-filter>

Rule Condition	Example	Rule Syntax
The user must belong to specific organizations and match specific user attributes.	Users where title=manager and locality=east and who are in organization sales or organization marketing	where <user-filter> and who are in <org-rule>
The attribute on a user's profile must match an attribute on the administrator's profile.	Users where manager = admin's UserID	where <user-attribute> <comparator> admin's <user-attribute> **Note:** Do use the Not Equal To comparator with a multi-valued attribute.
The user is in the same organization as the administrator.	Users in the organization where Jeff (the administrator) is a member	admin's organization
The user is in an organization which is listed on the administrator's attribute.	Users in sales or marketing	organization that is a value in admin's <admin-attr>

Note: The following group scope rules are only examples. You can create other rules to handle different relationships between the administrator and the groups that the administrator can manage.

Rule Condition	Example	Rule Syntax
The group must match one attribute value.	Group name where Group name = 401K	where <group-filter>
The groups must belong to named organizations.	Groups in organization accounting and lower	in <org-rule>
The group must match one attribute value and belong to named organizations.	Groups where BusinessType = finance and who are in organization sales and lower	where <group-filter> and who are in <org-rule>

Rule Condition	Example	Rule Syntax
The group must be listed in an attribute of the administrator.	Groups where Description = Engineering	where <group-attribute> <comparator> admin's <user-attribute> **Note:** Do use the Not Equal To comparator with a multi-valued attribute.

Note: The following organization scope rules are only examples. You can create other rules to handle different relationships between the administrator and the organizations that the administrator can manage.

Rule Condition	Example	Rule Syntax
The organization must match one attribute value.	organizations where org Name=finance	where <org-filter>
The organization must belong to named organization.	organizations in finance and lower	in <org-rule>
The organization must match one attribute value and must belong to named organization.	organizations where org Name=finance and are in finance and lower	where <org-filter> and are in <org-filter>

Evaluation of Operators

In creating rules for a role, you may include >=, <=, <, and > operators. However, these operators are evaluated as strings by the LDAP directory or relational database. Most user stores compare strings based on the alphabet. Therefore, in comparing 500 to 1100, the user store may determine that 500 is greater because 5 is greater than 1.

You may be able to change the way strings are compared in the user store. Consult the documentation for the LDAP directory service or relational database software.

CA Identity Manager processes OR statements before AND statements. Consider the following example:

```
where(company=CA and city=Boston or city=Framingham)
```

In this example, CA Identity Manager processes (Boston or Framingham) first and then performs the logical AND with company=CA.

Case-Insensitivity of Rules

When you create admin or access roles, the rules that you create may be evaluated in a case-insensitive or case-sensitive manner depending on the user store.

However, at the end of a create or modify operation, the rules are evaluated internally in a case-insensitive manner before committing the changes to the user store. For example, if a rule has a condition where title=manager, the rule matches the user store object, whether it has a title value of manager or Manager.

Add and Remove Actions

You must specify an Add and Remove Action for CA Identity Manager to correctly manage a role's membership when an administrator grants or revokes the role.

- The Add Action must make the user meet the criteria in one of the role's member rules. For example, if the member rule for the User Manager role states that role members have "User Manager" as a value of their Admin Roles attribute, the Add Action must add "User Manager" to the Admin Roles attribute.
- The Remove Action should alter the profile of a user so that the user no longer matches the member rule when the rule is revoked.

Each role can have two *add actions* and two *remove actions*.

If administrators can add and remove members of the role, you define add and remove actions. Otherwise, the user has the role by meeting the member rule, such as by belonging to the RoleAdmins group. For example:

- Role A can be assigned by an administrator, so add or remove actions will be defined.
- Role B has a rule that all members of Group "finance" have the role. This role cannot be assigned, so it has no add or remove action.

When you define add and remove actions, consider using the Admin Role attribute, which CA Identity Manager can use to store a list of user's roles. For example, you can configure an add action that adds Employee to a user's Admin Role attribute when that user is added as a member of the Employee role. When an administrator assigns the Employee role to a manager who already has the Self Administrator and User Manager roles, the manager's Admin Role attribute would contain the following values: Self Administrator, User Manager, Employee.

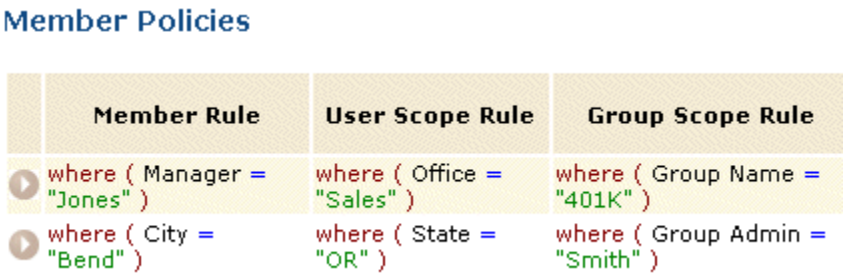
To use the Admin Role attribute, the %ADMIN_ROLE_CONSTRAINT% well-known attribute must be mapped to a multi-valued attribute in user profiles. For more information, see the *CA Identity Manager Configuration Guide*.

Important! When defining an add action, avoid setting up a rule that refers to the role you are defining. For example, do not define the add action that makes a member of Role A by being a member of Role A. This will create a recursive error that will cause the policy server to restart.

Member Policies

A *member policy* indicates that if a user meets the member rule, that user has the scope defined in that policy. The following figure shows a role that has two member policies.

- The first policy indicates that if a role member has the Manager Jones, that member can use the role on users in the Sales Office and manage them as members of the 401k group.
- The second policy indicates that if a role member is in the city Bend, that role member can use the role on users in the state of Oregon and manage them as members of the groups that have the Group Admin of Smith.

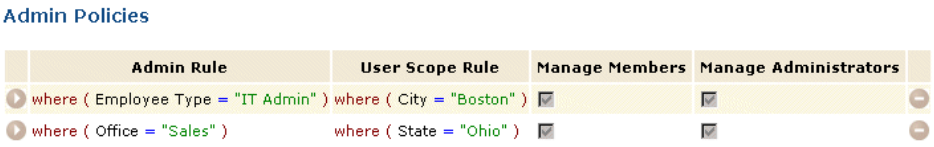


Admin Policies

An *admin policy* indicates that if a user meets the admin rule, that user has the user scope and administrator privileges defined in that policy. The user scope defines where the role is used. The administrator privileges determine if the role administrator can manage members or manage administrators of the role.

The following figure shows a role that has two admin policies, which are defined as follows:

- For the first policy, an IT Admin can add and remove role members and administrators from the users in the city of Boston.
- For the second policy, an administrator in Sales can add and remove members in the state of Ohio.



Role Planning Checklist

Before creating a role, use this checklist of role characteristics.

Role Characteristic	Details
Role Profile	Define a name and description for the role and set Enabled status.
Tasks	Include admin or access tasks.
Account Templates	Include account templates that define accounts that exist in endpoints (provisioning roles only).
Member Policies	For each member policy, define: ■ Member Rules -- Who can use the role ■ Scope Rules -- Which objects can a role member manage ■ Add Action -- What happens to the profile of a user who becomes a member ■ Remove Action -- What happens to the profile of a user who is removed as a member

Role Characteristic	Details
Admin Policies	For each admin policy: ■ Admin Rules -- Who can manage the users as members or administrators ■ Scope Rules -- Which users can the administrator manage as members or administrators ■ Add Action -- What happens to the profile of a user who becomes an administrator ■ Remove Action -- What happens to the profile of a user who is removed as an administrator
Owner Rules	Define who can modify the role.

Chapter 2: Admin Roles

This section contains the following topics:

Admin Roles and Admin Tasks (see page 29)
Create an Admin Role (see page 30)
Verify an Admin Role (see page 34)
Allow Users to Self-Assign Roles (see page 34)

Admin Roles and Admin Tasks

You create roles that contain tasks for managing objects that are based on your individual business requirements. For example, you create several roles with tasks that manage users and other roles with tasks that manage the roles you create.

Alternatively, you create separate roles with:

- Tasks for administrators to manage users
- Tasks that manage the administrators
- Tasks to manage admin roles
- Tasks to manage access roles

Note: You can also use the default admin roles that are supplied with CA Identity Manager. These roles have tasks that are grouped in categories similar to the preceding list.

Admin Roles and CA Identity Manager Environments

When you log into a CA Identity Manager environment, your user account has one or more admin roles. Each admin role contains tasks, such as Create User, that you use in that CA Identity Manager environment.

For example, in the *central* CA Identity Manager environment, an admin role, *Help Desk,* has tasks for resetting passwords. The role has a member rule that the user must be an IT employee. When IT employees log into the *central* CA Identity Manager environment, they have the *Help Desk* role and can reset the passwords of users in that CA Identity Manager environment.

Admin Roles and the User Console

A CA Identity Manager environment is viewed through the User Console. Your assigned admin roles determine what you see in that console as shown in the following table:

Assigned Roles	Format of the User Console
System Manager role	The category list for all objects and all default admin tasks for managing those objects
Roles for managing more than one type of object	The category list with one item for each type of object you can manage
Roles for managing one type of object, such as Users	The tasks for that object (such as Modify User) *without* a category list
An approval role	The Work list screen Appears if the administrator has tasks pending approval (for example, self-registering users need approval)

If you can manage more than one object, the category list appears and shows the objects that you can modify, such as Users and Groups as tabs across the top of the screen. Select a tab to see tasks in your assigned roles.

Note: If your internet browser does not support Cascading Style Sheets (CSS), the User Console uses a different format. To control that format, see the *Configuration Guide*.

Create an Admin Role

You can create an admin role once you know the role requirements. These requirements concern the following questions:

- Users who need this role
- The objects that this role manages
- The Environment with the objects to manage

Begin Admin Role Creation

You create an admin role from the User Console.

To create an admin role

1. Log in to a CA Identity Manager account that has a role with tasks for creating admin roles.

   For example, the first user of an Environment has the System Manager role, which has the Create Admin Role task.

2. Select Roles and Tasks, Admin Roles, and Create Admin Role.

3. Decide if you want to create or copy a role.

   The Profile tab appears where you begin defining the admin role.

4. Define the Admin Role Profile.

Define the Admin Role Profile

On the Profile tab, you define basic characteristics of the role.

To define the profile

1. Enter a name and description, and complete any other custom attributes that are defined for the role.

   Note: You can specify custom attributes on the Profile tab that specify additional information about admin roles. You can use this additional information to facilitate role searches in environments that include a significant number of roles.

2. Select Enabled if you are ready to make the role available for use as soon as you create it.

3. Select Admin Tasks for the Role (see page 31).

Select Admin Tasks for the Role

On the Tasks tab, you select the admin tasks to include in the role. You can include tasks from different categories or copy tasks used in another role.

To select admin tasks

1. Select the category in the Filter by Category field.

   To view the list of available task categories, click the down arrow icon.

2. Select that task to include in the role in the Add Task field.

   CA Identity Manager adds the task to the list of tasks in the role.

3. Add additional tasks by repeating steps 1 and 2.
4. Remove a task from the role by clicking the minus icon ( ) for that task.
5. Define Member Policies for an Admin Role (see page 32).

Define Member Policies for an Admin Role

On the Members tab, you create member policies, which determine who can be a role member.

To define member policies

1. Click Add to define member policies. A member policy contains these rules:
   - A member rule which defines the requirements for a user to be a role member.

     Note: The following operators treat numbers as characters in member rules:

     - Less than (<)
     - Less than or equal to (<=)
     - Greater than (>)
     - Greater than or equal to (=>)

     For example, '10' will come after '1' but before '2'.
   - Scope rules which limit the primary and secondary objects available to tasks in the role.

     For example, the role contains a task that modifies users by assigning them to groups. As a result, the user scope rule limits the users (primary object) that can be found and the group scope rule limits the groups (secondary object) that can be assigned.

   Note: Be sure to enter an answer to at least one scope question. The scope rules limit the primary and secondary objects available to tasks in the role. For example, the role contains a task that modifies users by assigning them to groups. As a result, the user scope rule limits the users (primary object) that can be found and the group scope rule limits the groups (secondary object) that can be assigned.
2. Verify that the Member Policy appears on the Members tab.
   - To edit a policy, click the right arrow symbol on the left.
   - To remove it, click the minus sign icon.
3. On the Members tab, optionally enable the checkbox labeled “Administrators can add and remove members of this role." Leaving this checkbox disabled means that users become members by meeting a member rule.

   Once you enable this feature, the screen expands.

4. In the expanded area, define the Add Action and Remove Action (see page 25) for when a user is added or removed as a role member.

   Important! For the add action, avoid setting up a rule that refers to the role you are defining. For example, do not define the add action that makes a member of Role A by being a member of Role A.

5. Define Admin Policies for an Admin Role (see page 33).

Define Admin Policies for an Admin Role

On the Administrators tab, you define who can add or remove users as members and administrators of this role.

To define admin policies

1. If you want to make the Manage Administrators option available, enable the check box labeled "Administrators can add and remove administrators of this role."

   Once you enable this feature, the screen expands.

2. In the expanded area, define the Add Action and Remove Action for when a user is added or removed as an administrator of the role.

3. Define admin policies, which contain admin and scope rules and at least one administrator privilege (Manage Members or Manage Administrators).

   Note: You can add several admin policies with different rules and different privileges for administrators who meet the rule.

4. To edit a policy, click the arrow symbol on the left. To remove it, click the minus sign icon.

5. Define Owner Rules for an Admin Role (see page 33).

Define Owner Rules for an Admin Role

On the Owners tab, you define rules about who can be an owner of the role, a user who can modify the role.

To define owner rules

1. Define owner rules, which determine which users can modify the role.

2. Click Submit.

   A message appears to indicate that the task has been submitted. A momentary delay occurs before a user can use the role.

The role is available to be used. A user who meets conditions in the member rule can now log in to the environment and that user can use the tasks in the role.

Verify an Admin Role

Follow these steps:

1. Choose Admin Roles.
2. Choose View Admin Role.
3. Select the name of the role.

Alternatively, you can choose System, View Submitted Tasks to see if the role creation task has completed.

Allow Users to Self-Assign Roles

Users can assign certain roles to themselves. For example, you may want to allow users to sign up for the Delegation Manager role so that they can delegate the work items of one user to another user.

To control the roles that users can assign to themselves, you configure criteria in the Roles Self-Manager task.

Follow these steps:

1. Modify the Roles Self-Manager task as follows:
    a. Select Roles and Tasks, Modify Admin Task, and search for the Roles Self-Manager task.
    b. Select the Tabs tab.

       CA Identity Manager displays the list of tabs that apply to the task.
    c. Select the right arrow icon next to the Roles Self Manager tab to edit it.

d. Complete the following fields:

Show only Admin Roles Meeting the Following Rules

Specifies the criteria that CA Identity Manager uses to determine which roles to allow users to assign to themselves.

To add additional rules, click the plus (+) icon.

User to be used as Admin Role Administrator

Specifies the administrator for roles that users can assign to themselves.

The roles that users can assign to themselves must have the user you select in this field as an administrator *and* meet the criteria you specified in the Show Only Admin Roles Meeting the Following Rules field.

List Screen

Specifies the columns and format for the list of roles that a user can select to self-assign a role.

e. Click OK, then click Submit.

2. Add the Roles Self-Manager task to a role, and assign that role to users who should have this capability.

Chapter 3: Admin Tasks

This section contains the following topics:

Admin Task Planning (see page 37)
Admin Task Usage Options (see page 41)
Default Admin Tasks (see page 42)
How to Create a Custom Admin Task (see page 42)
Define the Profile of the Task (see page 44)
Define the Task Scope (see page 49)
Choose Tabs for the Task (see page 57)
View Fields in the Task (see page 61)
View Role Use (see page 61)
Assign Workflow Processes for Events (see page 61)
Manage an Active Directory User Store (see page 61)
External Tasks for Application Functions (see page 63)
Advanced Task Components (see page 65)
Admin Tasks and Events (see page 67)
Admin Task Processing (see page 69)
Images for Admin Tasks (see page 73)

Admin Task Planning

Admin roles consist of admin tasks, which represent granular capabilities for managing objects. For example, you could manage a user object by using these admin tasks:

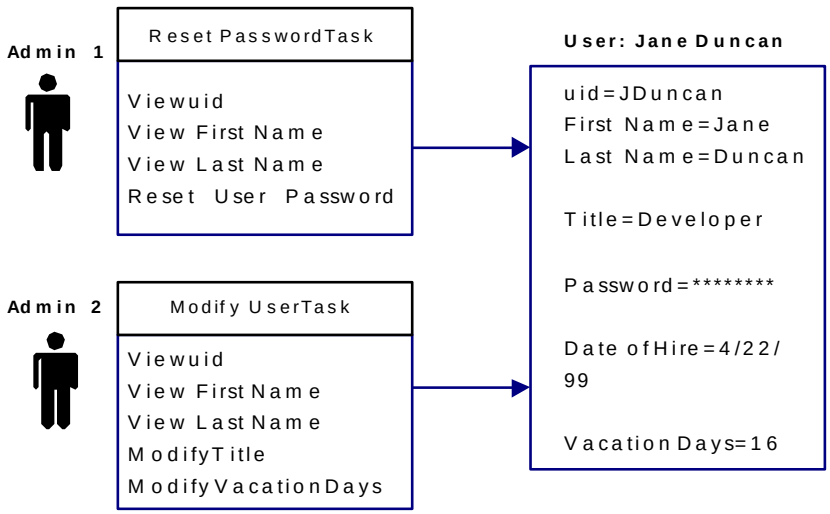
- Create User
- View User
- Modify User
- Reset User Password

You create or modify each task to match your exact requirements. Then, you combine the appropriate admin tasks into admin roles, which you assign to administrators. With these roles, administrators have the exact privileges they need to manage objects.

To plan admin task creation, decide which objects you need to manage (user, group, organization, role, or task) and which administrators will use these tasks. For example:

- To manage users, help desk administrators need tasks that manage user attributes, such as a user ID or title.
- To manage users' access to applications, other administrators need tasks that make users members of access roles.
- To manage the roles used by help desk administrators, higher-level administrators need tasks that manage admin roles.

For one type of object, such as users, you can create tasks so that different administrators manage different attributes. For example, the following figure shows a user who is managed by two administrators.



- Admin 1 has the Reset User Password task; that administrator can view the employee's user ID and name or reset her password.
- Admin 2 has the Modify User task; that administrator can view the employee's user ID and name or modify her title and vacation days.

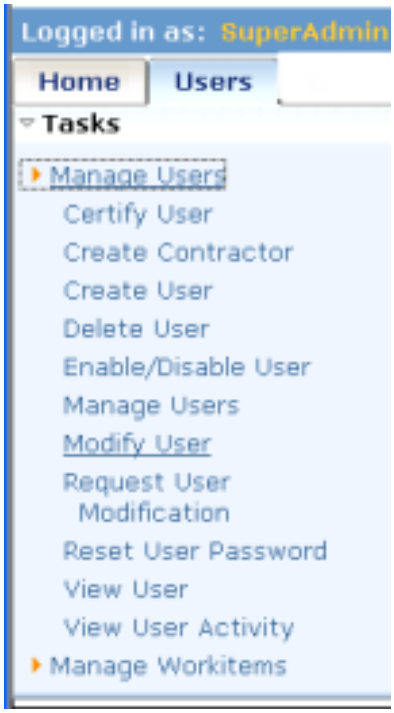
A Sample Admin Task

When you create an admin task, you define the content and layout of screens in the task, including:

- The name of the task
- The category where the task appears

- The tabs and fields to use in the task, and field display properties
- The fields an administrator can use in a search query, and the fields displayed in the search results

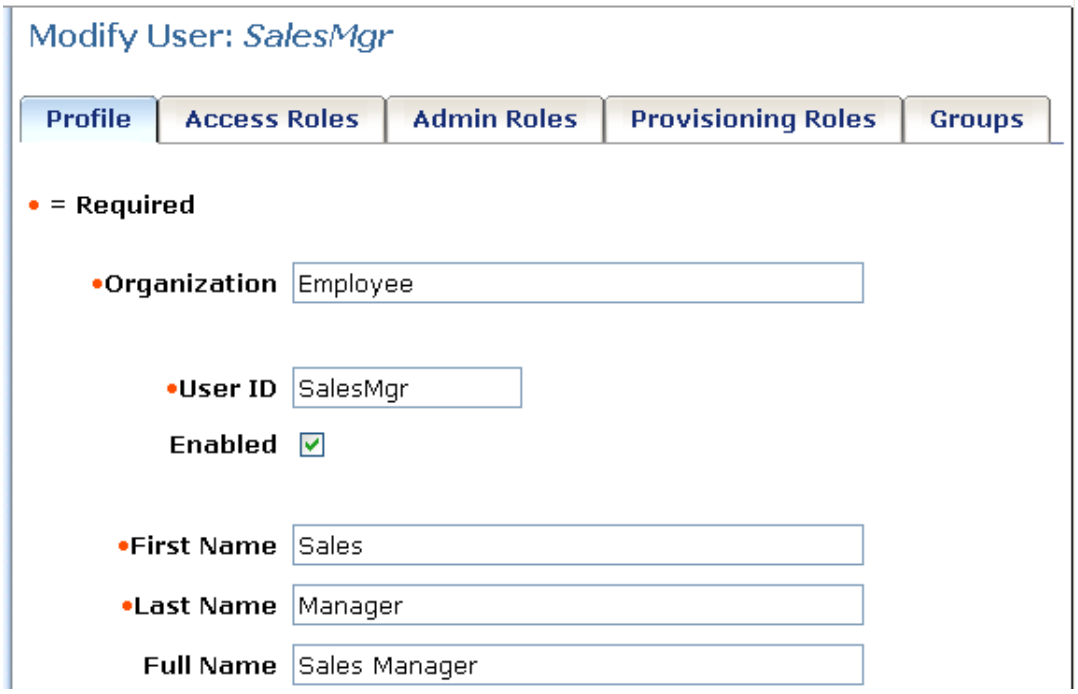
To understand the elements of a task, consider the Modify User task. In this case, Users is the category, Manage Users is a subcategory, and Modify User is the task. You create the category and task names when you create a task.



When you choose Modify User, a search screen appears. A *search screen* provides options for finding the object to view or modify. Each option is called a *filter*, which is a limit to the objects found by the search.

After you fill in the search screen, a screen with tabs appears. For example, the following figure shows the tabs for the Modify User task. The Profile tab appears first and shows user attributes; the other tabs show role and group privileges for the user.

For the task you create, you decide which tabs to include and determine their order and content.

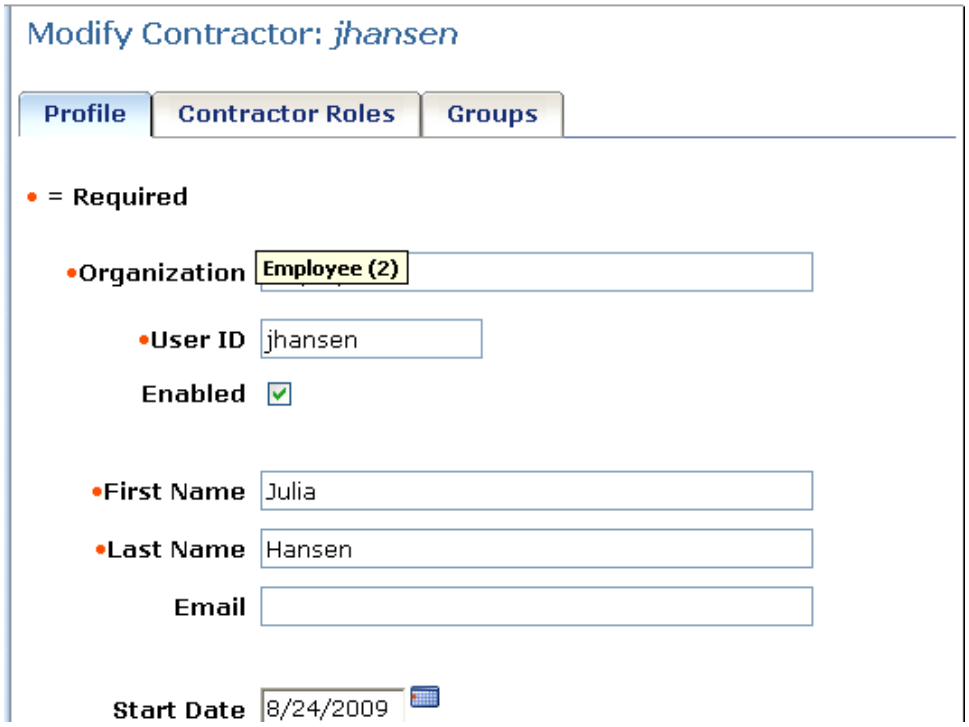


For example, using the Modify User task as a template, you could create a Modify Contractor task, which has changes to:

- The fields on the Profile tab
- The tabs to include in the task and their content
- The category under which the task appears

  You might create this task under a new category, Contractor.

The Modify Contractor task includes some of the fields on the Profile tab in the Modify User task plus other fields, such as the start date of the contract and the contractor's company. Administrators can search for a contractor by searching on the contractor's name, company, and start date.



The new task also includes a Contractor Roles tab where you add roles for contractors.

Admin Task Usage Options

CA Identity Manager provides two ways to use admin tasks:

- **Select the task**

  You select a category and task, and then search for the object to which the task applies.

  For example, to modify a user profile, you select the Users category, and then select the Modify User task. You then search for the user to modify.

- **Select the object**

  You use "Manage" tasks, such as Manage Users or Manage Groups to search for an object. Once you select the object, you can display a list of tasks that you can use to manage that object. This method is called *object-task navigation.*

  For example, to modify a user using this method, you select the User category, then select the Manage User task. You search for and select the user that you want to manage. In the search results, you click an icon to see a list of tasks that you can use to manage the selected user. From that list, you can select Modify User or any other appropriate task.

  You can also configure task lists in tasks other than Manage tasks. For example, you can add a task list to a Membership tab. In this case, a task list is available for each member that appears on the Membership tab.

  Note: Only tasks that the current administrator can use appear in the task list for an object.

Default Admin Tasks

CA Identity Manager includes a set of default admin tasks and roles, which are added to CA Identity Manager by importing a Role Definitions file in the Management Console. When you create an environment in the Management Console and you choose to create the default roles, CA Identity Manager imports a Role Definitions file automatically.

Note: To support some functionality, such as account management for certain endpoint types, you may need to import additional Role Definitions files to create the roles and tasks you need.

In most cases, you can use the default tasks as installed. However, you may need to modify the Profile tab in the default user tasks, such as Create User, Modify User, and View User. The Profile tab includes all of the fields that are defined for the user object in the directory configuration file. You may want to limit the number of fields that appear on the tab, or change the field display properties.

Note: We recommend that you create a copy of a default task to modify, instead of modifying the default task directly.

How to Create a Custom Admin Task

An *admin task* is an administrative function that a user can perform in CA Identity Manager. Examples of admin tasks include Create User, Modify Group, and View Role Membership.

CA Identity Manager includes default admin tasks that you can modify to suit your business needs.

When you create a custom admin task, you complete the following steps:

Note: The section Active Directory Prerequisites (see page 61) includes additional considerations if CA Identity Manager is managing an Active Directory user store.

1. In the CA Identity Manager User Console, select Roles and Tasks, Admin Tasks, Create Admin Task.

   CA Identity Manager asks if you want to create a new task or create a task based on an existing task.

   For example, select the Modify User task as the basis of the new task.

2. Select Create a Copy of an Existing Task, and search for the task to copy.

   Note: We recommend modifying the copy of a default task, instead of modifying the default task directly.

3. Once you select Ok, you see a screen with the following six tabs:

Tab	Purpose	See this Topic
Profile	Define the profile of the task being created	Define the Profile of the Task (see page 44)
Search	Limit the range of objects that are managed by the task	Define the Task Scope (see page 49)
Tabs	Choose and design the tabs for the task	Choose Tabs for the Task (see page 57)
Fields	Show the fields used on all tabs	View Fields in the Task (see page 61)
Events	Select a workflow process for each event if the CA Identity Manager environment and the task uses workflow	Assign Workflow Processes for Events (see page 61)
Role Use	Displays the roles that include the task that you are modifying or viewing	View Role Use (see page 61)

Note: For more information about creating custom admin tasks, see the *User Console Design Guide*.

Define the Profile of the Task

The Profile tab includes general settings for the task.

Note: For more information about admin task profile settings, see the *User Console Design Guide*.

To define the profile of the task

1. Choose the type of object for the task, which is called the primary object, and the action to perform on it.
2. Complete the required fields and select the appropriate check boxes as needed for the task.

   Note: If you are creating a task that has similar profile settings as an existing task, click Copy Profile From Another Task. This option populates the profile settings for the task you are creating with the profile settings from any existing task that you select. You then add a name and description for the new task.
3. (Optional) Associate a business logic task handler with the task.
4. Once you complete this tab, proceed to the next step, Define the Task Scope (see page 49).

Admin Task Profile Tab

The Admin Task Profile Tab lets you define general settings for an admin task.

This tab contains the following fields:

- **Name**

  Defines the name of the task.
- **Tag**

  Defines a unique identifier for the task. It is used in URLs, web services, or properties files. The tag can contain ASCII characters (a-z, A-Z), numbers (0-9), or underscore characters, beginning with a letter or underscore.
- **Description**

  Specifies an optional note about the purpose of the task.
- **Task Order**

  Specifies the display order for the task. If no order is specified, the tasks are displayed in alphabetical order.
- **Category**

  Specifies a category for the task. Categories are displayed as tabs at the top of the screen.

- **Category Order**

  Specifies the order in which the category tab appears. For example, if you set the category order to 3, the category you specified will appear as the third tab.

- **Category 2**

  Specifies the second level category, which appears as a link below the list of category tabs. The second level category appears only when the tab for the first level category is selected. For example, if you created a task with the first level category of Employee and a second level category of Employee Management, the Employee Management category would appear only after you select the Employee tab.

- **Category 2 Order**

  Specifies the order in which the second level category appears, if more than one second level category exists in a primary category.

- **Category 3**

  Specifies the third level category, which appears in the left navigation pane. Tasks are listed under the third level category. For example, in a default environment, a user with the System Manager or User Manager role sees the third level category Manage Users when he selects the Users tab.

- **Category 3 Order**

  Specifies the order in which the third level category appears.

- **Primary Object**

  Specifies the object that the task operates on.

- **Action**

  Specifies the operation to perform on the object.

- **User Synchronization**

  Specifies whether the task synchronizes users with identity policies. You can select one of the following options:

  - **Off** (default)

    Specifies that this task does not trigger user synchronization.

  - **On Task Completion**

    Specifies that CA Identity Manager starts the user synchronization process after all of the events in a task complete. This setting is the default synchronization option for the Create User, Modify User, and Delete User tasks. The default setting for all other tasks is Off.

    Note: If you select the On Task Completion option for a task that includes multiple events, CA Identity Manager does not synchronize users until all of the events in the task complete. If one or more of those events require workflow approval, this may take several days. To prevent CA Identity Manager from waiting to apply identity policies until all events complete, select the On Every Event option.

  - **On Every Event**

    Specifies that CA Identity Manager starts the user synchronization process (see page 440) when each event in a task completes.

    For tasks with a primary and secondary event for the same user, setting user synchronization to On Every Event may result in more identity policies being applied to a user than if the On Task Completion option is selected.

- **Account Synchronization**

  Synchronizes accounts that exist in the Provisioning Server, if you have provisioning enabled.

  - **Off** (default)

    Specifies that this task does not trigger account synchronization.

  - **On Task Completion**

    Specifies that CA Identity Manager starts the account synchronization process after all of the events in a task complete.

- **On Every Event**

  Specifies that CA Identity Manager starts the account synchronization process when each event in a task completes.

  Note: For best performance, select On Task Completion. However, if you select the On Task Completion option for a task that includes multiple events, CA Identity Manager does not synchronize accounts until all of the events in the task complete. If one or more of those events require workflow approval, this may take several days. To prevent CA Identity Manager from waiting to synchronize accounts until all events complete, select the On Every Event option.

- **Hide in Menus**

  Prevents the task from appearing in menus. Enable this control if the task is only invoked by a URL or by another task.

- **Public Task**

  Makes the task available to users who have not logged in to CA Identity Manager. The default public tasks are forgotten password and self-registration.

- **Enable Auditing**

  Records information about the task in an auditing database. Audit information can be used to generate reports. See the *Configuration Guide*.

- **Enable Workflow**

  Enables the CA Identity Manager events associated with the task to trigger workflow processes, if you have the workflow engine installed. For example, the events associated with the Delete Group task may trigger a workflow process that includes an approval step.

- **Enable Web Services**

  Marks the task as one for which Web Services Description Language (WSDL) output can be generated from the Management Console. Enable this control if you want to use remote task submission. For more information, see the *Programming Guide for Java.*

- **Workflow Process**

  Enables configuration for task level workflow. Click the pencil icon to configure policy-based or non-policy based workflow.

- **Task Priority**

  Determines the order in which CA Identity Manager executes tasks. Tasks with a High priority are executed before tasks with a Medium or Low priority. The default priority for a task is Medium.

  Note: You can use the View Submitted Tasks task to search for tasks with a specific priority, and then display their status.

- **Business Logic Task Handlers**

  Associates a business logic task handler (see page 66) with the task.

- **Workflow Action Buttons**

  Add custom action buttons to workflow approval tasks.

- **Copy Profile from another task**

  Copies data from the Profile tab of another task.

  For example, you might copy the Profile tab settings from the Modify User task, then add a name and description.

Task Configuration Properties

Task configuration properties control display properties and certain behaviors for the task.

Task Icon Path

Specifies the URL for a graphic to use as an icon for this task in task lists.

Task Icon Preview

Displays the icon for the task, as it appears in task lists.

Suppress Task Navigation

When selected, hides the top-level navigation and task list once a user selects a task. This prevents users from navigating away from the current task until they complete required actions or cancel the task.

Target Window

When you provide a value in this field, CA Identity Manager opens this task in a new browser window. Use this field to open a new browser window for an external task that redirects users to another website.

You can specify any name for the window.

Note: Do not use this field to open CA Identity Manager admin tasks in a separate browser window. CA Identity Manager does not support multiple browser windows for a single CA Identity Manager user session.

Define the Task Scope

On the Search tab, you define the task scope, which limits the objects available to the task. For example, if the object of a task is users, you might define the scope as users who are contractors.

Note: If the task has no primary object, or if the action is self-modify, self-view, or approve, the Search tab does not appear.

You configure the following settings on the Search tab:

Search Screen

The search screen limits the scope of the task based on filters. Click Browse to see available search screen options.

Note: You may want to create your own search screen (see page 50). To create a modified version of an existing search screen, select the search screen and click Copy. You can then modify the search screen without changing the original search screen definition. To create a search screen, click New.

Search Options

The search options appear only when the object is a role or group.

- The first option limits the search based on fields that are defined on the search screen. Within these limits, the search locates all groups or roles in the administrator's scope.
- Other options limit the search as indicated.

Note the following:

- By default, the group search screens support filtering. This means that administrators can specify criteria to limit the scope of group searches. To remove the filtering capability, create a search screen that does not contain any fields to include in a search query.
- *Filtering not supported*, which appears on the Search tab when the object is a role, means that the task displays the roles that meet the criteria in the option you select. Search fields that are configured on the search screen are ignored.

Modified objects must remain in administrator's scope

When this check box is selected, CA Identity Manager displays an error if changes to the task cause the administrator to lose scope over the primary object. For example, an administrator may use Modify User to change a user's Employee Type attribute to Manager. This change may put the user outside the administrator's scope.

Search Screen Configuration

You configure a search screen to limit the scope of the task and control the fields that users can search on. Search screens apply to two types of objects:

- A *primary object*—The object to be modified or viewed by the task.
- A *secondary object*—The object that is related to the primary object.

  For example, if you include a group tab on a create user task, the user is the primary object and the group is the secondary object. The group tab needs a search screen for groups.

  Note: After configuring a search screen, you can use it for any task to search for a primary or secondary object.

Search Filters

Search filters limit which objects the search returns. For example, if the object is users, you can limit the search to find only contractors. You can configure a filter to find users with the Employee Type of Contractor.

You can configure the following fields for searches:

Show only objects meeting the following rules

Defines additional criteria to be combined with the user-defined filter to constrain the search.

Note the following when using this field**:**

- Due to limitations with provisioning roles searches, these criteria override filter fields with the same name entered by the user.
- Attributes that are used when you configure this field should not be added as available search fields on the search screen.

  For example, if you configure the search screen to display only roles where the Enabled attribute is set to Yes, remove the Enabled attribute from the list of attributes that users can specify in search criteria.

  Otherwise, the user-entered criteria is ignored.

Default search filter

Defines a filter that appears by default when an administrator uses the search screen. For example, if you are configuring a search screen for the Modify Contractor task and you know that administrators typically search for contractors based on the contract firm name, you can set the default filter to Contract Firm = *. Administrators can override the default filter by specifying different search criteria. Setting a default filter improves performance by limiting the number of results returned if an administrator does not specify a filter before beginning a search.

Auto select all search results when used with multi-select tasks

Specifies that all search results are selected by default. If you select this check box, all the objects in the search results list appear with a checked box next to the object name.

Automatically perform search

Specifies that a search field is displayed with the search results.

Automatically set subject of task when there is only a single search result

Sets the primary object of the task automatically when only one object matches the search filter.

For example, suppose that this option is selected for a user search screen which is associated with the Modify User task. When an administrator opens the Modify User task and enters a search filter that returns only one user, CA Identity Manager opens the Modify User task for that user. The administrator does not have to select the user to open the Modify User task.

Note: For this setting to apply, Automatically perform search must also be selected.

Save search filter

Specifies that the search filter for the task is saved for the user in the current session. The next time that user searches in the task, the saved search filter will be displayed.

Note: CA Identity Manager saves the search filter for the duration of the user session. When the user logs out, the search filter is cleared.

Search in organization

Displays an organization filter on the search screen. If this check box is selected, administrators can specify a filter that limits the organizations in which CA Identity Manager searches for an object. You can specify defaults for the organization search filter by specifying a search screen in the Organization Search field.

Save search organization

Specifies that the organization for the task is saved if an organization was established for the search. The next time a user searches in the task, the organization will be displayed.

Organization Search

Specifies the search screen that CA Identity Manager uses to allow administrators to search for an organization.

Default Organization Search Scope

Specifies the default organization search scope that appears when an administrator uses a search screen. The search scope determines the levels in an organization tree that are included in the search. Administrators can override the default organization search scope by specifying different search criteria on the search screen.

For example, if you configure a search screen for a custom Modify Contractor task in an environment that stores contractor information at various levels in the organization tree, you can set the default organization search scope to And Lower.

Single expression search

Defines the type of search filter that appears on the search screen. When you select this checkbox, users can specify a single search filter, such as <attribute><comparator><value>. When you clear this checkbox, users can specify multiple search filters. For example, <attribute1><comparator><value1> AND <attribute2><comparator> <value2>. Objects that meet the conditions in all the filters are returned in the search results. In the previous example, objects that include <value1> and <value2> would be returned as search results.

Equals Only Search

Prohibits administrators from using search operators other than equals.

Display the number of results

Displays the number of matching search results. When this check box is selected, all searches return the message, "There are X number of results".

Add task button for <task name>

Adds a link to another task to the search screen. The link is displayed as a button. This field is typically used to add a Create task to a search screen that is configured for object-task navigation.

Optional label

Specifies a label for the task that you selected in the previous field. This label appears on the button for the task.

Add multi-delete button for <task name>

Adds a link to a task that allows administrators to select multiple objects to delete. The link is displayed as a button.
This field is typically with object-task navigation.

Search Fields and Search Results

On another part of the search screen, you select fields that an administrator can use in a search query and fields to display in search results.

Select the fields that a user can search on

Select the fields that an administrator can use to create a search query.

To add additional fields, select the fields in the list box below the search fields table.

After you select the fields, you can change the order in which they appear by using the up and down arrow icons to the right of the field.

Note: If you do not specify fields that an administrator can search on, CA Identity Manager starts the search automatically.

Select the fields that appear in the search results

Select the fields that CA Identity Manager displays in the search results. You can select fields that are not available in the search query.

To add additional fields, select the fields in the list box below the search fields table.

Style

When you select a field to display in the search results, you can select one of the following style options:

- **Boolean Display Name**

  Displays the name of the field for all results that are true. For example, if you enter Enabled as the name of the attribute that indicates a user's account status, "Enabled" would appear in the search results for all active user accounts.

- **Checkmark**

  Displays the value as a selected check mark, based on the value of the attribute. For example, if you select the check mark style to represent the Enabled/Disabled state of user accounts, CA Identity Manager displays a selected check mark for all active accounts.

- **Multi-Value String**

  Displays the values in a multi-value attribute on separate lines. The values are listed alphabetically.

- **Read-Only Checkbox**

  Displays the value as a read only checkbox.

- **String**

  Displays the value as a text string.

- **Task**

  Adds a task list to a field. Users click an arrow icon to see a list of tasks that they can perform on the object associated with the search field. For example, if you add a task list to a Last Name field in the search results, users can click on the arrow icon in that field to see a list of tasks they can perform on the user they select.

  This setting can also be used to make an attribute value appear as a link to a task.

  If you select the Task style, a right arrow icon appears next to the Style column. Click the arrow to open a Field Properties dialog. Use this dialog to configure a task list.

- **Task List**

  Adds additional tasks that users can perform on objects in search and list screens. For example, you can configure the search screen in the Modify User task to enable users to perform a task, such as disabling a user, from the list of users returned by the search.

  When you select this option, you determine whether users access the task by clicking an icon, or a text link.

- **Task Menu**

  Adds additional tasks (similar to the Task List style) as pop-up menu items.

  When you select this option, an Action button appears next to each object in a search or list screen. Users click the Action button to see the list of tasks they can perform for that object.

Note: To see the Task List and Task Menu style options, select (Separator) when you add a field to the search results table. For more information about adding additional tasks to search and list screens, see the *User Console Design Guide*.

Sortable

Select this checkbox to allow administrators to sort search results by a field or fields.

Set the default sort order for the search results

Specifies the order in which search results are displayed. Search results are sorted initially by the first field in the list and then by each additional field in the order in which they appear. Select the Descending checkbox to sort the results in descending order.

Select objects with changes to field *name*

Specifies that objects in which the specified field has changed are selected when the user clicks the Select button.

Return *N* results per page

Select the number of results to display per page. When search results exceed the number you specify, CA Identity Manager displays a link to each page of results.

User-Defined Help on Search Screens

If you want to add custom text to your search screen, you can define text in the corresponding HTML text box. You can add text in the following areas:

- Beginning or end of the page
- Before or after the create
- Before or after the results

Types of Search Screens

CA Identity Manager includes these pre-configured search screens.

Access Role Search Screen

The Access Role Search Screen lets you configure search filters to find access roles that match specific criteria.

Access Task Search Screen

The Access Task Search Screen lets you configure search filters to find access tasks that match specific criteria. This search screen is used to find an access task to view or modify, or to add a task to an access role.

Admin Role Search Screen

The Admin Role Search Screen lets you configure search filters to find admin roles that match specific criteria.

Admin Task Search Screen

The Admin Task Search Screen lets you configure search filters to find admin tasks that match specific criteria. This search screen is used to find an admin task to view or modify, or to add a task to an admin role.

Approval Search Screen

The Approval Search Screen lets you configure the display that appears at the top of an approval task.

Begin Certification User Search Screen

The Begin Certification User Search Screen lets you configure search filters to find users to set to require certification. Users selected will have their certification status set to *requiring certification*.

Certify User Search Screen

The Certify User Search Screen lets you configure the search filters to find users who require certification.

Delegation Search Screen

The Delegation Search Screen lets you configure search filters to find additional users to add as delegates. A delegate is another user that you can temporarily grant permission to view and resolve your workflow work items.

Enable/Disable User Search Screen

The Enable/Disable User Search Screen lets you configure search filters to enable/disable users who match specific criteria.

EndCertification User Search Screen

The EndCertification User Search Screen lets you configure search filters to identify users whose certification cycle should be completed.

End User License Agreement Search Screen

The End User License Agreement Search Screen lets you configure the Self Registration task with a page that is specific to your identity-based application.

Explore and Correlate Search

The Explore and Correlate Search Screen lets you configure search filters for explore and correlate definitions that match specific criteria.

Feeder File Upload Search

The Feeder File Upload Search Screen lets you browse for the feeder file to upload. A feeder file is used to automate repeated actions performed on large number of managed objects.

Forgotten Password Search Screen/Forgotten User ID Search Screen

The Forgotten Password Search Screen lets you configure the Forgotten Password task to prompt users for information that verifies their identity.

Group Search Screen

The Group Search Screen lets you configure search filters for groups, such as groups within the finance organization.

Identity Policy Set Search Screen

The Identity Policy Set Search Screen lets you configure search filters to find identity policy sets that match specific criteria.

Logical Attribute Handler Search Screen

The Logical Attribute Handler Search Screen lets you configure search filters to find logical attribute handlers. This search screen is used to find a logical attribute handler to view or modify its configuration.

Manage Reports Search Screen

The Manage Reports Search Screen lets you configure search filters to find a report to view or delete.

NonCertified User Search Screen

The NonCertified User Search Screen lets you configure search filters to find users who were not certified by the end of the certification period.

Organization Search Screen

The Organization search screen lets you configure search filters to limit the choice of organizations to certain sub-organizations.

Provisioning Role Search Screen

The Provisioning Role Search Screen lets you configure the search filters for retrieving provisioning roles.

Account Template Search Screen

The Account Template Search Screen lets you configure the search filters for retrieving account templates.

Password Policy Search Screen

The Password Policy Search Screen lets you configure the search filters to find password policies that match specific criteria.

Snapshot Definition Search Screen

The Snapshot Definition Search Screen lets you configure the search filters to find a snapshot definition to view, modify, or delete.

Standard Search Screen

The Standard Search Screen lets you configure filters to find custom managed objects.

User Search Screen

The User search screen lets you configure search filters to find users that match specific criteria. For example, you can search for users who are contractors.

Once you complete the Search tab, Choose Tabs for the Task.

Choose Tabs for the Task

On the Tabs tab, name and configure the tabs; each one is a set of fields that you include in the task. You can include default tabs or can create new ones. For example, the Modify User task includes the following tabs:

- Profile
- Access Roles

- Admin Roles
- Groups
- Delegate Work Items

To edit the definition of a tab, click the edit icon ( ) next to the tab name.

More information:

Account Tabs (see page 58)
Schedule Tab (see page 60)

Account Tabs

Typically, the Accounts tab is added to tasks that allow you to view or modify a user.

Account Details
Click an account name to perform an action now.

Select	Name	Endpoint Type	Endpoint	Suspended	Locked
☐	ken.davis	UNIX - etc	framework4	Active	Unlocked
☑	ken.davis	Windows NT	iam-fw-wl10	Active	Unlocked

Create Account

Actions for Selected Accounts

Refresh Accounts | Suspend | Resume | Unlock | Change Password | Unassign | Assign | Delete

When the Accounts tab is added to a Modify User task, administrators can perform other actions on the user's accounts. For example:

- Suspend or resume an account.
- Unlock an account that has been automatically locked because of incorrect or inappropriate access. For example, an account may be locked when a user exceeds the acceptable number of failed login attempts set in a CA Identity Manager password policy.
- Change the user's password in one or more accounts.
- Assign and unassign accounts to a user.

For details on the other options you can provide on the Accounts tab, see the user console help for the Configure Accounts tab.

Prerequisite for Using the Accounts Tab

To use the Accounts tab, CA Identity Manager must be configured with provisioning support, and the CA Identity Manager environment must include a provisioning directory.

Note: To configure provisioning support for an environment, see the *Configuration Guide*.

Fields on the Accounts Tab

The Accounts tab displays details about the accounts the user has on endpoint systems.

Some of the more significant fields are as follows:

- Name—The login name, email name, or other name for the account.
- Endpoint Type—The type of endpoint, such as an LDAP directory, that is associated with the account.
- Endpoint—The specific endpoint that is associated with the account.
- Suspended—One of three states.
  - Active appears if the account is enabled.
  - Suspended appears if the account is disabled.
  - Activation Pending (Manual) appears if it cannot be resumed or suspended. Log in to the endpoint system to resume or suspend the account.
  - Unavailable appears if the state cannot be retrieved because of no communication with the endpoint.
- Locked—Shows if the account is locked. Locking occurs when a user makes several attempts to log in to the account with the wrong password. Unavailable appears if the state cannot be retrieved because of no communication with the endpoint.

Additional Functions on the Accounts Tab

When the Accounts tab is included in a task that modifies a user, administrators can use that task to perform functions on the user's accounts. The available functions are determined by the tab configuration.

You can select which functions are available by using the Modify Admin Task on a tasks containing the Accounts tab. You edit the Accounts tab to determine if functions such as Assign Account and Unassign Account are available in the tab.

Note: See the online help for the Configure Accounts tab for more information.

Schedule Tab

Scheduling lets you automate the execution of a task at a later date. If you schedule a task that is associated with a workflow, CA Identity Manager executes all the tasks as defined in that workflow. The status of the scheduled tasks can be viewed in the View Submitted Tasks page.

A scheduled task that is not yet executed by CA Identity Manager can be cancelled through the View Submitted Tasks page.

Note: If a scheduled task is cancelled, and you resubmit that task, the task executes immediately, regardless of the scheduled time for execution.

CA Identity Manager provides the scheduler as a special tab. To access the scheduler, you must configure a task with the Schedule tab.

Add the Schedule Tab to an Admin Task

CA Identity Manager lets you schedule your tasks for execution at a specific date and time. To schedule a task, you must add the Schedule tab to an admin task.

Note: You cannot add a Schedule tab to all the admin tasks in CA Identity Manager. If the task cannot be scheduled, the schedule tab will not be available in the Modify Admin Task screen.

To add the Schedule tab to an admin task

1. Click Roles and Tasks, Admin Tasks, Modify Admin Task.

   The Select Admin Task page appears.

2. Select Name or Category in the where field, then enter the string you want to search on and click Search.

   CA Identity Manager displays the admin tasks that satisfy the search criteria.

3. Choose an admin task, and click Select.

   CA Identity Manager displays the task details for the selected admin task.

4. Click Tabs.

   The tabs that are configured for the selected admin task are displayed.

5. Select Schedule from the Which tabs should appear in this task drop down, and click .

   The Schedule tab is added to the list of tabs that will appear in the selected admin task.

6. Click Submit.

   The Schedule tab is added to the selected admin task.

View Fields in the Task

On the Fields tab, you view the fields that apply to this task. These fields are those created on the tabs for this task. To change the fields used, return to the Tabs tab and select the tab that requires the change.

Once you complete this tab, proceed to the next step, Assign Workflow Processes for Events (see page 61).

However, if this CA Identity Manager environment does not use workflow, you can now click Submit. A message appears indicating if the task succeeded. If it succeeds, you can add the task to a role, so that role members can start using the task.

View Role Use

On the Role Use tab, you view the roles that include the task that you are viewing or modifying.

Role owners can add and remove tasks from roles.

Note: Default Admin Roles provides a list of tasks in the admin roles that are installed with CA Identity Manager by default.

Assign Workflow Processes for Events

If you enabled workflow for this CA Identity Manager environment, use the Events tab to select a workflow process for each event that the task initiates. The workflow process that you select overrides the one selected by default in the CA Identity Manager Management Console.

For more detail on default workflow mappings, see the Advanced Settings chapter of the *Configuration Guide*.

To complete the creation of this task, click Submit. A message appears indicating if the task succeeded. If it succeeds, you can add the task to a role, so that role members can start using the task.

Manage an Active Directory User Store

If Active Directory is the user store, before creating admin tasks, you may need to configure certain Active Directory features.

The sAMAccountName Attribute

The sAMAccountName attribute applies to users and groups. This attribute is required, and must be included on task screens used to create users and groups.

Note: When creating users, the value of the sAMAccountName attribute cannot exceed 20 characters. This restriction does not apply to groups.

You can write a custom logical attribute handler that generates a unique sAMAccountName automatically when a user or group is created. In this case, you can include the sAMAccountName attribute as a hidden field on Create User and Create Group screens.

See the Logical Attributes chapter in the *Programming Guide for Java* for more information.

Group Type and Scope

In Active Directory, there are two types of groups:

- Security--Listed in Access Control Lists (ACLs), which define permissions for resources and objects.
- Distribution--Used to group objects, such as users and groups. Distribution groups cannot be used to grant privileges in Active Directory.

Each type of group has a scope that determines the following:

- Member location--Where potential members can reside
- Permissions--Where the group can be used for access privileges (if the group is a security group)
- Group Membership in Other Groups--The location of groups to which the group can belong

Each type of group can have one of the following scopes:

Scope	Member Location	Permissions	Group Membership in Other Groups
Universal	Group members can be Universal groups, Global groups, and users from any domain in the forest.	Can be used to grant access in any domain in a forest.	Can be members of Domain Local and Universal groups in any domain in the forest.

Scope	Member Location	Permissions	Group Membership in Other Groups
Global	Group members can be Global groups and users located in the same domain as the group.	Can be used to grant access in any domain in a forest.	Can be members of Global, Domain Local, and Universal groups in any domain in the forest.
Domain Local	Group members can be Universal groups, Global groups, and users from any domain in the forest. Members can also be Domain Local groups from the same domain.	Can only be used to grant access to the domain where the group resides.	Can only be a member of other Domain Local groups within the domain.

Group type and scope are not required attributes; however, if you do not specify group type and scope, Active Directory creates a security group with global scope.

To create groups of a different type, you can create a custom logical attribute handler. See the chapter on Logical Attributes in the *Programming Guide for Java*.

Once you have configured these Active Directory features, proceed to the next step: Create an Admin Task.

External Tasks for Application Functions

An external task does the following:

- Allows an administrator to perform a function in an application other than CA Identity Manager from the User Console
- Optionally passes information to the application to generate user-, group-, or organization-specific tasks.

For example, an external task may pass information about an organization to an application that generates purchase orders. The administrator performing the task can view open purchase orders for the organization from the User Console.

You can view external tasks by opening the application in a new browser window, or by viewing them as tabs in a CA Identity Manager admin task.

Two tabs are available for External tasks. These tabs are configured in the same way; however, they function differently.

- The External tab is a visual tab, which means that the task displays the contents of the URL within a tab.
- External URL is a non-visual tab, which means that the task redirects to the URL entered.

The External Tab

An external tab can be added to any Create, View, or Modify task to make it an external task. For example, if you add an External tab to a Create User task, the tab appears on that task.

For an External tab:

- No events are generated for an external task.
- You can optionally use managed objects.
- In the External URL field, you can specify the address of the application as:
  - A complete address, including the fully qualified domain name--for example:

    http://server1.mycompany.org/report/viewUserReport
  - A relative path--for example:

    /report/viewUserReport

    If you specify the relative path, CA Identity Manager automatically appends the fully qualified domain name of the server where CA Identity Manager is installed.
- You configure the attributes to pass to the application on the Profile tab.
- You can include or exclude the admin DN or task name in the URL.

The External URL Tab

You can add an external URL tab to a view task, such as View User. When you use the View User task, you are redirected to the web site identified by the URL. No other tabs are visible.

For an External URL tab:

- The external URL tab must be the only tab in the task. If there are other tabs associated with the same task, the external tab will not redirect users to the specified URL.
- The task can generate events which can be audited.
- In the External URL field, you can specify the address of the application as:
  - A complete address, including the fully qualified domain name--for example:

    http://server1.mycompany.org/report/viewUserReport
  - A relative path--for example:

    /report/viewUserReport

    If you specify the relative path, CA Identity Manager automatically appends the fully qualified domain name of the server where CA Identity Manager is installed.
- You can optionally use managed objects.
- You can configure attributes to pass to the URL.

  Supply a URL for the application that you want to start and include the attributes that you want to pass to the application.
- You can include or exclude the admin DN or task name in the URL.

Advanced Task Components

Advanced task components allow you to specify custom processing for a task:

- Task-Level Validation validates an attribute value against other attributes in the task. For example, you might validate that the area code in a user-supplied phone number is appropriate for the user's city and state.
- Business Logic Task Handlers (see page 66) perform custom business logic before a CA Identity Manager task is submitted for processing. Typically, the custom business logic validates data. For example, a business logic task handler may check a group's membership limit before CA Identity Manager adds a new member to the group. If the group membership limit is reached, the business logic task handler displays a message informing the group administrator that the new member could not be added.

Create Business Logic Task Handlers

You define a business logic task handler's fully qualified class name as follows:

1. Create or modify an admin task.
2. On the Admin Profile tab, click Business Logic Task Handlers.

   The Business Logic Task Handlers screen appears. This screen lists any existing business logic task handlers assigned to the task. CA Identity Manager executes the handlers in the order in which they appear in the list.
3. Click Add.

   The Business Logic Task Handler Detail screen appears.

Use the Business Logic Task Handler Detail screen to define the following information for the business logic task handler you are assigning to the task:

Name

The name you are assigning to the business logic task handler.

Description

An optional description of the business logic task handler.

Java Class

If the business logic task handler is implemented in Java, the fully qualified business logic task handler class name--for example:

com.mycompany.MyJavaBLTH

CA Identity Manager expects the class file to be located in the root directory designated for custom Java class files. For information on deploying Java class files, see the *Programming Guide for Java*.

JavaScript Filename

If the business logic task handler is implemented in JavaScript, and the JavaScript code is contained in a file, specify the file name in this field. For example, you might want to put the JavaScript in a file if the business logic task handler is to be used by several task screens.

CA Identity Manager expects the file to be located in the root directory designated for custom JavaScript files. For information on deploying JavaScript files, see the *Programming Guide for Java*.

If you store the file in a subdirectory of the root, include the subdirectory name when you specify the JavaScript file name--for example:

JavaScriptSubDir\MyJavaScriptBLTH.js

The slashes must be appropriate for the platform where the JavaScript file is deployed.

JavaScript

You can implement a JavaScript business logic task handler by typing the complete JavaScript code in this field instead of in a file. For example, you might want to put the JavaScript in this field if the script is very short or if it is to be used with no other task screens.

Property and Value

With Java implementations, these fields are optional name/value pairs of data that are passed into the init() method of the Java business logic task handler, to be used in any way that the handler's business logic requires.

To add a user-defined property, specify a property name and value, and then click Add.

Note: If you add a Java business logic task handler, you restart the application server for the handler to be loaded.

Admin Tasks and Events

Admin tasks include *events*, actions that CA Identity Manager performs to complete the task. A task may include multiple events. For example, the Create User task may include events that create the user's profile, add the user to a group, and assign roles.

CA Identity Manager audits events, enforces customer-specific business rules associated with events, and, when events are mapped to workflow processes, requires approval for events.

If multiple events are generated for a task, and the events are mapped to workflow processes, all the workflow processes must be completed before CA Identity Manager can complete the task.

Primary and Secondary Events

Generally, events are independent of other events. However, some tasks are associated with a primary event and one or more secondary events:

- A failure of a primary event results in the automatic rejection of all of its secondary events. For example, if a CreateUserEvent fails, there is no need for the AddToGroupEvent to occur for the user. It also results in the cancellation of the associated task.
- A failure of a secondary event does not affect the success or failure of any other events executed for the task or the execution of the task itself. For example, in a Create User task, an AddToGroupEvent may be rejected, meaning that the new user cannot be added to a particular group. The user can still be created (CreateUserEvent) and assigned to provisioning roles (AssignProvisioningRoleEvent), and even be added to other groups.

View the Events for a Task

You can view the events that are associated with a task in the CA Identity Manager User Console.

To view the events for a task

1. Select Roles and Tasks, and View Admin Tasks in the User Console.
2. Search for and select the appropriate task.
3. Select the Events tab.

   CA Identity Manager displays the events that are associated with the current task.

Events Generated for Unmodified Profiles

User, group, and organization objects each contain a set of physical attributes that are stored in the user directory. If a physical attribute of one of these objects is changed on a profile tab, CA Identity Manager generates a Modify event after the user submits the task. For example, if a *Title* attribute is changed on a User Profile tab, CA Identity Manager generates the event ModifyUserEvent.

If a user, group, or organization object is represented on a profile tab, but no physical attributes have been changed when the user clicks Submit, CA Identity Manager does not generate a Modify event. Instead, the corresponding View event is generated, as follows:

- ViewUserEvent is generated instead of ModifyUserEvent
- ViewGroupEvent is generated instead of ModifyGroupEvent
- ViewOrganizationEvent is generated instead of ModifyOrganizationEvent

Admin Task Processing

The time it takes to process a task depends on the steps involved. When a task is submitted for processing, CA Identity Manager performs the following steps:

1. CA Identity Manager validates the data being submitted.

   This is called the *synchronous phase*.

2. If the task requires approval, CA Identity Manager sends the task to the workflow engine.

   a. The workflow engine determines approvers, and places the approval task in the approvers' work lists.

   b. Optionally, CA Identity Manager sends email notifying approvers of the pending work item.

   c. An approver reserves the work item (which removes the item from the work lists of other approvers), and approves or rejects the item.

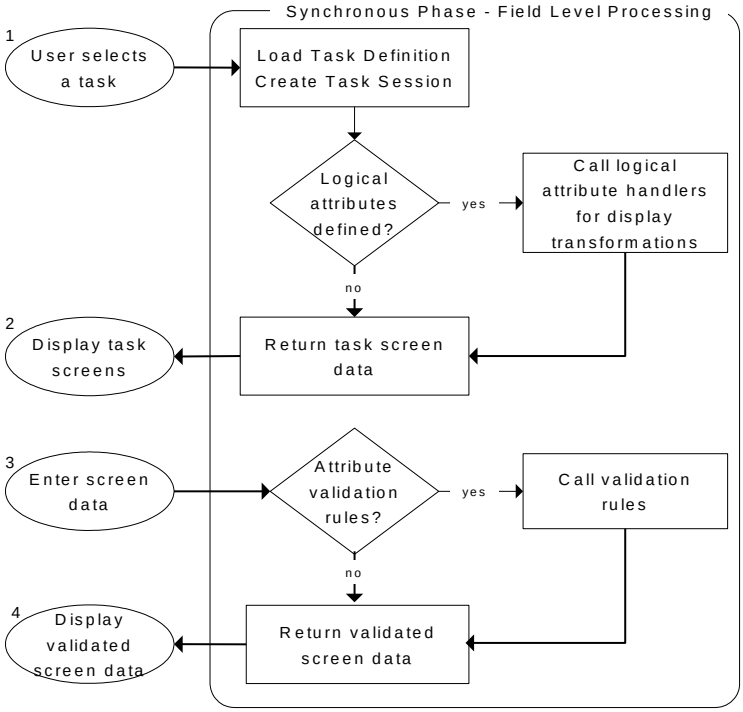
   d. Optionally, CA Identity Manager sends email notifying involved users of the task's status.

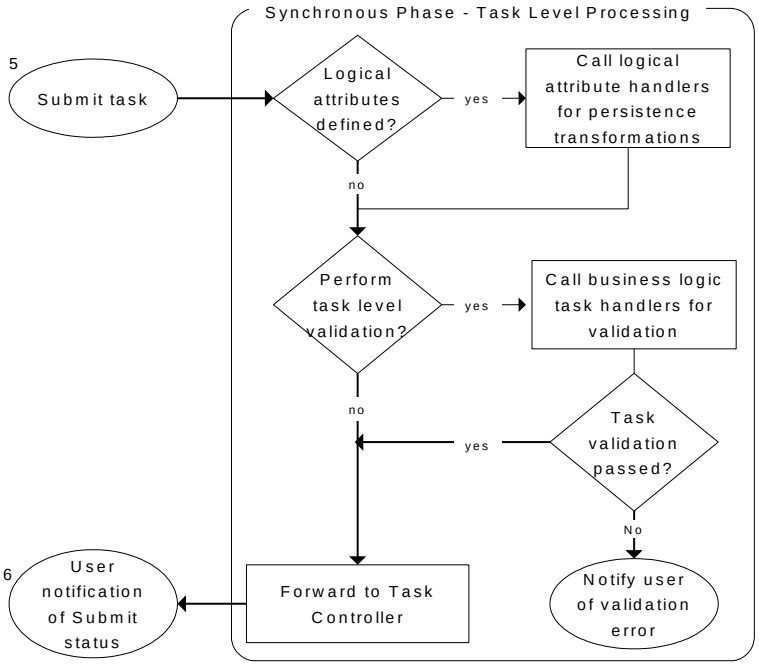
   This is called the *asynchronous phase*.

3. CA Identity Manager carries out the task, if the task was not rejected.

Synchronous Phase Processing

During the synchronous phase, CA Identity Manager can transform and validate data that users enter in task screens, and can enforce business logic on that data before the task is submitted for processing. The following diagram provides a high level description of what occurs during this phase.

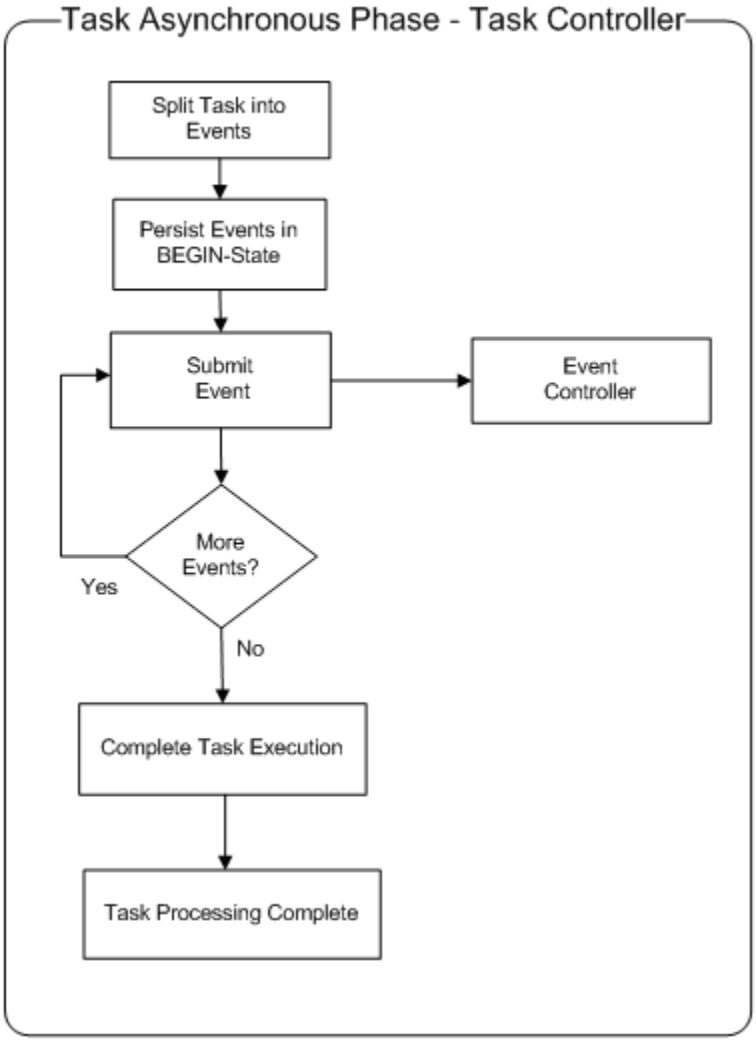




Asynchronous Phase Processing

Upon completion of the synchronous phase, the task enters the asynchronous phase for execution. During this phase, a task generates one or more events. These events may be user-defined, such as creating a user profile or adding a user to a group, or system-generated, such as writing information to the audit log.

The task controller, a component of the CA Identity Manager Server, is responsible for the life cycle of a task and its events, as shown in the following illustration:



For most events, the life cycle, execution, and actions are independent from any other event. (Create tasks require the primary object's create event to execute before any secondary events.)

Typically, an event transitions through the following states:

- Begin
- Pending
- Approved
- Execute
- Completed
- Post

Note: CA Identity Manager provides hooks, called EventListeners, that "listen for" a specific event or a group of events. When the event occurs, the event listener performs custom business logic that is appropriate for the event and the current event state. You can use the Event Listener API to write custom event listeners. See the *Programming Guide for Java* for more information.

Images for Admin Tasks

You can create images to use for admin tasks you put on the home page.

Chapter 4: Administrators and Users

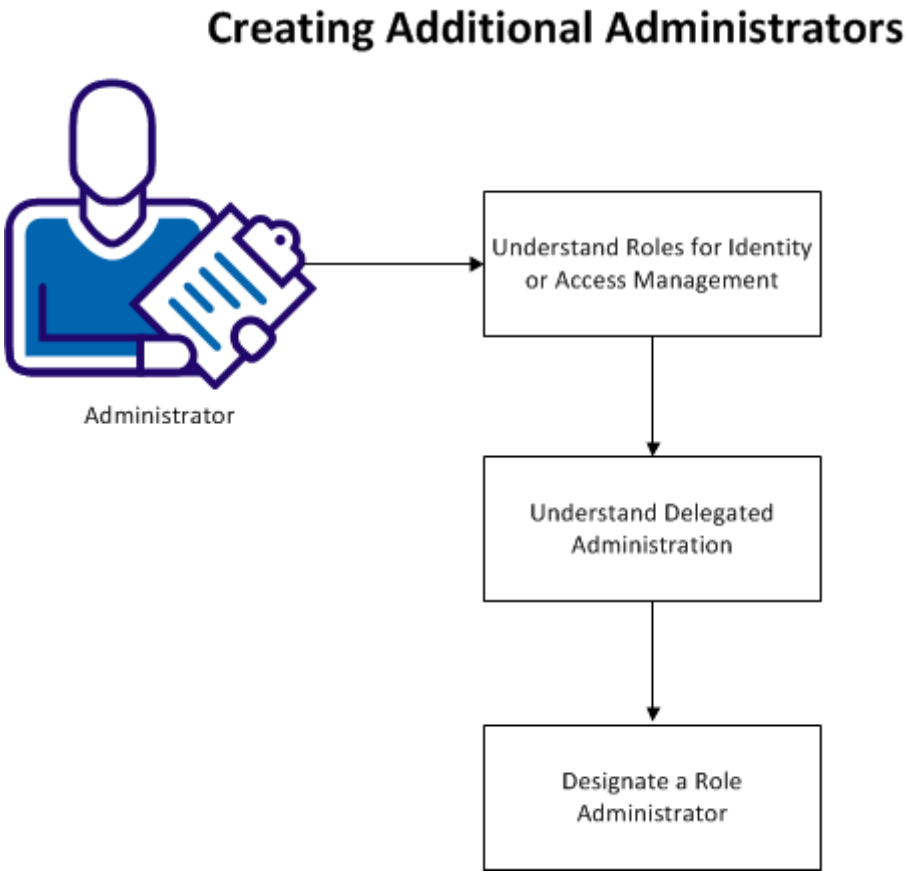
This section contains the following topics:

Creating Administrators (see page 75)
Creating Users (see page 79)
Allowing Users to Self-Register (see page 83)

Creating Administrators

You can be solely responsible for granting all roles to users in your system. You can also share the work of granting user roles by designating additional administrators. This approach is named *delegated administration*.

The following diagram shows the information to understand, and the steps to perform, in creating additional administrators.



The following topics explain how to create additional administrators:

- Roles for Identity or Access Management (see page 18)
- Delegated Administration (see page 76)
- Designate a Role Administrator (see page 77)

Roles for Identity or Access Management

To enable management of user identities and their access to other accounts, CA CloudMinder provides the following types of role:

Type of Role	Purpose
Admin role	Contains admin tasks that, when granted that role, a user can perform in CA CloudMinder, such as tasks for changing a user password or group membership. Admin roles can also include any task that appears in the User Console.
Provisioning role	Contains account templates that define accounts that exist in managed endpoints, such as an email system. The account templates also define how user attributes are mapped to these accounts.
Access role	Access roles provide an additional way to provide entitlements in CA Identity Manager or another application. For example, you can use access roles to accomplish the following actions: ■ Provide indirect access to a user attribute. ■ Create complex expressions. ■ Set a profile attribute that another application can use to determine entitlements.

Delegated Administration

Delegated administration is the use of roles to share the work of managing users and granting application access.

For each role in the system, a user can serve one or more of the following functions:

Function	Definition
Role Owner	Modifies the role.
Role Administrator	Assigns the role to users and other role administrators.

Function	Definition
Role Member	Uses the role to perform admin or access tasks or use an endpoint account.

By dividing these functions between users, you can share the work of managing a role. For example, you can have lower-level administrators manage role membership and higher-level administrators modify the role.

You can implement delegated administration in the following ways:

- Directly designate a user as an administrator for a given role.
- Configure *admin rules* for a role. Admin rules define which users can be administrators of a role. The system automatically creates additional administrators when users meet the criteria specified in the rules.

  Note: Only an administrator with privileges to modify a role can configure admin rules for that role. Typically, system administrators perform this activity. To configure admin rules that automatically delegate administration for a role, see the section entitled Admin Roles in the Reference Information section of the Online Help.

Designate a Role Administrator

You can designate a user as an administrator of a role. The administrator can then assign the role to other users.

Follow these steps:

1. Log in to the User Console as a user with role management tasks.
2. Select Tasks, Roles and Tasks.
3. Select one of the following tasks:
   - Admin Roles, Modify Admin Role Members/Administrators
   - Provisioning Roles, Modify Provisioning Role Members/Administrators
   - Access Roles, Modify Access Role Members/Administrators

   A search screen appears.
4. Select the role that you intend to assign to the user.
5. Click the Administrators tab.

   A list of current role administrators appears.
6. Click Add a User.

   A search screen appears.

7. Search for the user you want to add as an administrator and click Select.

   An updated list of role administrators appears.

8. Click Submit.

   The user becomes an administrator of the role. This step completes the process of delegating administration of a provisioning role. The administrator can now assign the role to other users, granting access to the associated endpoint accounts.

Delegation Steps

Delegated administration occurs as follows:

1. An administrator creates the role with rules for who is a role owner, administrator, or member.
2. A role owner modifies the role, when changes are needed.
3. A role administrator:
   - Assigns more role administrators (optional).
   - Assigns more role members (optional).

   Some users are already role administrators or members by meeting rules defined in the role.
4. A role member uses the role:
   - An admin role member manages users and other objects in the CA Identity Manager environment.
   - An access role member performs functions in business applications.
   - A provisioning role member uses the accounts defined by policies in the role.

Delegation Example

You can create a role with rules for who can be a member or administrator. You can then assign the role, so that other users (who do not already meet the rules) can become a role member or administrator.

Consider the following example of administrators who manage the business application rights of end users:

- Jeff is a role owner for the Accountant role; so when the role requires changes, Jeff modifies the role.
- David and Lisa are role administrators for that role. They assign regional users as role members.

- Other users are role members without being assigned as role members. Instead, they meet the rule to be role members.

  The role members use the Accountant role to generate purchase orders and perform other tasks in financial applications.

The section Role Characteristics provides details on rules and other characteristics of a role.

Creating Users

User profiles allow administrators to manage user information; manage privilege, application, and service access; and grant users self-management for their own accounts and services. Creating user profiles is a common task for a system administrator.

When creating and configuring a user, consider the following user account elements:

Self-Service Tasks: User profiles are configured by default to grant the user access to certain self-service tasks, such as changing their password and profile information. A system administrator with appropriate tasks can modify which self-service tasks are granted to a user by default.

Groups: Groups simplify role management. For example, a system administrator with appropriate tasks can configure multiple roles for the system to assign automatically to a user who is added as a member of a group.

Admin Roles: Admin roles define the tasks that a user can perform in the User Console. For example, a task can allow a user to modify user account information, such as the address or job title. Another task can allow a user to administer tasks, such as granting a user membership in a group. When you assign an admin role to a user, the user can perform the tasks associated with the role.

Endpoint Accounts and Provisioning Roles: Accounts that exist on other systems are named Endpoints Accounts. You can assign accounts in endpoints to CA CloudMinder users through provisioning roles. For example, a user needs an Exchange account for email, an Oracle account for database access, and an Active Directory account to use a Windows system. When you assign a provisioning role to a user, the user receives the endpoint accounts the provisioning role specifies.

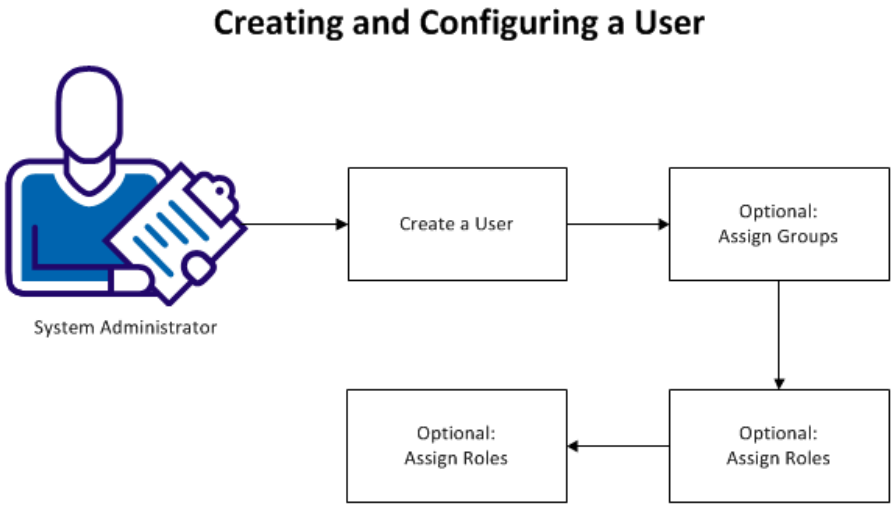
Access Roles: Access roles provide an additional way to provide entitlements in CA Identity Manager or another application. For example, you can use access roles to accomplish the following:

- Provide indirect access to a user attribute
- Create complex expressions
- Set an attribute in a user profile, which is used by another application to determine entitlements

Services: Services allow you to combine you choice of user tasks, roles, groups, and attributes into a single package. You can manage this package of privileges as a set. For example, all new Sales employees need access to a defined set of tasks, accounts on specific endpoint systems, and information added to their user account profiles. When you assign a service to a user, the user receives the entire set of roles, tasks, groups and account attributes the service specifies.

Password Policies: Password policies manage user passwords by enforcing rules and restrictions governing password expiration, composition, and usage. If a system administrator has created password policies for your environment, those policies are applied automatically to new users matching one or more password policies rules. A system administrator with appropriate tasks can modify password policies.

The following diagram shows the information to understand, and the steps to perform, in creating and configuring a user.



The following topics explain creating users in depth, and how to configure them.

1. Create a User (see page 81).
2. Assign Groups (see page 81).(if needed)
3. Assign a Role to a User (see page 82) (if needed)
4. Assign Services (see page 83). (if needed)

Create the User Profile

Use this procedure to create a user profile. Depending on how the Create User task is configured, you can also use this task to define additional profile elements. You can add a user to a group, or can make the user a member of an admin or provisioning role.

Follow these steps:

1. Log in to the User Console as a user with user management tasks.

   The default User Manager role grants the appropriate tasks.

2. Select Tasks, Users, Manage Users, Create User.

   The Create User task opens.

3. Complete the fields for the user profile information, as needed.
4. Click Next.
5. Complete the fields on the other tabs in the task, if applicable.

   For example, add the user to a group, or assign an admin role, provisioning role, or service to the user, if these options are available.

6. Click Finish.

   The user is created.

Assign a Group to a User

You can make a user a member of a group.

Follow these steps:

1. Log in to the User Console as a user with user management tasks.
2. Select Tasks, Groups, Modify Group Members.

   A list of the groups you can manage appears.

3. Select a group and click Select.

   The list of users that are assigned to the group appears.

4. Click Add a user.
5. Search for a user to whom you want to assign the group.

   To display a list of all users for whom you have administrative privileges, click Search without modifying the search criteria.

6. Select a user and click Select.

   An updated list of users that are assigned to the group appears.

7. Click Submit.

   The specified user becomes a member of the group.

Assign a Role to a User

You can assign provisioning roles to an individual user.

Follow these steps:

1. Log in to the User Console as a user with the Modify Provisioning Role Members/Administrators task.
2. Select Roles and Tasks.
3. Select one of the following tasks:
   - Admin Roles, Modify Admin Role Members/Administrators
   - Provisioning Roles, Modify Provisioning Role Members/Administrators
   - Access Roles, Modify Access Role Members/Administrators

   A search screen appears.
4. Select the role you intend to assign to the user.

   The Membership tab appears.
5. Click Add User.
6. Search for a user to whom you want to assign the role.

   To display a list of all users for whom you have administrative tasks, click Search without modifying the search criteria.
7. Select a user and click Select.
8. Click Submit.

   The specified roles are assigned to the user.

Assign a Service to a User

You can assign a service directly to an individual user. This user becomes a *member* of the service.

Follow these steps:

1. Navigate to Services, Request & View Access.

   A list of services you can administer appears.

2. Select the service that you want to assign to a user and click Select.

   A list of users that are assigned to the service appears.

3. Click Request Access.

4. Search for a user to whom you want to assign the service.

   To display a list of all users for whom you have administrative privileges, click Search without modifying the search criteria.

5. Select a user and click Select.

   An updated list of users that are assigned to the service appears.

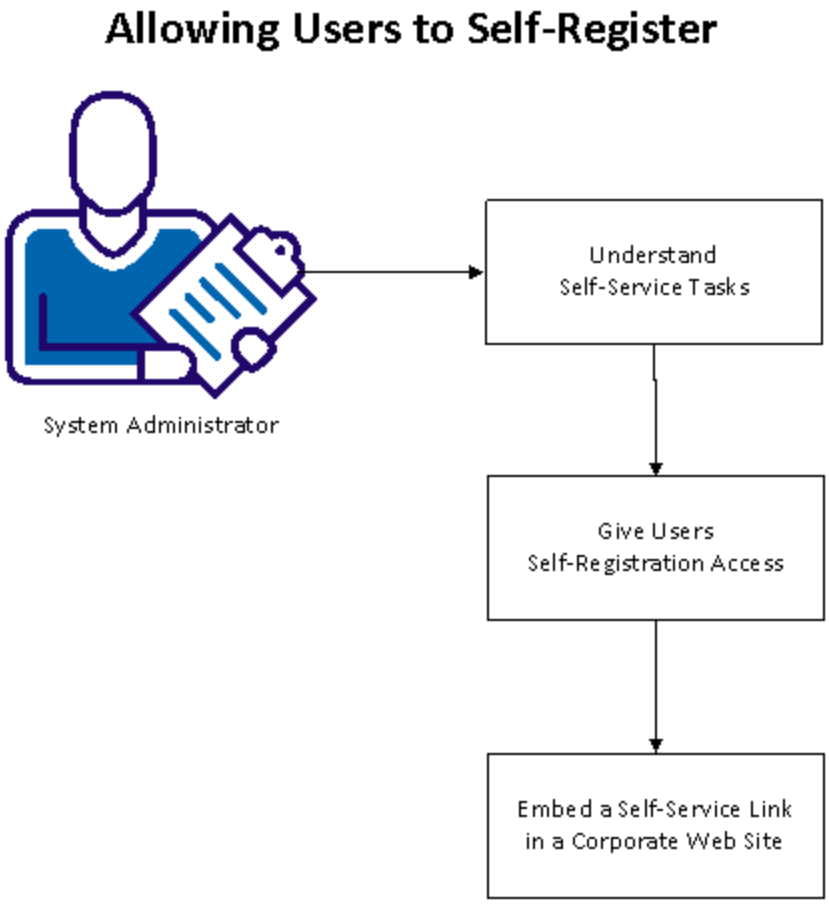
6. Click Save Changes.

   The user receives the specified service. The user receives all applications, roles, groups, and attributes you included in the service.

Allowing Users to Self-Register

Self-service tasks allow users to manage their own environment. The Self-Registration task allows users to create their own user account and profile from a publicly available User Console. For example, Bentley Cola allows new employees and customers to create their own user accounts and profiles through a link embedded in the Bentley Cola corporate web site.

The following diagram shows the information to understand, and the steps to perform, in allowing users to self-register.



The following topics provide details on how to grant users self-registration access.

1. Understand Self-Service Tasks (see page 85).
2. Give Users Self-Registration Access (see page 85).
3. Embed a Self-Service Link in a Corporate Web Site (see page 86).

Self-Service Tasks

Self-service tasks are actions that users can take, typically through the User Console, to manage their own profiles. User accounts are configured by default to grant the user access to certain self-service tasks, such as changing their password and profile information. A system administrator with appropriate privileges can modify which self-service tasks are granted to a user by default.

Self-service tasks are divided into two types:

- Public tasks--Tasks that users can access without providing login credentials. Examples of public tasks are self-registration, forgotten password, and forgotten user ID tasks.
- Protected tasks--Tasks for which users provide valid credentials. Examples include tasks for changing passwords or profile information.

The following table lists the default self-service tasks.

Task Type	Tasks
Public Task	■ Self-registration--Allows users to register at a corporate Web site ■ Forgotten Password Reset--Allows users to reset a forgotten password ■ Forgotten Password--Displays a temporary password that users can use to login to CA Identity Manager. When the users log in, they are prompted to enter a new password ■ Forgotten User ID--Retrieves or resets a forgotten user ID
Protected Task	■ Request & View Access--Allows users to request access to, and remove, services. ■ Change My Password--Allows users to reset their password ■ Modify My Profile--Maintains profile information, such as address and phone number ■ Modify My Groups--Enables users to subscribe to groups ■ View My Roles--Displays a user's roles ■ View My Submitted Tasks--Displays CA Identity Manager tasks that the user initiated

Access Self Service Tasks

Once you have configured the self-service tasks for your environment, you can add URLs for these tasks to a corporate website.

URLs for self-service tasks have the following format:

https://*domain*/iam/im/*public_alias*/ui7/index.jsp?task.tag=*task_tag*

where:

- *domain* is the fully qualified domain name of the web server in the environment where CA CloudMinder is running.
- *public_alias* is the public alias of the environment. The system administrator defines the public alias when the environment is created.
- *task_tag* is the unique identifier for the task.

  For the default Forgotten Password Reset task, the task tag is ForgottenPasswordReset.

  https://*domain*/iam/im/*public_alias*/ui7/index.jsp?task.tag=ForgottenPasswordReset

  For the default Forgotten User ID task, the task tag is ForgottenUserID:

  https://*domain*/iam/im/*public_alias*/ui7/index.jsp?task.tag=ForgottenUserID

Embed a Self-Service Link in a Corporate Web Site

To allow access to a public self-service task from a corporate website, you can add a link to any web page. When a user clicks the link, a task screen opens. When the user completes the task, they are redirected to the User Console by default.

To change the page to which users are redirected, you can append the task.RedirectURL tag to the URL associated with the link as follows:

<A
href="http://*domain*/iam/im/*public_alias*/ui7/index.jsp?task.tag=*tasktag*&task.RedirectURL=http://*domain*/*redirect_URL*">*link text*</A>

domain

The fully qualified domain name of the web server in the environment where CA Identity Manager is running.

public_alias

A unique string that is added to the URL for access to public tasks.

Public tasks are self-service tasks, such as self-registration or forgotten password tasks. Users do not need to log in to access public tasks.

Note: For more information about public tasks and aliases, see the *Configuration Guide*.

tasktag

The unique identifier for the task. To determine the task tag, use Modify Admin Task to view the profile for the task.

redirect_URL

The URL to which users are directed after they submit the task.

For example, you can redirect users to a Welcome page after they self-register.

link text

The text that users click to access the target URL.

For example, a company can add a link that allows users to reset a forgotten password and then directs them to a welcome page.

The following HTML represents an example of link text:

<A href="http://myserver.mycompany.org/iam/im/Employees/ui7/index.jsp?task.tag=ForgottenPasswordReset&task.RedirectURL=http://myserver.mycompany.org/ welcome.html">Reset My Password</A>

To return users to the page where they accessed the self-service task, specify RefererURL as the value of the task.RedirectURL tag as follows:

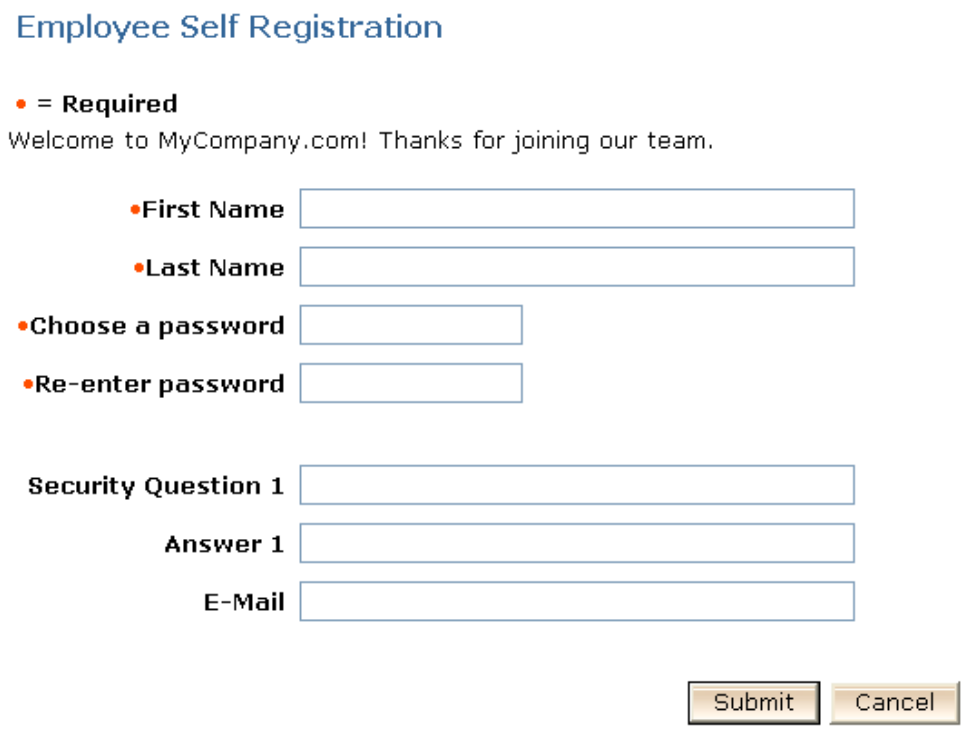
<A href="http://*domain*/iam/im/*public_alias*/ui7/index.jsp?task.tag=*tasktag*&task.RedirectURL=RefererURL</A>

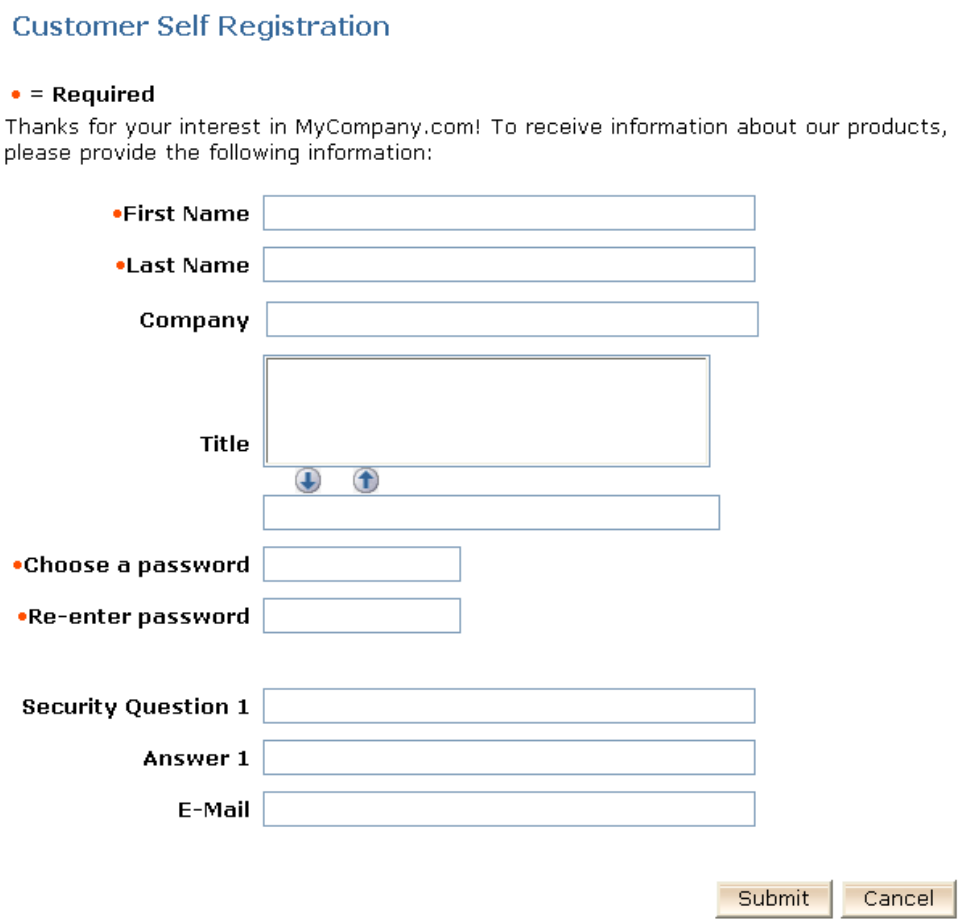
Configure Multiple Self-Service Tasks

You can create multiple self-service tasks for different types of users. For example, you can create one task to register new employees, and another task to register customers. By using different self-registration tasks, you can:

- Collect different information
- Register users in different organizations
- Redirect users to different logout pages after they register
- Use different branding

The following figures show the self-registration task for new employees and customers, respectively.





To configure multiple self-service tasks of the same type, specify a unique tag when you create the task. The Tag field is located on the Configure Profile screen for the task.

When you add the link for accessing the task to a website, you append the task tag, creating a unique URL.

For example, you might create two tasks as follows:

Task	Tag	URL
Register as a new employee	selfregistration_employee	http://*domain*/iam/im/*alias*/index.jsp?task.tag=SelfRegistration_employee
Register as a customer	selfregistration_customer	http://*domain*/iam/im/*alias*/index.jsp?task.tag=SelfRegistration_customer

Restrict Access to the Self Manager Role

By default, the Self Manager role, which allows users to manage their profile information and view their roles and submitted tasks, is assigned to all users.

To give the Self Manager role to a subset of users, delete the existing member policy and create a new policy as described in Define Member Policies for an Admin Role.

Chapter 5: Password Management

This section contains the following topics:

Password Management in CA Identity Manager (see page 91)
Password Policies Overview (see page 92)
Create a Password Policy (see page 93)
Manage Password Policies (see page 105)
Password Policies and Relational Databases (see page 106)
CA Identity Manager and SiteMinder Integration Password Criteria (see page 106)
Reset Password or Unlock Account (see page 107)
Synchronizing Passwords on Endpoints (see page 115)

Password Management in CA Identity Manager

CA Identity Manager includes several features for managing user passwords:

- Password Policies--These policies manage user passwords by enforcing rules and restrictions governing password expiration, composition, and usage.
- Password Managers--Administrators who have the Password Manager role can reset a password when a user calls the Help desk.
- Self-service password management--CA Identity Manager includes several self-service tasks that allow users to manage their own passwords. These tasks include:
  - Self Registration--Users specify a password when they register at a corporate Web site.
  - Change My Password--Users can modify their passwords without help from IT or helpdesk personnel.
  - Forgotten Password--Users can reset or retrieve a forgotten password after CA Identity Manager verifies their identity.
  - Reset Password or Unlock Account--Users can reset or retrieve a forgotten password or unlock a windows account on a system where they access CA Identity Manager.
  - Forgotten User ID--Users can retrieve a forgotten user ID after CA Identity Manager verifies their identity.
- Password synchronization on endpoint accounts--Password changes are synchronized in CA Identity Manager, the Provisioning Server, and its target systems. New passwords are verified against CA Identity Manager password policies.

Password Policies Overview

A password policy is a set of rules and restrictions. These rules specify password creation and expiration. When you configure a password policy in a CA Identity Manager environment, the policy applies to the user store associated with the environment. If a user directory is associated with multiple environments, a password policy defined in one environment can apply in other environments.

In a password policy, you can configure the following settings:

Note: Some of these settings require user directory mappings for certain attributes. See Enable Additional Password Policies (see page 93).

- Apply passwords to a specific set of users
- Password expiration—Define events, such as a number of days elapsing or a number of failed login attempts, that cause a password to expire. When a password expires, the user account is disabled.
- Password composition—Specify the content requirements for new passwords. For example, you can configure settings that require users to create passwords which are at least eight characters long and contain a number and a letter.
- Regular expressions—Provide an expression that determines the format of a valid password. You can specify whether passwords match or do not match that format. You can also specify multiple regular expressions.
- Password restrictions—Set limits on password reuse. For example, users must wait 90 days before reusing a password.
- Advanced password options—Specify actions that CA Identity Manager takes, such as making passwords lower case, before processing a password. You can also specify the priority of a password policy when multiple password policies apply.

SiteMinder users can also configure password policies in the SiteMinder Administrative user interface. These policies appear in the CA Identity Manager User Console.

Note: When CA Identity Manager integrates with SiteMinder, SiteMinder enforces *all* password policies.

Create a Password Policy

You create password policies through the CA Identity Manager User Console.

Note: The availability of some password policy options requires mapping certain well-known attributes. See Enable Additional Password Policies (see page 93).

Follow these steps:

1. In the User Console, choose either:
   - Policies, Manage Password Policies, Create Password Policy.
   - Tasks, Policies, Manage Password Policies, Create Password Policy.
2. Enter a unique name and an optional description for the password policy.
3. Configure these password policy settings as best suits your implementation:
   - Apply a Password Policy to a Set of Users (see page 94)
   - Configure Password Expiration (see page 96)
   - Configure Password Composition (see page 99)
   - Specify Regular Expressions (see page 100)
   - Set Password Restrictions (see page 102)
   - Configure Advanced Password Options (see page 105)

Enable Additional Password Policies

CA Identity Manager lets you create basic password policies that manage user passwords by enforcing password expiration, composition, and usage. You can also define these additional password rules and restrictions:

- Password expiration:
  - Track failed logins or successful logins.
  - Authenticate a login.
  - Password expiration if not changed
  - Password inactivity
  - Incorrect password
  - Multiple regular expressions
- Password restrictions:
  - Minimum days before reuse
  - Minimum number of passwords before reuse

- Percent different from last password
- Ignore sequence when checking for differences.

Follow these steps:

1. Go to Directories, <name of the directory>, User in the Management Console.
2. Verify that the %PASSWORD DATA% and %ENABLED STATES% -> 'STATE' are mapped to physical attributes.
3. These attributes are mapped by default in the sample directory.xml files. If these attributes are not mapped, see the *CA Identity Manager Configuration Guide* for additional information.

Apply a Password Policy to a Set of Users

You can specify rules that determine the set of users to which a password policy applies. This ability allows you to have one password policy for general employees, and a stricter policy for high-level managers.

Follow these steps:

1. Create or modify a password policy in the User Console.
2. Select the type of filter to configure in the Directory Filter field.

   See the following table for a description of each filter type.

   Note: The type of user store to which the password policy applies determines the options for the Directory Filter list box. Some filter types are not available for relational databases and CA Directory user stores when CA Identity Manager is integrated with SiteMinder.
3. Specify a condition by selecting an attribute and operator, and entering a value.
4. To add additional conditions, click the plus sign.

The following table describes the options for directory filter types, and provides examples of each filter type. Attributes on the left side of the "=" in the following examples are as they are prescribed in the user directory definition area. For Create-type user tasks, password policies with directory filters configured are only applied when both of the following conditions are met:

- CA Identity Manager is not integrated with SiteMinder.
- The directory filter type is not User, Group, Group Filter, or Group Search.

Type of Filter	Use this filter to...	Example
In an Organization	Browse and select an Organization.	

Type of Filter	Use this filter to...	Example
In a Group	Browse and select a Group.	
A user	Browse and select a single user.	
User filter (Not available for relational databases when integrated with SiteMinder)	Specify a filter for users.	Employee Type = Contractor Department = Security
User Search Expression	Enter a search query for users.	uid=jsmith (for LDAP) TBLUSERS.ID = jsmith (for relational databases)
Group Filter (Not available for relational databases when integrated with SiteMinder)	Specify a filter for groups.	Self Subscribing = *
Group Search Expression	Enter a search query for groups.	cn=Sales (for LDAP) TBLGROUPS.NAME=GroupA (for relational databases
Organization Filter (Not available for relational databases when integrated with SiteMinder)	Specify a filter for organizations.	Organization name = *Marketing
Organization Search Expression	Enter a search query for organizations.	ou=Boston (for LDAP) TBLORGANIZATIONS.NAME=Boston (for relational databases)
Search	Specify a query that is not included in the other options for the filter type.	(&(uid=*smith)(ou=Boston))

Configure Password Expiration

To help manage user access, you can define events such as multiple failed login attempts or account inactivity. When these events occur, CA Identity Manager disables the user account that is responsible. When CA Identity Manager is integrated with SiteMinder, you can specify a redirection.

Note: These settings require additional configuration. See Enable Additional Password Policies (see page 93).

You can configure the following settings for password expiration:

- Track Failed/Successful Logins Check Box
- Authenticate on Login Tracking Failure Check Box
- Password Expires if Not Changed Settings
- Password Expires from Inactivity Settings
- Incorrect Password Settings

Track Failed/Successful Logins Check Box

This check box enables and disables tracking of user login attempts, including the time of the last login attempt. If you enable this check box, CA Identity Manager writes login information to a password data attribute in the user store.

Note: This setting requires additional configuration. See Enable Additional Password Policies (see page 93).

When the Track Failed Logins check box is enabled, the Incorrect Password section and the Authenticate on Login Tracking Failure Check Box are active. When the Track Successful Logins check box is enabled, the Password Expires from Inactivity section and the Authenticate on Login Tracking Failure Check Box are active.

If you have multiple password policies, be sure that all applicable password policies disable login details. Otherwise, a single policy which enables the tracking of login details can cause password policies to behave incorrectly.

Authenticate on Login Tracking Failure Check Box

Selecting this check box enables logins when user tracking fails. By default, this check box is disabled. When log-in tracking is disabled, users cannot log in.

When you select this check box, be sure that you also select the Track Failed Logins or Track Successful Logins check box.

Note: This setting requires additional configuration. See Enable Additional Password Policies (see page 93).

Password Expires if Not Changed Settings

In the Password Expires if Not Changed fields, you can configure behavior for passwords that have expired. Optionally, you can specify how far in advance users are warned that their password is due to expire.

Note: This setting requires additional configuration. See Enable Additional Password Policies (see page 93).

You can configure the following fields:

After *<number>* Days

Determines the number of days after a password expires that CA Identity Manager waits before disabling the user, or forcing a password change.

Note: CA Identity Manager does not disable the user account until the user attempts to log in after the specified number of days has elapsed.

Disable User

Selecting this radio button disables the user when the password expires. Disabled users can be enabled by using:

- The Enable/Disable User task in the User Console. (The default System Manager, Organization Manager, and Security Manager roles include the Enable/Disable User task.)
- The SiteMinder administrative user interface.

  Note: For more information, see the *CA SiteMinder Policy Server Administration Guide*.

Force Password Change

Selecting this radio button forces a password to change when the user next attempts to log in.

Issue expiration warnings for *<number>* days

Enter the number of days in advance a user is notified that a password is due to expire.

Password Expires from Inactivity Settings

The Password Expires from Inactivity settings let you specify the time between the user log-in attempts. After this time elapses, a user account is considered inactive. You can also use this section to specify an action when a user whose account is considered inactive has permission to log in.

To configure settings in the Password Expires from Inactivity section, be sure to enable the Track login details check boxes.

Note: This setting requires additional configuration. See Enable Additional Password Policies (see page 93).

The Password Expires from Inactivity section contains the following settings:

- After *<number>* Days--Determines the number of days of inactivity after which a password expires.
- Disable User--Disables the user when the password d expires due to inactivity, the user account is disabled. Disabled users must then be enabled using the Enable/Disable Users task.
- Force Password Change--Forces a password change when a password expires due to inactivity. The user changes the password at the next log-in attempt.

Incorrect Password Settings

In the Incorrect Password settings section, you can specify how many failed logins are allowed before disabling the user account. You can also specify how long the account is disabled before a user can attempt to log in again. This section applies only when you have selected the Track Failed Logins check box.

Note: This setting requires additional configuration. See Enable Additional Password Policies (see page 93).

The Incorrect Password section contains the following fields:

Account disabled after *<number>* successive incorrect passwords

This setting determines the number of consecutive failed log-in attempts a user can make. Limiting the number of unsuccessful attempts protects against programs that are designed to access a resource by repeatedly trying passwords until the correct one is found. If a user fails to log in correctly after the specified number of attempts, CA Identity Manager disables the account. An administrator is required to reenable the account.

After *<number>* minutes

This setting determines the length of time that a user waits before making another login attempt or their account is reenabled. If the user enters another incorrect password, CA Identity Manager disables the account again. The user waits the specified amount of time before trying again.

Allow one login attempt

This setting specifies the number of minutes after a user enters an incorrect password before one additional log-in attempt.

Re-enable account

This setting reenables an account after the specified number of minutes.

Configure Password Composition

You can specify rules that determine the character composition of newly created passwords. Be sure to consider the maximum password length when determining values for character requirements. If the total number of letters and numbers exceeds the maximum password length, all passwords are rejected. For example, if Letters and Digits are both set to six, all passwords contain at least 12 characters (6 letters and 6 digits). In this example, if a maximum password length is eight characters, all passwords are rejected.

Password composition settings include:

Minimum password length

Specifies a minimum length for user passwords.

Maximum password length

Specifies the maximum length for user passwords.

Maximum repeating characters

Determines the maximum number of identical characters that can appear consecutively in a password.

For example, if this value is set to 3, then “aaaa” cannot appear anywhere in the password. However, “aaa” is acceptable within a password. Set this value to ensure that users cannot enter passwords of a single character.

Upper case letters

Specifies whether to allow upper case alphabetic characters and, if so, the minimum number a password must contain.

Lower case letters

Specifies whether to allow lower case alphabetic characters and, if so, the minimum number a password must contain.

Letters

Specifies whether to allow letters and if so, the minimum number a password must contain.

Note: The Letters check box is automatically selected when you allow upper or lower case letters.

Digits

Specifies whether to allow numbers and, if so, the minimum number a password must contain.

Letters and Digits

Specifies whether to allow letters and digits, and if so, the minimum number a password must contain. If this setting is set in conjunction with Digits, characters can satisfy both requirements. For example, if this setting and Digits are set to 4, the password “1234” is a valid password.

Note: The Letters and Digits check box is automatically selected when you allow upper or lower case letters, or numbers.

Punctuation

Specifies whether to allow punctuation marks, and if so, the minimum number a password can contain. Punctuation marks can be periods, commas, exclamation marks, slashes, dashes, and hyphens.

Non-printable

Specifies whether to allow non-printable characters, and if so, the minimum number a password can contain. These characters cannot be displayed on a computer screen.

Note: Certain browsers do not support non-printable characters.

Non-alphanumeric

Specifies whether to allow non-alphanumeric characters such as punctuation marks and other symbols (“@”, “$”, and “*”) and if so, the minimum number a password can contain. Non-printable characters are also included. A non-alphanumeric character also satisfies Punctuation and Non-printable character requirements.

Specify Regular Expressions

Password regular expressions let you specify regular expressions text patterns for string matching that each password matches, or does not match, to be valid. This test can be useful, for example, when you want to require that the first character is a digit, and the last character is not.

You configure multiple expressions for a single password policy. If you create multiple expressions, acceptable passwords match *all* specified expressions.

Follow these steps:

1. Type a descriptive tag for the expression (no white space) in the Name field.
2. Type a regular expression using the syntax described in Regular Expressions Syntax in the Must Match field.
3. If the password does not match the regular expression, select the check box in the Must Not Match column.

Note: You can specify multiple expressions by clicking the plus (+) sign to add the expression.

Example: The following regular expression definition can be used to require that all passwords start with an upper or lower case letter:Name: MustStartAlpha

Expression: [a-zA-Z].*

Regular Expressions Syntax

This section describes the syntax you use to construct regular expressions for password matching. This syntax is consistent with the regular expression syntax supported for resource matching when specifying realms.

Characters	Results
\	Used to quote a meta-character (like '*')
\\	Matches a single '\' character
(A)	Groups subexpressions (affects order of pattern evaluation)
[abc]	Simple character class (any character within brackets matches the target character)
[a-zA-Z]	Character class with ranges (any character range within the brackets matches the target character)
[^abc]	Negated character class
.	Matches any character other than newline
^	Matches only at the beginning of a line
$	Matches only at the end of a line
A*	Matches A 0 or more times (greedy)

Characters	Results
A+	Matches A 1 or more times (greedy)
A?	Matches A 1 or 0 times (greedy)
A*?	Matches A 0 or more times (reluctant)
A+?	Matches A 1 or more times (reluctant)
A??	Matches A 0 or 1 times (reluctant)
AB	Matches A followed by B
A|B	Matches either A or B
\1	Backreference to 1st parenthesized subexpression
n	Backreference to *n*th parenthesized subexpression

All closure operators (+, *, ?) are greedy by default, meaning that they match as many elements of the string as possible without causing the overall match to fail. If you want a closure to be reluctant (non-greedy), you can simply follow it with a '?'. A reluctant closure will match as few elements of the string as possible when finding matches.

Set Password Restrictions

You can place restrictions on password usage. The restrictions include how long a user must wait before reusing a password and how different the password must be from ones previously selected. You can also prevent users from specifying words that you determine are a security risk or contain personal information.

Note: This setting requires additional configuration. See Enable Additional Password Policies (see page 93).

The Restriction section includes the following fields:

Minimum number of days before reuse

Determines how many days a user must wait before reusing a password.

Minimum number of passwords before reuse

Determines how many passwords must be used before a password can be reused.

Note: If you specify a length of time and number of passwords, both criteria are satisfied before a password can be reused. For example, you can configure a password policy which requires users to wait 365 days and specify 12 passwords before reusing a password. After a year, if only six passwords have been used, another six are used before the user can reuse the first password.

Percent different from last password

Specifies the percentage of characters a new password is required to contain. You can set the value to 100. In this case, the new password cannot contain characters that were in the previous password.

Ignore sequence when checking for differences

Ignores the position of the characters in the password when determining the percentage.

For example, with an initial password is BASEBALL12 and the Ignore sequence when checking for differences check box is selected, 12BASEBALL is not acceptable. With the check box deselected, 12BASEBALL is an acceptable password because each letter occurs in a different position.

For increased security, Ignore sequence when checking for differences check box is selected.

Passwords	Percent different	Ignore sequence	Accepted
BASEBALL12 (Old) 12BASEBALL	0	Selected Deselected	Y Y
BASEBALL12 (Old) 12BASEBALL	100	Selected Deselected	N Y
BASEBALL12 (Old) 12SOFTBALL	0	Selected Deselected	Y Y
BASEBALL12 (Old) 12SOFTBALL	90	Selected Deselected	N Y
BASEBALL12 (Old) 12SOFTBALL	100	Selected Deselected	N N

Profile Attributes

Configuring the Match Length field prevents users from using personal information in their passwords. The Match Length field determines the minimum sequence length the password policy compares to attributes in the directory entry. For example, if this value is set to four, CA Identity Manager verifies that the password does not include the last four characters of the user profile attributes, for example, last name or telephone number.

Dictionary

Specifies a list of strings that cannot be used in passwords.

Note: A carriage return follows The last line of the dictionary entry.

The Dictionary settings include the following fields:

- Path--Contains the full path and name of the dictionary file.
- Match Length--Controls the length of strings that are compared against values in the dictionary file. The comparison ignores the case of the strings. You can leave the Match Length field blank or can set it to zero. In these cases, CA Identity Manager only rejects passwords that match a string in the dictionary exactly. When the match length is greater than zero, CA Identity Manager rejects entries during the following conditions:
  - The password includes a substring which starts with the same series of characters as a dictionary entry.
  - The number of consecutive matching characters is greater than or equal to the number specified in the Match Length field.

  For example, consider a dictionary file that contains the following entries:
  - lion
  - tiger
  - bear

  When the Match Length field is set to four results in the following actions:

  "TeddyBear", rejected because Bear matches the bear entry in the dictionary file.

  "prestige", rejected because "tige" matches the first four characters of the tiger entry in the dictionary file.

  "Geiger Counter", accepted since "iger" does not include the first letter of the tiger entry in the dictionary file.

Configure Advanced Password Options

Advanced password policy options let you configure preprocessing of submitted passwords before validation and storage. You can also assign to the policy a priority to allow predictable evaluation of multiple password policies that apply to the same user directory or namespace.

Do Not Force Case | Force Upper Case | Force Lower Case

Determine whether passwords are forced to upper or lower case before processing and storage. Choose a case forcing option by clicking the Force Upper Case or Force Lower Case radio button. Otherwise, be sure that the Do Not Force Case radio button (the default) is selected.

Important! Be sure that any case forcing option that you specify is consistent with any case-related composition requirements you have defined.

Remove Leading White Space

Select to remove leading white space from passwords before processing.

Remove Trailing White Space

Select to remove trailing white space from passwords before processing.

Remove Embedded White Space

Select to remove all embedded white space before processing.

Note: Some user directory implementations automatically strip leading or trailing white space from attribute values (in which user passwords are stored) before storing them. The settings that you specify in your password policy have no effect.

Evaluation Priority

Specifies the evaluation priority for the password policy. The value is in the range 0 (the default) to 999. Applicable policies are evaluated in descending order (999 first; 0 last).

Apply Lower Priority Password Policies

Determines whether lower priority password policies are applied after this one.

Manage Password Policies

Administrators with the appropriate privileges can manage password policies using the View, Modify, Create, and Delete Password Policy tasks. By default, these tasks appear in the Policies category.

When you access one of these tasks, CA Identity Manager displays a list of password policies that apply to the user store associated with the current CA Identity Manager environment. If CA Identity Manager integrates with SiteMinder, the list may include password policies that are created in the SiteMinder Administrative User Interface using Password Services. You can manage password policies that are created in CA Identity Manager or SiteMinder.

Password Policies and Relational Databases

If you configure a password policy that applies to a relational database, you must use the following format to configure the Password Data attribute for the SiteMinder User Directory:

tablename.columnname

To avoid syntax problems during execution, we recommend that this field reside in the primary table.

CA Identity Manager and SiteMinder Integration Password Criteria

When CA Identity Manager is integrated with SiteMinder and uses SiteMinder's password handling capability, password policies are obtained from the SiteMinder Policy Store. In this case, construct passwords that meet SiteMinder's password criteria. The following punctuation characters are the only punctuation characters that meet <stmdr>'s password criteria:

'*', '(', '\',',','@','"',':','#','_','-','!','&','?',')','(','{','}','*','.','/'

Important! CA Identity Manager does not impose any restriction on the use of punctuation characters in passwords. However, if you intend to use SiteMinderpassword capability, we recommended that you construct passwords that meet SiteMinder's restrictions.

Reset Password or Unlock Account

In the case users forget their passwords on Windows systems, you can configure Self-Service to prompt the user from the Windows logon screen. You can use this feature by installing the Credential Provider, for Windows VISTA and Windows 7 systems

With this feature, the user is logged into Self Service through the Cube web browser where a password change request page appears. After filling in this page, the user clicks Return to go back to the Windows Logon screen.

Install the Credential Provider

Follow these steps:

1. Locate the CA Identity Manager Provisioning Components download or other installation media.
2. Run the installer under Agent.

   Note: For the Credential Provider on a 64-bit operating system, be sure to choose the 64-bit version of this software.
3. Follow the wizard prompts to answer the questions.
4. If you installed the Credential Provider on a 64-bit operating system, download Microsoft Visual C++ 2008 SP1 (64-bit).
5. Once the installation completes, Configure the Credential Provider.

Configure the Credential Provider

You can use a configuration tool to configure a system where you installed the Credential Provider.

To configure the Credential Provider

1. In Windows Explorer, go to the directory where you installed the Credential Provider. For example:

   C:\Program Files\CA\Identity Manager\Credential Provider
2. Double-click the following executable:

   CAIMCredProvConfig.exe

3. Select the first credential provider as the default.

   The logon screen may not honor this setting if a second credential provider is in use, such as the Microsoft password credential provider. If both providers attempt to be the default provider, the logon screen chooses a default provider.

4. Disable the default credential provider.

5. Fill in the Credential Provider Settings fields as follows:

   Link1 URL

   The URL used when a user clicks on the Forgot Password link. This link should be a URL to a web interface for password resetting.

   The following is a sample link:

   `http://eastern.local:8080/iam/im/`*`environment`*`/ca12/index.jsp?task.tag=forgottenpassword&facesViewId=/app/page/screen/fp_identify_user.jsp&action.forgottenpassword.identify=1&USER_ID=%username%`

   For this URL, self registration must be working on the environment. Also, verify the Self Service URL for the CA Identity Manager environment works from the system where you are installing the Credential Provider. Occurrences of %username% are replaced by the value in the username field on the Logon dialog.

   Link2 **URL**

   The URL used when a user clicks on the Unlock Account link. This link should be a URL to a web interface allowing a user to unlock an account. Occurrences of %username% are replaced by the value in the username field on the Logon dialog.

   Link3 URL

   The URL used when a user clicks on the New Account link. This link should be a URL to a web interface allowing a user to create an account. The %username% tag is not expected to be part of the URL

Use Custom Title

A customized string replaces the “Powered by …” string that appears on the title bar, or in the Return dialog of the Credential Provider. The location of the string is based on the Section 508 Compliance setting.

Domain

The Provisioning domain name.

Section 508 Compliance (Use Return in menu)

Enables the Return function in a menu. If unchecked, the Return dialog is used.

Disable All Dialogs

Prevents the Secure Browser from spawning the new dialog windows, such as pop-ups, errors, and print or save dialogs. *Disable All Dialogs* is enabled to improve the system security, but can be disabled for troubleshooting purposes.

6. Fill in the Secure Browser Settings fields as follows:

   Allow List

   A regular expression pattern matching URLs to which access should always be allowed.

   Deny List

   A regular expression pattern matching URLs to which access should always be denied.

7. (Optional) Click Export to export your settings to another system.
8. Click OK to save your settings.
9. Restart the system.

Credential Provider Registry Settings

If you choose not to use the Credential Provider configuration tool, you can edit the Windows registry settings in the following key:

```
[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\CA\CAIMCredentialProvider]
```

link1_cmd

This link should be the URL to navigate to when a user clicks link 1.

link2_cmd

This link should be the URL to navigate to when a user clicks link 2. For example, you could add a link that would lead to a website for unlocking accounts.

If the link2_cmd is blank, only the link1_cmd appears in the Logon Dialog Window.

link3_cmd

This link should load a URL to a web interface allowing a user to create an account.

comp508

Enables the Return function in a menu. If unchecked, the Return dialog is used

domain

The Provisioning domain name.

langdir

The location of the localized language DLLs.

disablepwdcp

The Disable Microsoft Password Credential Provider option. 1 is disabled. 0 is enabled.

CredentialProviderInstallPath

The full directory path to where the Credential Provider is installed.

configdir

The full directory path to where the Credential Provider is installed.

selectdefaultcredential

Select the first credential provider as the default option. Yes is enabled. No is disabled.

Cube Browser Registry Settings

The Cube secure browser component has several registry values which control its behavior. These settings are in the following Registry key:

```
[HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\CA\Cube]
```

Type

```
REG_SZ(String)
```

404

The path to a standard HTML document to be displayed if the machine cannot contact the CA Identity Manager at startup.

default

The default page to navigate to when no URL is included in Link1 Command or Link2 Command.

allow

Explicit Allow ACL. A regular expression for pattern matching URLs that is always allowed. For more information, see Cube Access Control Lists (see page 111).

close

Closes the secure browser and returns the user to the Credential Provider forgotten password dialog.

deny

Explicit Deny ACL. A regular expression for pattern matching URLs that should always be denied access. For more information, see Cube Access Control Lists (see page 111).

langdir

The location of the localized language DLLs.

rejectinvalidcerts

Controls whether the Credential Provider accepts only valid SSL certificates. When set to no, this option permits expired or invalid SSL certificates.

Valid values for this key are *yes* and *no.*

unreachable

Redirects to a URL when the Cube encounters connectivity issues.

Sample Value: file:///C:\unreachable.html

usecustomtitle

This enables the custom title for the Credential Provider.

customtitle

This a title you want to appear in the Credential Provider.

Cube Access Control Lists

Cube ACLs are regular expression patterns that explicitly allow or deny permission to navigate to a selected URL. ACLs evaluate in the following order:

1. Allow (Permission is automatically allowed first)
2. Deny (Denied URLs are checked second)

Access Control List Examples

"allow"="(.pdf)"

Allow all PDF documents to be displayed.

"deny"="(.doc|.xls)"

Deny access to Microsoft Word and Excel documents.

Customize the Powered by Message

You may notice a "Powered by..." message in the Return dialog or the Return menu option of the Credential Provider. You can edit or remove this message.

To customize the Powered By message

1. Download ResEdit, a freeware resource editor from http://www.resedit.net.
2. Start ResEdit.
3. Edit the file 1033.dll in the languages folder.
4. Double-click String Table.
5. Remove or modify resource ID 135, the English version of the resource for this message.

Reset a Password for a Windows Login

After the Credential Provider is installed on a Windows system, a Forgot Password link appears on the standard Microsoft Windows logon dialog. Use this link to reset your password or see clues to help you remember it.

To reset a password for a Windows login

1. Click Login from the Windows Security dialog. The Windows Login dialog appears.
2. Enter a valid user name.
3. Click Forgot Password.

   The CA Identity Manager Password Clue page appears.

   If you remember your password, return to the login dialog to continue. Otherwise, perform step 4 to authenticate to CA Identity Manager Self Service.
4. Type the answers to the authentication questions.

   Note: If you do not know the answers to all questions, click Request so that your password can be reset by an administrator.

   You are then prompted to change your password on the next screen.

Credential Provider Silent Install

The Credential Provider supports a silent mode of installation. Six properties are supported

LINK1

Refers to the SOFTWARE\CA\CAIMCredentialProvider\link1_cmd in the registry.

LINK2

Refers to the SOFTWARE\CA\CAIMCredentialProvider\link2_cmd in the registry.

LINK3

Refers to the SOFTWARE\CA\CAIMCredentialProvider\link3_cmd in the registry.

DOMAIN

Refers to the SOFTWARE\CA\CAIMCredentialProvider\domain in the registry.

COMP508

Refers to the SOFTWARE\CA\CAIMCredentialProvider\comp508 in the registry.

USECUSTOMTITLE

Refers to the SOFTWARE\CA\Cube\usecustomtitle in the registry.

CUSTOMTITLE

refers to the SOFTWARE\CA\Cube\customtitle in the registry.

REJECTINVALIDCERTS

refers to the SOFTWARE\ComputerAssociates\Cube\rejectinvalidcerts in the registry.

UNREACHABLE

refers to the location of the unreachable page.

The syntax to set the value of these properties follows:

```
setup /s /v"/qn LICENSE=Yes INSTALLDIR=\"C:\Program Files\CA\Identity
Manager\Credential Provider\" LINK1=\"<url>\" LINK2=\"<url>\"LINK3=\"<url>\"
COMP508=\"yes\" REJECTINVALIDCERTS=\"yes\" USECUSTOMTITLE=\"yes\"
CUSTOMTITLE=\"custom cp title\""
```

or

```
setup /s /v"/qn LICENSE=Yes INSTALLDIR=\"C:\Program Files\CA\Identity
Manager\Credential Provider\" LINK1=\"<url>\" LINK2=\"<url>\" LINK3=\"<url>\"
COMP508=\"yes\" USECUSTOMTITLE=\"yes\" CUSTOMTITLE=\"custom cp title\"
SELECTDEFAULTCREDENTIAL=\"yes\" UNREACHABLE=\"<url>\""
```

or

```
setup /s /v"/qn LICENSE=Yes INSTALLDIR=\"C:\Program Files\CA\Identity
Manager\Credential Provider\"
LINK1=\"<url>\" LINK2=\" <url>\" LINK3=\"<url>\" COMP508=\"yes\"
USECUSTOMTITLE=\"yes\" CUSTOMTITLE=\"custom cp title\"
SELECTDEFAULTCREDENTIAL=\"yes\" UNREACHABLE=\"file:///[INSTALLDIR]<file
name>\"CUBE_ALLOW=\"\"CUBE_DENY=\"\""
```

[INSTALLDIR]

Refers to the value of the INSTALLDIR property.

<url>

Specifies the URL for a unlock account or a forget password.

<file name>

Defines the name of the unreachable file name.

CUBE_ALLOW

Refers to allowing the URL invocation from cube.

CUBE_DENY

Refers to restricting the URL invocation from cube.

Synchronizing Passwords on Endpoints

You can install a password synchronization agent on certain endpoints supported by CA Identity Manager. The agent intercepts password change requests on the endpoint and submits the changes to the Provisioning Server.

Password Synchronization on Windows

CA Identity Manager can intercept the password change of a native Windows account and propagate the new password to a user and all accounts belonging to that user.

When the Password Synchronization Agent detects a password change attempt, the agent intercepts the request and sends it to the Provisioning Server. The Provisioning Server then propagates the new password to the user and other accounts associated with that user.

Password synchronization has the following requirements:

- The Password Synchronization Agent must be installed on the system on which password changes are intercepted.
- The system must be managed as an acquired endpoint.
- The Password Synchronization Agent installed check box must be selected on the acquired Endpoint Settings tab.
- The accounts on the managed systems must be explored and correlated to CA Identity Manager users.
- The environment must allow password changes to come from endpoint accounts. An administrator with access to the Management Console enables this feature.

Important! Use care in formulating password rules, so that one password applies to all systems. For example, if Windows passwords must be 12 characters, any system that accepts passwords only up to 10 characters will reject the change during synchronization.

The CA Identity Manager Server is not aware of the password restrictions on the endpoint. When working with endpoint accounts, the password policy should be stricter than the password policy of the endpoints.

Install the Windows Password Synchronization Agent

You can install the Password Synchronization Agent on any managed Windows computer where global users log on. The Agent runs in the background on these machines.

Run the Installation Program

Note the following requirements:

- The Provisioning Server must manage the system on which you are installing the Agent.
- Create a user to act as the Administrator for password changes: suggested name is etapwsad. This user must have the PasswordAdministrator profile.
- Two Windows Password Synchronization Agents exist in the installation media: one for 32-bit Windows and one for 64-bit. The 32-bit Password Synchronization Agent is not supported on 64-bit Windows. FIPS is only supported by the 32-bit Password Synchronization Agent.

Follow these steps:

1. Locate the CA Identity Manager installation media.
2. Browse to \Agent\PasswordSync or \Agent\PasswordSync-x64.
3. Run setup.exe.
4. Respond to the Configuration Wizard as follows:
   a. In the Host name field, enter the name of the Provisioning Server system.
   b. Change the port as required if your Provisioning Server installation uses a non-default port.

      The suggested LDAP port that is used to connect to the Provisioning Server is 20390.
   c. Click the Find domain button to retrieve the Provisioning Server Domain.
   d. If your Provisioning Server installation is configured for failover follow the on-screen instructions to add a comma separated list of servers.
   e. Click Next.
   f. In the Administrator field, enter etapwsad as the default global user name for the Password Synchronization Agent. This user must have the PasswordAdministrator profile. It does not exist by default.
   g. In the Password Administrator field, enter the password of the Administrator.
   h. Click Next.
   i. From the Endpoint Type drop-down list, select the Endpoint Type of the host on which you are installing the Agent.
   j. From the Endpoint Name drop-down list, select the Endpoint name that was used when creating the endpoint in the User Console.
   k. Click Configure.
5. Click Finish when prompted to complete the installation and reboot.

Update the Endpoint in the User Console

In the User Console, update the endpoint to indicate that the agent is installed.

Follow these steps:

1. Log in to the User Console.
2. Search for the endpoint with the agent installed.
3. Click the Endpoint Settings tab.
4. Select the Password Synchronization Agent Installed check box.

Enable an Environment for Password Synchronization

After you install the Password Synchronization Agent, you enable the environment to receive password changes that are made on the endpoints. For this task, an administrator needs access to the Management Console and CA Directory to enable the environment to accept these changes.

Follow these steps:

1. For new users, you use the Management Console as follows:
   a. Select the environment.
   b. Click Advanced Settings, Provisioning.
   c. Select the Enable Password Changes from Endpoint Accounts check box.
2. For existing users, set the eTPropagatePassword attribute to 1 in CA Directory.

Configure the Agent for Alternate Servers

To configure the Password Synchronization Agent to use an alternate server, you use the Password Synchronization Agent Configuration wizard.

To configure an alternate server for the Agent

1. Run PwdSyncConfig.exe located in *password_sync_folder*\bin.
2. Enter the following configuration information:

   Host

   Specify the name of the Provisioning Server system.

   This populates the Server URL field with the host name you specify.

   LDAP port

   Specify the LDAP port used to connect to the Provisioning Server is 20390. Change this port as required if your Provisioning Server installation uses a non-default port.

3. Click the Find domain button to retrieve the Provisioning Server Domain.

4. Add the host name and port of the alternate servers in the Server URLs field using the following format:

   ldaps://*primaryhost*:20390,ldaps://*alternatehost1*:20390

5. Click Next.
6. Complete the remaining fields in the configuration wizard.

How the Password Synchronization Agent Works

The propagation process begins when a user's password is changed on a Windows system using any method. After the password is entered, the following occurs:

1. The Windows operating system checks to make sure the password meets its password policy. If Windows does not accept the password, the change request is rejected, an error message appears, and no further action, including synchronization, is taken.
2. The Windows system passes the password change request to the Password Synchronization agent, which, if configured for password quality checking, submits the password to the Provisioning Server for password quality checking. If the password does not meet the CA Identity Manager quality rules, the change request is rejected and an error message displays. The Windows password remains unchanged and no synchronization takes place.
3. A password that meets the quality rules of both Windows and CA Identity Manager is submitted by the Password Synchronization Agent to the Provisioning Server for propagation.
4. CA Identity Manager updates the global user password and propagates the new password accounts associated with the global user.

Note: Your password policies for Windows and CA Identity Manager must be identical or consistent, because the error messages displayed are based on the Windows password policy, even if CA Identity Manager rejects the request.

The password_update_timeout configuration parameter (eta_pwdsync.conf) specifies how long (in seconds) the PSA waits for the password-change-propagation confirmation from CA Identity Manager. If the PSA does not receive a confirmation during that time, it proceeds as if the propagation succeeded and logs a warning (eta_pwdsync.log) that password change propagation could not be verified. The minimum value for the parameter is zero (0), which means that the PSA will not wait for confirmation.

Account-Level Password Quality Checking

Password quality checking is performed when accounts on managed endpoints are created or modified or when CA Identity Manager user passwords are set. Password quality checking on accounts is limited to checks based on the characters in the password. Checks of global user passwords that are based on the history of recent changes (frequency of password update and frequency of password reuse) are not performed on accounts because CA Identity Manager cannot intercept all password changes for account passwords. Therefore, it cannot have an accurate password change history with which to perform these checks.

The checking of account passwords is controlled by the following domain configuration parameters:

- Endpoint/Check Account Passwords
- Endpoint/Check Empty Account Passwords

The value for each parameter specifies for each managed endpoint the level of checking that should be performed. The endpoint can be specified in the following ways:

```
ALL
-ALL
<NamespaceName>
-<NamespaceName>
<NamespaceName>:<DirectoryName>
-<NamespaceName>:<DirectoryName>
```

The forms that include a minus (-) sign, disable the parameter. The forms without it enable the parameter. The [-]<NamespaceName> forms control all endpoints of the indicated endpoint type, while the [-]<NamespaceName>:<DirectoryName> forms control individual endpoints. The [-]ALL forms control all endpoints of all endpoint types. The default value for both parameters is -ALL.

Each of these parameters can be specified many times. If multiple values specify the same endpoint, the last value is used. You can place general rules first and specific rules later to override the general rule.

The Check Account Passwords parameter provides checking equivalent to global user password quality checking. With this parameter enabled for an endpoint, CA Identity Manager checks any password in a requested change for an existing account, including attempts to set an empty password. During account creation, if no password is provided, password quality checking is not performed.

Check Empty Account Passwords provides the added checking of empty passwords when creating accounts. If the password profile is enabled and requires at least a single-character password, an empty password causes account creation to fail. This parameter is separate from Check Account Passwords because in some endpoint types it is acceptable to create an account with no password.

Note: Account password quality checking is skipped for synchronized account passwords if the supplied password matches the current global user password.

Password Quality Enforcement

The Password Synchronization option intercepts password changes requests on native systems (for example, Windows NT/ADS) and submits them to CA Identity Manager. CA Identity Manager synchronizes the global user password and account passwords associated with the global user. Both CA Identity Manager password quality rules for a password profile and native system password quality rules (Windows NT/ADS) can be used to enforce password quality control.

Configure Password Synchronization

The Password Synchronization Agent is initially configured during installation and can be reconfigured at any time using the Password Synchronization configuration wizard. Further configuration is possible. For example, you can change settings for password quality checking or modifying timeouts, using the eta_pwdsync.conf file.

This file is located in the password_sync_folder\data\ folder. All keys in this configuration file are set during the installation of the Password Synchronization Agent. Therefore, change these keys only if necessary. See the text in this file for more information.

Important! As a precaution, create a backup of the configuration file before editing it.

[Server] Section

Key	Description	Default
host	Specifies the domain server that manages password propagation.	None
port	Specifies the LDAP listening port of the Provisioning Server.	20411
use_tls	Specifies whether TLS/SSL is used to secure communication between the Password Synchronization Agent and the Provisioning Server.	Yes

Key	Description	Default
admin_suffix	Specifies the domain suffix of the administrative user that the Password Synchronization Agent uses to log in to CA Identity Manager.	None
admin	Specifies the account name of the administrative user that the Password Synchronization Agent uses to log in to CA Identity Manager.	None
password	Specifies the password for the account name specified in the admin key.	None

[eTaDomain] Section

Key	Description	Default
Domain	Specifies the Provisioning domain where you installed the Password Synchronization Agent.	None
etrust_suffix	Specifies the suffix for the entire CA Identity Manager product.	None
domain_suffix	Specifies the domain suffix for the Provisioning domain.	None
endpoint type	Specifies the endpoint type where you installed the Password Synchronization Agent.	None
endpoint	Specifies the endpoint for which the Password Synchronization Agent intercepts passwords.	None
endpoint_dn	Specifies the Distinguished Name of the endpoint.	None
container_dn	Specifies the Distinguished Name of the container that contains the accounts whose passwords are being changed.	None
acct_attribute_name	Specifies the attribute name of the account, for example, eTN16AccountName for Windows NT.	Depends on the endpoint type

Key	Description	Default
acct_object_class	Specifies the objectClass of the accounts.	Depends on the endpoint type

[PasswordProfile] Section

Key	Description	Default
profile_enabled	Specifies whether the password profile checking feature is enabled.	No
profile_dn	Specifies whether the Password Configuration Wizard generates a DN for the password profile.	eTPasswordProfileName=Password Profile,eTPasswordProfileContainerName=Password Profile,eTNamespaceName=CommonObjects,dc=cai,dc=eta

[Timeout] Section

Key	Description	Default
search_acct_dn	Specifies the timeout value when searching for the account DN.	120 seconds
pwd_update	Specifies the timeout value when propagating passwords.	400 seconds
pwd_quality_check	Specifies the timeout value (in seconds) when performing password quality checking.	1

[Logs] Section

Key	Description	Default
log_file	Specifies the log file that contains logged messages from the Password Synchronization Agent.	..\Program files\CA\Identity Manager Password Sync Agent

Key	Description	Default
log_level	Specifies the level of logging. Valid values are: 1--Init file 2--Password update success or failure 3--Connection debugging 4--Tracing	0, for no logging

Failover

If the Provisioning Server is down or it is heavily loaded, the Password Synchronization Agent can fail over to another server. Failover requires that multiple Provisioning Servers serve the same domain and the Agent uses those servers.

The section configuring the agent to use alternate servers (see page 117) provides the configuration instructions.

Enable Log Messages

To discover why a password modification was rejected, view the Password Synchronization Agent logs. All logged messages are stored in the eta_pwdsync.log file. By default, this file is located in the password_sync_folder\Logs folder.

Password Synchronization Agent logging can contain the following:

- Error messages, which are always logged.
- Diagnostic (process flow, trace) messages, which can be enabled or disabled based on the value of the logging_enabled=yes|no parameter in the eta_pwdsync.conf file.

For additional information, review the eta_pwdsync.log and the Provisioning Server logs for the same time period.

The previous log_level configuration parameter has been deprecated but left for backward compatibility: log_level=0 translates into logging_enabled=no and log_level=anything else translates into logging_enabled=yes. If both old and new parameters are present in the configuration file, the explicit setting of logging_enabled=yes|no parameter overrides the indirect setting performed through the old log_level=number.

Verify the Installation

After the Password Synchronization Agent installation is complete, change a password on the Windows system to verify that the global user password associated with the account is changed also.

Password Synchronization on UNIX and Linux

CA Identity Manager can intercept an account's password change on a UNIX or Linux system, and propagate it to all other accounts associated with its Global User. The component used to authenticate passwords against external security systems is called Pluggable Authentication Module (PAM). With PAM, CA Identity Manager authenticates passwords against external security systems so that global users can use their existing system passwords to log on to CA Identity Manager.

UNIX Password Synchronization

A password synchronization module is provided that detects password change events through the UNIX PAM framework. The UNIX Password Synchronization module notifies the Provisioning Server of a password change. The Provisioning Server finds the associated Global User, and propagates changes to other related accounts automatically.

The UNIX operating systems that support the PAM framework include:

- AIX v5.3 on Power platform with PAM enabled
- HP-UX v11.00 on a PA-RISC platform, and Itanium® 2 platforms
- Solaris v2.6 and higher on Sparc and Intel platforms
- 32-bit Linux with glibc v2.2 and higher on s390 or Intel i386 platform

  Note: For Linux platforms, the test_sync binary must be on the PATH for all users, but only the root user, the owner, should have execute permission.

  To add this library to the path for all users, include this command in the global /etc/bashrc file:

  ```
  export PATH=$PATH:/etc/pam_CA_eta
  ```

How UNIX PAM Works

The following process describes the UNIX PAM feature's functions:

1. A UNIX user's password is to be changed for one of the following reasons:
   - Decision of the user.
   - The user is forced to change the password by system settings or manual intervention.
   - The user's password is changed by an administrator.
2. The new password is submitted to the PAM framework password service.
3. The PAM framework's password service invokes the PAM library to update the local UNIX security files.
4. The PAM framework's password service invokes the UNIX password synchronization module (pam_CA_eta) to notify the Provisioning Server of the password change.
5. The Provisioning Server updates the password of the associated Global User and all accounts associated with the Global User.

Requirements for Using UNIX Password Synchronization

The requirements for using the UNIX Password Synchronization feature are the following:

- The UNIX Password Synchronization agent must be installed on the UNIX system on which you want to detect password changes.
- The UNIX Remote agent and CAM must be installed on the UNIX system on which the UNIX Password Synchronization agent resides.
- The system must be managed as an acquired endpoint. The Password Synchronization agent is installed check box must be selected on the acquired endpoint's properties.
- The accounts on the managed systems must be explored and correlated to global users.
- The environment must allow password changes to come from endpoint accounts. An administrator with access to the Management Console enables this feature.

Install the UNIX PAM Feature

Perform the following procedure to install UNIX PAM.

To install the UNIX PAM feature

1. Select the package file that corresponds to your UNIX platform:

UNIX Operating System	Package File Name
HP-UX v11 PA-RISC	pam_CA_eta-1.1.HPUX.tar.Z

HP-UX Itanium2	pam_CA_eta1.1HPUX-IA64.tar.Z
AIX v5.3 Power	pam_CA_eta-1.1.AIX.tar.Z
Solaris Sparc	pam_CA_eta-1.1.Solaris.tar.Z
Solaris Intel	pam_CA_eta-1.1.SolarisIntel.tar.Z
Linux x86	pam_CA_eta-1.1.Linux.tar.gz
Linux s390	pam_CA_eta-1.1.LinuxS390.tar.gz

2. Transfer the chosen package file to a temporary folder (/tmp) on the UNIX server using FTP in binary mode, or any other file transfer tool that supports binary files. A sample transfer session might appear as follows:

```
W:\Pam>ftp user01
Connected to user01.company.com.
220 user01 FTP server (Version 1.2.3.4) ready.
User (user01.company.com:(none)): root
331 Password required for root.
Password:
230 User root logged in.
ftp> cd /tmp
250 CWD command successful.
ftp> bin
200 Type set to I.
ftp> put pam_CA_eta-1.1.HPUX.tar.Z
200 PORT command successful.
150 Opening BINARY mode data connection for pam_CA_eta-1.1.HPUX.tar.Z.
226 Transfer complete.
ftp: 117562 bytes sent in 0,09Seconds 1306,24Kbytes/sec.
ftp> quit
```

3. Logon as the root user on the UNIX server and extract the package file:

```
# cd /tmp
# zcat pam_CA_eta-1.1.<platform>.tar.Z | tar -xf -
```

On Linux, use the command:

```
# tar -xzf pam_CA_eta-1.1.<platform-hardware>.tar.gz
```

4. Copy the configuration and TLS files to the default configuration folder:

```
# cd pam_CA_eta-1.1
# mv pam_CA_eta /etc
```

5. Copy the pam_CA_eta module to the Security libraries folder:

   On AIX, use the command:

   ```
   # cp -p pam_CA_eta.o /usr/lib/security/
   ```

   On HP-UX, use the command:

   ```
   # cp -p libpam_CA_eta.1 /usr/lib/security/
   ```

   On HP-UX Itanium2, use the command:

   ```
   # cp -p libpam_CA_eta.1 /usr/lib/security/hpux32
   ```

   On Linux i386 or s390, use the command:

   ```
   # cp -p pam_CA_eta.so /lib/security/
   ```

   On Solaris Sparc or Intel, use the command:

   ```
   # cp -p pam_CA_eta.so /usr/lib/security/
   ```

6. (Optional) Copy the Testing programs:

   ```
   # cp -p test_* /etc/pam_CA_eta
   # cp -p pam_test* (/usr)/lib/security/
   ```

More Information

Troubleshooting UNIX Password Synchronization (see page 134)

Update the Endpoint in the User Console

In the User Console, update the endpoint to indicate that the agent is installed.

Follow these steps:

1. Log in to the User Console.
2. Search for the endpoint with the agent installed.
3. Click the Endpoint Settings tab.
4. Select the Password Synchronization Agent Installed check box.

Enable an Environment for Password Synchronization

After you install the Password Synchronization Agent, you enable the environment to receive password changes that are made on the endpoints. For this task, an administrator needs access to the Management Console and CA Directory to enable the environment to accept these changes.

Follow these steps:

1. For new users, you use the Management Console as follows:
   a. Select the environment.
   b. Click Advanced Settings, Provisioning.
   c. Select the Enable Password Changes from Endpoint Accounts check box.
2. For existing users, set the eTPropagatePassword attribute to 1 in CA Directory.

Configuring the UNIX Password Synchronization Feature

Configuration the UNIX Password Synchronization feature involves setting parameters in the following files:

- /etc/pam_CA_eta/pam_CA_eta.conf
- /etc/pam.conf

Important! Because the password of a highly-privileged user is stored in the pam_CA_eta.conf configuration file, that file must be readable only by the root account. Note that the file settings in the package file include owner=root and mode=500 and that the -p switch of the cp command preserves them during installation.

Configure the pam_CA_eta.conf File

Perform the following procedure to configure the pam_CA_eta.conf file.

To configure the pam_CA_eta.conf file

1. Navigate to the /etc/pam_CA_eta folder.
2. Edit the pam_CA_eta.conf file. This configuration file contains its own documentation.

```
#
#   CA - CA Identity Manager
#
#   pam_CA_eta.conf
#
#   Configuration file for the Unix PAM password module "pam_CA_eta"
#

# keyword: server
# description: the CA Identity Manager LDAP server primary and optional alternate
server hostname
# value: a valid hostname and an optional server
# default: no default
server ETA_SERVER ALT_SERVER

#

# keyword: port
# description: the numeric TCP/IP port number of the CA Identity Manager LDAP
server
# value: a valid TCP/IP port number
# default: 20390
# port 20390


# keyword: use-tls
# description: does it use the secured LDAP over TLS protocol ?
# value: yes or no
# default: yes
# use-tls yes
```

```
# keyword: time-limit
# description: the maximum time in seconds to wait for the end of an LDAP operation.
# value: a numeric value of seconds
# default: 300
# time-limit 300

# keyword: remote-server
# description: identifies whether on premise or cloud Identity Manager
#              server is used.
#              Cloud based server is accessed by proxying the requests
#              through the on-premise CS, requiring use of remote-server
#              set to 'yes'.
# value: yes or no
# default: no
# remote-server no

# keyword: size-limit
# description: the maximum number of entries returned by the CA Identity Manager
server
# value: a numeric value
# default: 100
# size-limit 100


# keyword: root
# description: the root DN of the CA Identity Manager server
# value: a valid DN string
# default: dc=eta
# root dc=eta


# keyword: domain
# description: the name of the CA Identity Manager domain
# value: a string
# default: im
# domain    im


# keyword: user
# description: the CA Identity Manager Global User name used to bind to the CA
Identity Manager server
# value: a valid Global User name string
# default: etaadmin
# user etaadmin


# keyword: password
# description: the clear-text password of the "binding" CA Identity Manager Global
User
# value: the password of the above Global User
# default: no default
password SECRET
```

```
# keyword: directory-type
# description: the CA Identity Manager Unix Endpoint type of this Unix server
# value: ETC or NIS
# default: ETC
# endpoint-type ETC


# keyword: endpoint-name
# description: the CA Identity Manager Unix Endpoint name of this Unix server
# value: a valid Unix Endpoint name string
# default:
# ETC: the result of the "hostname" command (ie: gethostname() system call)
# NIS: "domain [hostname]" where "domain" is the result of the "domainname" command
#  (ie: getdomainname() system call) and "hostname" the result of the "hostname"
#    command (ie: gethostname() system call)
# endpoint-name dirname


# keyword: tls-cacert-file
# description: the name of the CA Identity Manager CA certificate file
# value: a valid full path file name
# default: /etc/pam_CA_eta/et2_cacert.pem
# tls-cacert-file /etc/pam_CA_eta/et2_cacert.pem


# keyword: tls-cert-file
# description: the name of the CA Identity Manager client certificate file
# value: a valid full path file name
# default: /etc/pam_CA_eta/eta2_clientcert.pem
# tls-cert-file /etc/pam_CA_eta/eta2_clientcert.pem


# keyword: tls-key-file
# description: the name of the CA Identity Manager client private key file
# value: a valid full path file name
# default: /etc/pam_CA_eta/eta2_clientkey.pem
# tls-key-file /etc/pam_CA_eta/eta2_clientkey.pem


# keyword: tls-random-file
# description: the name of the "pseudo random number generator" seed file
# value: a valid full path file name
# default: /etc/pam_CA_eta/prng_seed
# tls-random-file /etc/pam_CA_eta/prng_seed


# keyword: use-status
# description: this module will exit with a non-zero status code in case of failure.
# value: yes or no
# default: no
# use-status no
```

```
# keyword: verbose
# description: this module will display informational or error messages to the
user.
# value: yes or no
# default: yes
# verbose yes
```

Note: The server, domain and password parameters do not have a default value and need to be updated.

Configure the pam.conf File

The /etc/pam.conf file is the main PAM configuration file. You must edit the file to insert a line in the password service stack. On some Linux systems, the pam.conf file is replaced with /etc/pam.d, so you will need to edit the /etc/pam.d/system-auth file.

To configure the pam.conf file

1. Navigate to the /etc directory, or /etc/pam.d directory if you are configuring the PAM module on an appropriate Linux system.
2. Edit the pam.conf file to insert a Password Synchronization line in the password service stack. For platform-specific configurations, see the examples that follow:

   passwd password required /usr/lib/security/pam_unix.so

   passwd password optional /usr/lib/security/pam_CA_eta.so

3. (Optional) You can add the following optional parameters on the pam_CA_eta module line:

   config=/path/file

   Indicates the location of an alternate configuration file.

   syslog

   Sends error and informational messages to the local syslog service.

   trace

   Generates a trace file for each password update operation. The trace files are named /tmp/pam_CA_eta-trace.<nnnn> where <nnnn> is the PID number of the password process.

4. Implement the following platform-specific configuration changes:

   For AIX systems, add the following lines at the bottom of the /etc/pam.conf file:

```
#
# CA Identity Manager Unix Password Synchronization
#
login   password  optional    /usr/lib/security/pam_CA_eta.so syslog
passwd  password  optional    /usr/lib/security/pam_CA_eta.so syslog
rlogin  password  optional    /usr/lib/security/pam_CA_eta.so syslog
su      password  optional    /usr/lib/security/pam_CA_eta.so syslog
telnet  password  optional    /usr/lib/security/pam_CA_eta.so syslog
sshd    password  optional    /usr/lib/security/pam_CA_eta.so syslog
OTHER   password  optional    /usr/lib/security/pam_CA_eta.so syslog
```

   For HP-UX systems, add the following lines at the bottom of the /etc/pam.conf file:

```
#
# CA Identity Manager Unix Password Synchronization
#
login    password optional    /usr/lib/security/libpam_CA_eta.1 syslog
passwd   password optional    /usr/lib/security/libpam_CA_eta.1 syslog
dtlogin  password optional    /usr/lib/security/libpam_CA_eta.1 syslog
dtaction password optional    /usr/lib/security/libpam_CA_eta.1 syslog
OTHER    password optional    /usr/lib/security/libpam_CA_eta.1 syslog
```

   For HP-UX Itanium2, add the following lines at the bottom of the /etc/pam.conf file:

```
#
# CA Identity Manager Unix Password Synchronization
#
login    password optional    /usr/lib/security/$ISA/libpam_CA_eta.1 syslog
passwd   password optional    /usr/lib/security/$ISA/libpam_CA_eta.1 syslog
dtlogin  password optional    /usr/lib/security/$ISA/libpam_CA_eta.1 syslog
```

```
dtaction password optional    /usr/lib/security/$ISA/libpam_CA_eta.1 syslog
OTHER    password optional    /usr/lib/security/$ISA/libpam_CA_eta.1 syslog
```

For Sun Solaris systems, add the pam_CA_eta line after the existing pam_unix line:

```
#

# Password management

#

other   password required       /usr/lib/security/pam_unix.so.1
other   password optional       /usr/lib/security/pam_CA_eta.so syslog
```

For Linux systems, add the pam_CA_eta line between the existing pam_cracklib and pam_unix lines:

```
password    required     /lib/security/pam_cracklib.so retry=3 type=
password    optional     /lib/security/pam_CA_eta.so syslog
password    sufficient   /lib/security/pam_unix.so nullok use_authtok md5 shadow
password    required     /lib/security/pam_deny.so
```

5. For AIX systems, edit the /etc/security/login.cfg file to set auth_type = PAM_AUTH. This enables the PAM framework, which is not enabled by default. This is a run-time setting so you do not have to reboot the system for it to take effect.

Troubleshooting UNIX Password Synchronization

You can troubleshoot the UNIX PAM feature using syslog and trace messages, and by testing the configuration, LDAP/TLS connection, the password synchronization, and the PAM framework.

More Information

Activating Syslog Messages (see page 134)
Activating Trace Messages (see page 135)

Activating Syslog Messages

Add the syslog parameter to the pam_CA_eta line in the /etc/pam.conf file to let the pam_CA_eta module generate informational and error messages. When the logging option is in use, the UNIX administrator sees information messages in the syslog files each time a UNIX account changes its password. These messages should provide enough information to diagnose basic problems.

You could set this option permanently on production systems as it does not require many more resources than when running in silent service.

Activating Trace Messages

If the syslog messages do not provide enough information, the trace mode can provide more details. For each password update operation, the trace module generates a file named /tmp/pam_CA_eta-trace.<nnnn> (where <nnnn> is the PID of the passwd process) with an entry for most of the function calls used by the module and the data used or returned by those functions.

Even though the trace files are only readable by the root account, they will contain the clear-text new passwords. For this reason, this parameter should not be used permanently on a production system.

Testing the Configuration File

You can use the test_config tool, which is located in the /etc/pam_CA_eta directory, to verify the configuration file. First, you set up the folder structure as follows:

1. Move the pam_CA_eta folder under /etc.
2. Copy everything under pam_CA_eta-1.1 to /etc/pam_CA_eta.

A sample command line entry follows:

```
/etc/pam_CA_eta/test_config [config=/path/to/config_file]
```

An example session follows:

```
./test_config [config=/path/to/config_file]
# ./test_config
./test_config: succeeded
Trace file is /tmp/test_config-trace.1274
```

As the command output shows, a trace file was generated which contains all the details of the configuration file parsing.

View the CAM Service

You can perform the following procedure to find out who started the service.

To view the CAM service

1. Log on to your UNIX machine as root by using the Telnet or SSH client.
2. Issue the following UNIX command:

   ```
   ps -ef | grep cam
   ```

   A display similar to the following one appears:

   ```
   root 13822        1 11 11:30:12 ?   0:00 cam
   root 13843 13753  3 11:56:31 pts/5  0:00 grep cam
   ```

Note: If the system's root user does not start the services, they will appear started, but you will be unable to use them. CA Identity Manager issues the following message: “Permission denied: user must be root”.

Testing the LDAP/TLS Connection

You can use the test_ldap tool, located in the /etc/pam_CA_eta directory, to verify the connection to the Provisioning Server (using the configuration file parameters). A sample command line entry follows:

```
/etc/pam_CA_eta/test_ldap [config=/path/to/config_file]
```

An example session follows:

```
./test_ldap [config=/path/to/config_file]
# ./test_ldap: succeeded
Trace file is /tmp/test_ldap-trace.1277
```

As the command output shows, a trace file was generated which contains all the details of the configuration file parsing and the connection to the Provisioning Server.

Testing the Password Synchronization

You can use the test_sync tool, located in the /etc/pam_CA_eta folder, to verify that the password update of a local account is effectively propagated by the Provisioning Server. A sample command line entry follows:

```
/etc/pam_CA_eta/test_sync <user> <password> [config=/path/to/config_file]
```

An example session follows:

```
# /etc/pam_CA_eta/test_sync pam002 newpass1234
CA Identity Manager password synchronization started.
:ETA_S_0245<MGU>, Global User 'pam002' and associated account passwords updated
successfully: (accounts updated: 2, unchanged: 0, failures: 0)
CA Identity Manager password synchronization succeeded.
/etc/pam_CA_eta/test_sync: succeeded
Trace file is /tmp/test_sync-trace.2244
```

As the command output shows, a trace file was generated which contains all of the details of the configuration file parsing, the connection to the Provisioning Server, and the update of the account.

When using the verbose mode (by using the default verbose yes parameter in the configuration file), the command provides informational and potential error messages about the password propagation.

Test the PAM Framework

A PAM test library is available to verify that the password changes are correctly detected by the PAM framework.

To test the PAM framework

1. Copy the pam_test file to the /usr/lib/security(/hpux32) folder.
2. Add a password class line for the pam_test library with no parameters.

   An example for Solaris follows:

   ```
   other password optional /usr/lib/security/pam_test
   ```
3. Issue a passwd command on a test user and then search for the pam_test[<pid>] tagged line in the syslog file.

   The command output shows the name of the generated trace file, for example:

   ```
   pam_test[1417]: Succeeded, trace file is /tmp/pam_test-trace.1417
   ```

Password Synchronization on OS400

The Password Synchronization agent lets password changes, made on the OS/400 endpoint system, be propagated to your other accounts managed by CA Identity Manager. The Password Synchronization agent works as follows:

1. Install and execute the agent on the OS/400 endpoint system

   As part of the installation, the program is registered with the OS/400 system so that when users change their passwords, the agent sends the password changes on to the Provisioning Server.

2. The Provisioning Server propagates the password change to the associated accounts.

   Password changes initiated from the Change Password command (CHGPWD) or Change Password (QSYCHGPW) API are received by the agent.

3. The agent logs operation success or failure to a log file located in PWDSYNCH/LOG.

To install the Password Synchronization Agent

1. Locate the Provisioning Component installation media.
2. Run the Password Sync Agent installer or OS/400 under \Agent
3. Follow the onscreen instructions to complete the installation.

   Note: The installation instructions in the Endpoint Agent Software link are included in the following sections.

Install the OS400 Password Synchronization Agent

You must have *ADDOBJ privileges and the following are necessary for the agent to receive password change notifications:

- System value QPWDVLDPGM must be set to *REGFAC
- Program must be registered with the command WRKREGINF EXITPNT(QIBM_QSY_VLD_PASSWRD)
- The environment must allow password changes to come from endpoint accounts. An administrator with access to the Management Console enables this feature.

The agent is initiated only when a password change is made. To change the password, issue the CHGPWD command.

Note: The Global User must be flagged for password synchronization.

On the iSeries

1. Log on as a user with *ALLOBJ and *SECADM privileges (for example, QSECOFR).
2. Create a user called PWDSYNCH:

   ```
   CRTUSRPRF USRPRF(PWDSYNCH) PWDEXP(*YES)
   ```

   Note: As a security measure, the user is created with the password expired.
3. Create a savefile to store the installation package in a library of your choice (for example, MYLIB):

   ```
   CRTSAVF MYLIB/PWDSYNCH
   ```
4. On the Windows machine with the savefile, use FTP to transfer the savefile to the iSeries:

   ```
   ftp <hostname>
   binary
   cd MYLIB
   put PWDSYNCH.FILE
   ```
5. On the iSeries, extract the program from the savefile:

   ```
   RSTLIB SAVLIB(PWDSYNCH) DEV(*SAVF) SAVF(MYLIB/PWDSYNCH)
   ```

   This command extracts and installs the synch agent into the PWDSYNCH library.
6. Verify the installation:

   ```
   DSPLIB PWDSYNCH
   ```

   The following objects should be displayed:

Object	Type	Attribute
PWDSYNCH	*PGM	CLE
CONFIG	*FILE	PF
LOG	*FILE	PF

7. Set up the iSeries to use PWDSYNCH as the password validation exit program:

   ```
   CHGSYSVAL SYSVAL(QPWDVLDPGM) VALUE(*REGFAC)
   ADDEXITPGM EXITPNT(QIBM_QSY_VLD_PASSWRD) FORMAT(VLDP0100) PGMNBR(1)
   PGM(PWDSYNCH/PWDSYNCH) TEXT('eTrust Admin Password Synch Agent')
   ```
8. On the iSeries, specify the connection parameters for your CA IAM Connector Server:

   ```
   EDTF FILE(PWDSYNCH/CONFIG)
   ```

Install the OS400 Password Synchronization Agent

You must have *ADDOBJ privileges and the following are necessary for the agent to receive password change notifications:

- System value QPWDVLDPGM must be set to *REGFAC
- Program must be registered with the command WRKREGINF EXITPNT(QIBM_QSY_VLD_PASSWRD)
- The environment must allow password changes to come from endpoint accounts. An administrator with access to the Management Console enables this feature.

The agent is initiated only when a password change is made. To change the password, issue the CHGPWD command.

Note: The Global User must be flagged for password synchronization.

On the iSeries

1. Log on as a user with *ALLOBJ and *SECADM privileges (for example, QSECOFR).
2. Create a user called PWDSYNCH:

   ```
   CRTUSRPRF USRPRF(PWDSYNCH) PWDEXP(*YES)
   ```

   Note: As a security measure, the user is created with the password expired.
3. Create a savefile to store the installation package in a library of your choice (for example, MYLIB):

   ```
   CRTSAVF MYLIB/PWDSYNCH
   ```
4. On the Windows machine with the savefile, use FTP to transfer the savefile to the iSeries:

   ```
   ftp <hostname>
   binary
   cd MYLIB
   put PWDSYNCH.FILE
   ```
5. On the iSeries, extract the program from the savefile:

   ```
   RSTLIB SAVLIB(PWDSYNCH) DEV(*SAVF) SAVF(MYLIB/PWDSYNCH)
   ```

   This command extracts and installs the synch agent into the PWDSYNCH library.
6. Verify the installation:

   ```
   DSPLIB PWDSYNCH
   ```

   The following objects should be displayed:

Object	Type	Attribute
PWDSYNCH	*PGM	CLE
CONFIG	*FILE	PF
LOG	*FILE	PF

7. Set up the iSeries to use PWDSYNCH as the password validation exit program:

```
CHGSYSVAL SYSVAL(QPWDVLDPGM) VALUE(*REGFAC)
ADDEXITPGM EXITPNT(QIBM_QSY_VLD_PASSWRD) FORMAT(VLDP0100) PGMNBR(1)
PGM(PWDSYNCH/PWDSYNCH) TEXT('eTrust Admin Password Synch Agent')
```

8. On the iSeries, specify the connection parameters for your CA IAM Connector Server (CA IAM CS):

```
EDTF FILE(PWDSYNCH/CONFIG)
```

Update the Endpoint in the User Console

In the User Console, update the endpoint to indicate that the agent is installed.

Follow these steps:

1. Log in to the User Console.
2. Search for the endpoint with the agent installed.
3. Click the Endpoint Settings tab.
4. Select the Password Synchronization Agent Installed check box.

Enable an Environment for Password Synchronization

After you install the Password Synchronization Agent, you enable the environment to receive password changes that are made on the endpoints. For this task, an administrator needs access to the Management Console and CA Directory to enable the environment to accept these changes.

Follow these steps:

1. For new users, you use the Management Console as follows:
   a. Select the environment.
   b. Click Advanced Settings, Provisioning.
   c. Select the Enable Password Changes from Endpoint Accounts check box.
2. For existing users, set the eTPropagatePassword attribute to 1 in CA Directory.

SSL Configuration

SSL is used to encrypt communication between the synch agent and the Provisioning server. This is important for the synch agent because SSL sends passwords across the network. SSL is recommended to always be used.

The synch agent must trust the Provisioning Server's certificate in order to connect with SSL. Therefore, the certificate must be installed on the iSeries machine and configured so that the certificate is trusted by the synch agent. These tasks are performed by the Digital Certificate Manager, an optional component of OS/400. Please follow the OS/400 documentation regarding installation and setup of the Digital Certificate Manager.

Install the Provisioning Server Certificate

The following operating system components must be installed on your iSeries machine to use SSL:

- Cryptographic access provider licensed program (5722-AC3)
- Digital Certificate Manager (Option 34 of OS/400)
- IBM HTTP Server for iSeries (5722-DG1)

On the iSeries

1. Upload the Provisioning server certificate from the Provisioning server machine to the iSeries. The certificate can be found at:

   ```
   C:\Program Files\CA\Identity Manager\Provisioning
   Server\Data\Tls\server\et2_cacert.pem
   ```

2. Log in to the DCM.

   Using a web browser, go to http://<hostname>:2001. When prompted, log on as QSECOFR and click Digital Certificate Manager.

3. Click Select a Certificate Store and select the *SYSTEM certificate store. If this store does not exist, create a store called *SYSTEM, then enter the certificate store password.

4. Import the certificate as a CA Certificate using the DCM.

   Click Manage Certificates, Import Certificate. Select the Certificate Authority (CA) option and enter the file name of the Provisioning server certificate. (This is where you uploaded the certificate in step 1). Enter the label Provisioning Server for the certificate.

5. After importing the CA certificate to the endpoint *SYSTEM keystore, verify that the IBM Directory client QIBM_GLD_DIRSRV_CLIENT can access the *SYSTEM keystore. Otherwise, the SSL initialization call of the PSA fails.

6. Configure the Directory Services client application to trust the Provisioning Server certificate by opening Manage Applications, Define CA Trust List and choosing Directory Services Client.

   The Provisioning Server certificate should be listed here if imported correctly from step 4.

   Click Trusted for the Provisioning Server certificate, then click OK.

7. Give PUBLIC read permission to the SSL files and grant read access to the *SYSTEM certificate store:

   `(/QIBM/userdata/ICSS/Cert/Server/default.kdb)`

   Grant read and execute permission to the parent folder

   `(/QIBM/userdata/ICCS/Cert/Server)`

   Note: Adopting authority of user PWDSYNCH does not work in the / file system, so access must be granted for all users.

Un-Install the Password Synchronization Agent

If you need to un-install the Password Synchronization Agent, follow this procedure.

From the password validation exit point

1. Remove PWDSYNCH:

   ```
   RMVEXITPGM EXITPNT(QIBM_QSY_VLD_PASSWRD) FORMAT(VLDP0100) PGMNBR(1)
   ```

2. Delete the synch agent library:

   ```
   DLTLIB PWDSYNCH
   ```

3. Delete PWDSYNCH user

   ```
   DLTUSRPRF PWDSYNCH
   ```

4. Remove the Provisioning server certificate by following the SSL instructions to log onto the DCM and work with the *SYSTEM certificate store:

   Click Manage Certificates, Delete Certificate and select 'Certificate Authority (CA)'

   Select 'Provisioning Server' certificate and click Delete.

OS/400 Password Agent Parameter Must be Set Correctly

The "pwd_case_action" parameter must have the value set correctly for it to work. Correct values include:

- pwd_case_action = pwd_case_unchanged
- pwd_case_action = pwd_to_uppercase
- pwd_case_action = pwd_to_lowercase

If pwd_case_action = [invalid value] the password will be forced to uppercase.

Note: When setting the flag pwd_case_action to pwd_to_uppercase or pwd_to_lowercase in the OS400 PSA configuration file, the password might not be propagated back to the global user if the supplied passwords are not compliant to the password policy settings in Provisioning Server. For example, some password policies may require the password values to at least contain 1 uppercase or lowercase value.

Note: Note the QPWDLVL (Password Level) system value when configuring the Password Synch Agent

- When QPWDLVL is set to 0 (default value) on the AS400 system, passwords with a length of 1 to 10 uppercase characters are supported.
- When QPWDLVL is set to 2 or 3, passwords from 1 to 128 characters with mixed case are allowed.

By default, the PSA propagates the unchanged password to the Provisioning Server. However, regardless of the value of QPWDLVL, you can force the PSA to propagate passwords with upper case or lower case by setting “pwd_case_action” to “pwd_to_uppercase” or “pwd_to_lowercase” respectively.

Chapter 6: Groups

You can create several types of groups, or a combination of these types:

- Static group--A list of users who are added interactively
- Dynamic group--Users belong to the group if they meet an LDAP query (Requires an LDAP directory as the user store)

  Note: The Dynamic Group Query field is not included in the Create Group task or other group tasks even if this field exists in the directory.xml for a group. You include Dynamic Group Query field in the task by editing the associated profile screen.
- Nested group--A group containing other groups (Requires an LDAP directory as the user store)

Note: To view the static, dynamic, and nested groups to which a user belongs, use the Groups tab for the User object. This tab appears in the View and Modify User tasks by default.

This section contains the following topics:

Create a Static Group (see page 145)
Create a Dynamic Group (see page 146)
Dynamic Group Query Parameters (see page 147)
Create a Nested Group (see page 148)
Static, Dynamic, and Nested Groups Example (see page 150)
Group Administrators (see page 151)

Create a Static Group

You can associate a collection of users in a *static group*. You manage the static group by adding or removing individual users from the group's membership list. To see the list of members for a group, use the Membership tab, which is included with the View and Modify Group tasks by default.

Note: The Membership tab displays only the members who are explicitly added to the group. It does not display members who are added dynamically.

To create a static group:

1. In the User Console, select Groups, Create Group.
2. Choose to create a new group or a copy of a group and click **OK**.
3. On the Profile tab, enter a group name, group organization, description, and group administrator name.

4. Click the Membership tab.
5. Click Add a user.
6. Search for users to include.
7. Put a check next to the users and click Select.
8. Click Submit.

Create a Dynamic Group

You can create a *dynamic group* by defining an LDAP filter query using the User Console to dynamically determine group membership at runtime without having to search and add users individually.

For example, if you wanted to generate a group that lists all U.S. employees of NeteAuto, you could define an LDAP search filter similar to the following in the Dynamic Group Query field of the User Console:

ldap:///cn=Employees,o=NeteAuto,c=US??sub

You could also modify this query to locate employees outside the United States.

Static, Dynamic, and Nested Groups Example (see page 150) shows an example of a group created by static, dynamic, and nested groups.

You include Dynamic Group Query field in the task by editing the associated profile screen. It is not included by default in the Create Group task.

Note: To enable dynamic groups, system administrators configure support in the directory configuration file (directory.xml):

- Add the GroupTypes element in the Directory Groups Behavior section as follows:

  <GroupTypes type=*type*>

  type can be NESTED (see page 148), DYNAMIC, or ALL.

  GroupTypes is case-sensitive.

- Map the %DYNAMIC_GROUP_MEMBERSHIP% well-known attribute to a physical attribute that exists in the user store.

To create a dynamic group:

1. In the User Console, select Groups, Create Group.
2. Choose to create a new group or a copy of a group and click **OK**.
3. On the Profile tab, enter a group name, group organization, description, and group administrator name.

4. Enter an LDAP search filter like the following example in the Dynamic Group Query field:

   ldap:///cn=Employees,o=NeteAuto,c=US??sub?

5. Click Submit.

Note: Only an administrator with the Modify Group task can change a group's dynamic membership.

Dynamic Group Query Parameters

You can use the following dynamic query parameters in the search:

ldap:///*<search_base_DN>*??*<search_scope>*?*<searchfilter>*

- *<search_base_DN>* is the point from where you begin the search in the LDAP directory. If you do not specify the base DN in the query, then the group's organization is the default base DN.
- *<search_scope>* specifies the extent of the search and includes:
  - sub -- Returns entries at the base DN level and below
  - one -- Returns entries one level below the base DN you specify in the URL. (default)
  - base -- Uses one instead, ignoring base as a search option

  Using one or base obtains only the users in the Base DN organization.

  Using sub obtains all users under the Base DN organization and all sub-organizations in the tree.
- *<searchfilter>* is the filter that you want to apply to entries within the scope of the search. When you enter a search filter, use the standard LDAP query syntax as follows:

  (<logical operator ><comparison><comparison...>)

  - <logical operator> is one of the following:

    Logical OR: |

    Logical AND: &

    Logical NOT: !

  - <comparison> indicates <attribute><operator><value>

  For example:

  (&(city=boston)(state=Massachusetts))

  The default search filter is (objectclass=*).

Note the following when creating a dynamic query:

- The "ldap" prefix must be lowercase, for example:

  ldap:///o=MyCorporation??sub?(title=Manager)

- You cannot specify the LDAP server host name or port number. All searches occur within the LDAP directory that is associated with the environment.

The following table includes sample LDAP queries:

Description	Query
All users who are managers.	ldap:///o=MyCorporation??sub?(title=Manager)
All managers in the New York West branch office	ldap:///o=MyCorporation??one?(&(title=Manager) (roomNumber=NYWest))
All technicians with a cell phone	ldap:///o=MyCorporation??one? (&(employeetype=technician) (mobile=*))
All employees whose employee numbers are between 1000 and 2000	ldap:///o=MyCorporation, (& (ou=employee) (employeenumber >=1000) (employeenumber <=2000))
All help desk administrators who have been employed at the company for more than 6 months	ldap:///o=MyCorporation,(& (cn=helpdeskadmin) (DOH => 2004/04/22) **Note:** This query requires that you create a DOH attribute for the user's date of hire.

Note: The > and < (greater than and less than) comparisons are lexicographic, not arithmetic. For details on their use, see the documentation for your LDAP directory server.

Create a Nested Group

If the user store is an LDAP directory, you can add a group as a member of another group. The group is called a *nested group*.

The group containing the nested group is called a *parent group*. Members of the nested group become members of the parent group. However, members of the parent group do not become members of a nested group.

Nested groups are similar to email distribution lists where one list can be a member of another. With nested groups, you can add groups and users as members in the group. By nesting a group in another group's membership list, you could include all nested groups members.

For example, if you created separate groups for the manufacturing, design, shipping, and accounting divisions of a company, you can construct a parent group for the entire company by nesting all the separate division groups as members of the company parent group. As a result, any changes you made to the manufacturing, design, shipping, and accounting nested groups would be automatically reflected in the nested group for the entire company. A group that is nested within another group can be dynamic and/or contain other nested groups.

The figure in Static, Dynamic, and Nested Groups Example (see page 150) shows a parent group created by static, dynamic, and nested groups.

Be aware of the following before creating a nested group:

- Only an administrator with the Modify Group Members task can add or change nested groups from the group's static member list in the User Console.
- Only users with the appropriate administrator privileges can modify, add, or remove members from a group.

  For example, if parent Group A is created by nested groups B and C, the Group A administrator can only modify the members of Group A and not B and C. Groups B and C can only be modified by their appropriate administrators.
- To enable nested groups, system administrators configure nested group support in the directory configuration file (directory.xml):
  - Add the GroupTypes element in the Directory Groups Behavior section as follows:

    <GroupTypes type=*type*>

    type can be NESTED, DYNAMIC (see page 146), or ALL.

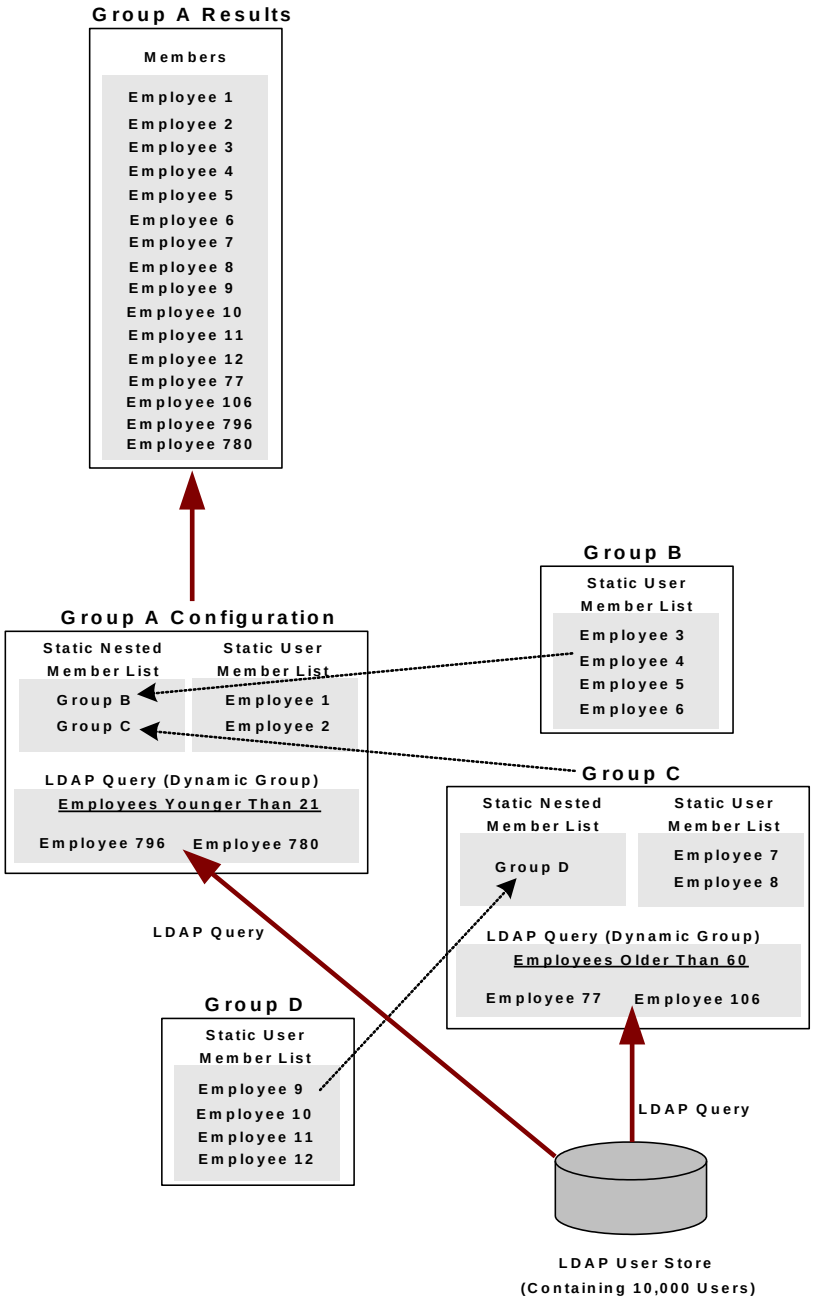
    GroupTypes is case-sensitive.
  - Map the %NESTED_GROUP_MEMBERSHIP% well-known attribute to a physical attribute that exists in the user store.

To create a nested group:

1. In the User Console, select Groups, Create Group.
2. Choose to create a new group or a copy of a group and click **OK**.
3. On the Profile tab, enter a group name, group organization, description, and group administrator name.
4. On the Membership tab:
   a. Click Add a group to add a nested group to this group.
   b. Search for an existing group.
   c. Put a check next to the group and click Select.
   d. Click Submit.

Static, Dynamic, and Nested Groups Example

Groups can be complex, consisting of a combination of dynamic, static, or nested groups. The following figure shows an example of a parent group created by static, dynamic, and nested groups.



In the previous figure:

- Parent Group A contains nested groups B and C, two static users, and a dynamic LDAP query that lists all employees who are younger than 21 years old.
- Group B is composed of four static users.
- Parent Group C contains nested Group D, two static users, and a dynamic LDAP query that lists all employees who are older than 60 years old.
- Group D contains four static users.
- The top of the figure lists the Group A members that result from the nested groups, dynamic queries, and static user member lists from Groups B, C, and D.

Group Administrators

On the Administrators tab of the Create or Modify Group tasks, you can specify users and groups as administrators of a group. When you assign a user as a group administrator, make sure that the administrator has a role with appropriate scope for managing the group. For example:

1. Use Modify Group to assign a user as an administrator of a group.
2. Assign that user an admin role with group management tasks, such as Modify Group Members, or user management tasks with a Groups tab.
3. Check that the role has appropriate scope over the group.
    a. Use View Admin Role on the role that you assigned with group management tasks.
    b. On the Members tab, verify that a policy exists with the following:

        A member rule that the group administrator meets

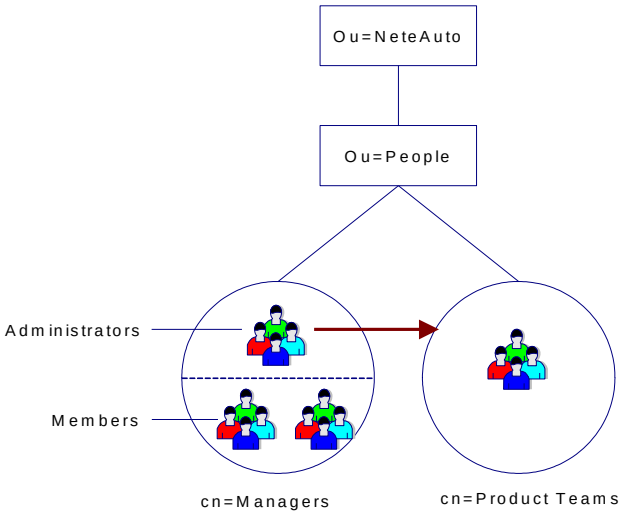
        A scope rule that includes the group

        A scope rule that includes some users to be added to the group

Note: To enable groups to be administrators of other groups, system administrators configure group administrator support in the directory configuration file (directory.xml):

- Set the AdminGroupTypes type=ALL in the Directory AdminGroups Behavior section. AdminGroupTypes is case-sensitive.
- Map the %GROUP_ADMIN_GROUP% well-known attribute to a physical attribute that exists in the user store.

When you assign a group as an administrator, only administrators of that group will be administrators of the group you are creating or modifying. Members of the administrator group you specify will not have privileges to manage the group. The following illustration shows a group as an administrator of another group.



In this example:

- The group Managers is an administrator of the group Product Teams.
- Administrators of the Managers can manage the Product Teams group. Members of the Managers group cannot.

Chapter 7: Managed Endpoint Accounts

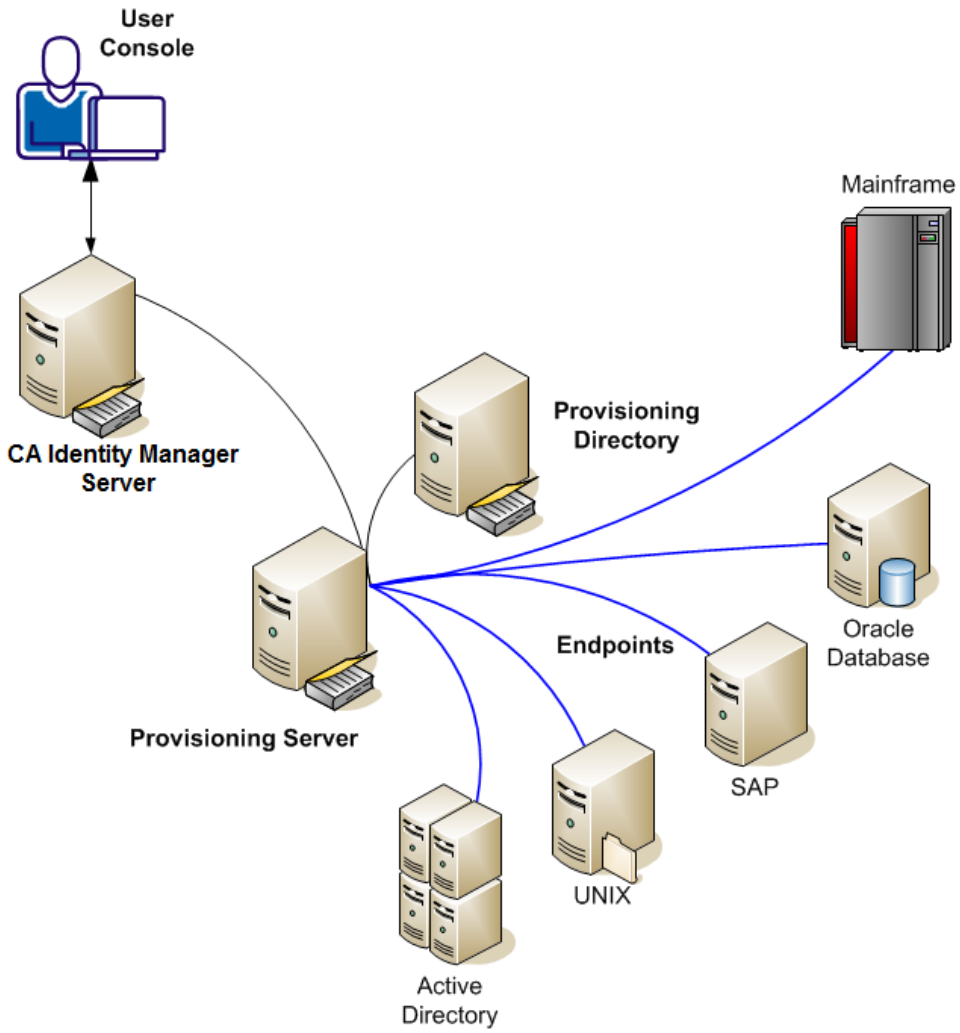
In CA Identity Manager, you can manage accounts on endpoint systems if your installation of CA Identity Manager has a Provisioning Server. You can manage accounts, such as an Exchange, Windows NT, or Oracle account, and manage orphan and system accounts, which are accounts not currently associated with CA Identity Manager.

This section contains the following topics:

Integrating Managed Endpoints (see page 154)
Synchronize Users, Accounts, and Roles (see page 161)
Reverse Synchronization with Endpoint Accounts (see page 168)
Extend Custom Attributes on Endpoints (see page 179)
Account Tasks (see page 180)
Advanced Account Operations (see page 185)

Integrating Managed Endpoints

With CA Identity Manager, you can manage accounts on multiple systems from a single user interface, the User Console. The accounts are on systems that are referred to as managed endpoints, or simply endpoints. In the following example, you manage users on five endpoints.



You can assign accounts on any combination of endpoints to a user. When you integrate the endpoint, CA Identity Manager associates each endpoint account with a user in the provisioning directory.

The following procedures describe how to integrate endpoints, so that endpoint accounts can be managed from the User Console.

1. Import the Role Definition File (see page 155)
2. Create Correlation Rules
3. Add the Endpoint to the Environment
4. Create an Explore and Correlate Definition
5. Explore and Correlate the Endpoint

Import the Role Definition File

You import the role definitions from a file that applies to the new endpoint. This procedure requires access to the Management Console.

Follow these steps:

1. From the Management Console, click Environments.
2. Select the environment where you are adding the endpoint.
3. Click Role and Task Settings.
4. Click Import.
5. Select an endpoint under Endpoint Type.
6. Click Finish.

   The status of the import appears in the current window.
7. Click Continue to exit.
8. Restart the environment so that the changes take effect.

Create Correlation Rules

A Hosting Administrator or an administrator with the Configure Correlation Attributes task can create rules that are used when you explore an endpoint. The Execute Explore and Correlate task uses these rules for the correlation part of the task.

Correlation rules determine how an endpoint account attribute is mapped to a user attribute in the User Console. For example, in Access Control an attribute that is called AccountName exists. You can create a rule to map it to FullName in the User Console. If the rules cause two mappings to apply to one user attribute, the first parameter value is used.

Follow these steps:

1. Log in to the User Console.
2. Click System, Provisioning Configuration, Configure Correlation Attributes.
3. Click Add.
4. Define a correlation rule as follows:
   a. Select a global user attribute list.

      This value refers to the user attribute listed in the Provisioning Directory.

   b. Enable the Set a specific account attribute check box.
   c. Select an endpoint type.
   d. Select an account attribute that applies to the global user attribute.
   e. Optionally, complete the Substring fields.

      If the Substring from field is empty, processing begins at the start of the string. If the Substring to field is empty, processing begins at the end of the string.
5. Click OK.
6. Click Submit.

Note: Whenever you change a correlation rule, be sure to explore the endpoint even if you previously explored it.

Example of Correlation Rules

The following example provides sample settings for an Active Directory endpoint.

```
GlobalUserName
FullName=LDAP Namespace:globalFullName
FullName=ActiveDirectory:DisplayName
 CustomField01=ActiveDirectory:Telephone
```

The following actions occur for each previously uncorrelated account that is found while correlating accounts in an Active Directory container:

1. The Provisioning Server compares the first parameter value (GlobalUserName) with the Active Directory endpoint account attribute (NT_AccountID). The server attempts to find the unique global user whose name matches the NT_AccountID attribute value for that account. If a unique match is found, the Provisioning Server associates the account with the global user. If more than one match is found, the Provisioning Server performs Step 5. If no match is found, the Provisioning Server performs the next step.
2. The Provisioning Server considers the second parameter value (FullName=LDAP Namespace:globalFullName). Since this value is specific to another endpoint type, it is skipped and the Provisioning Server performs the next step.

3. The Provisioning Server considers the third parameter value (FullName=ActiveDirectory:DisplayName). Since this value is specific to Active Directory, it is used. The server attempts to find the unique global user whose FullName matches the DisplayName attribute value for that account. If a unique match is found, the Provisioning Server associates the account with the global user. If more than one match is found, the Provisioning Server performs Step 5. If no match is found, the Provisioning Server performs Step 4.
4. The Provisioning Server considers the final parameter value (CustomField01=ActiveDirectory:Telephone). Because this value is specific to Active Directory, it is used. The server attempts to find the unique global user whose Custom Field #01 attribute is equal to the Telephone attribute value for that account. The name that you gave to the custom global user attribute using global properties of the System Task is not displayed here. If a unique match is found, the Provisioning Server associates the account with the global user. If more than one match is found, the Provisioning Server performs Step 5. If no match is found, the Provisioning Server performs the next step.
5. The Provisioning Server associates the account with the [default user] object. If the [default user] object does not exist, the server creates it.

Add the Endpoint to the Environment

You add the endpoint to the environment where you intend to manage it. Any administrator with the Create Endpoint task can perform this procedure.

Follow these steps:

1. Select Endpoints, Manage Endpoints, Create Endpoint.
2. Select an endpoint type.
3. Complete the tabs to fill in the fields.

   The required fields begin with a red circle.

   Note: Avoid using a # symbol in the endpoint name, because this character cannot be searched.
4. Click Submit.

You are now ready to create an Explore and Correlate Definition (see page 158) so that its accounts can be managed.

Create an Explore and Correlate Definition

To add users that exist in an endpoint, you create an explore and correlate definition for that endpoint. Any administrator with the Create Explore and Correlate Definition task can create the definition.

Follow these steps:

1. In an environment, click Endpoints, Explore and Correlate Definitions, Create Explore and Correlate Definition.
2. Click Okay to start a new definition.
3. Fill in Explore and Correlate name with any meaningful name.
4. Click Select Container/Endpoint/Explore Method to choose an endpoint and containers if they exist. For a large endpoint, a container search may take a while; you can use the search filter to narrow the search.
5. Click an explore method for the container. The explore and correlate process includes containers you select and its sub-containers. For a directory container, it includes all the containers in the sub-tree.

6. Click the Explore/Correlate Actions to perform:
   - **Explore directory for managed objects**—Finds objects that are stored on the endpoint and not in the provisioning directory.
   - **Correlate accounts to users**—Correlates the objects that were found in the explore function with users in the provisioning directory. Two choices of correlation exist.
     - **Use existing users**

       Use this choice for a correlation rule (see page 155) that matches each account with a previously created user.

       If the user is found, the account is correlated with that user. If multiple users are found, the account is correlated with the default user. If no user is found, this option creates the user (if all mandatory attributes are known) and correlates the account with that user; otherwise, it correlates the account with the default user.

     - **Create users as needed**

       Use this choice when correlating accounts on your primary endpoint. This option presumes that the accounts on your endpoint are named exactly the same as the users. The correlation-matching algorithm is unused with this option. Instead, each account is associated to the user with the same name. If the user does not yet exist, it is created. No accounts are associated to the default user.
   - **Update user fields**—If a mapping exists between the object fields and the user fields, the user fields are updated with data from the objects fields.

     Users are created with no optional attributes such as full name, address and telephone numbers. During the initial acquisition of an endpoint, use this option to set these user attributes using account attribute values. During subsequent explore and correlates, use this option to refresh the user attributes to apply changes made to the account attributes, perhaps by tools other than CA Identity Manager.
7. Click Submit.

Now an administrator with the Execute Explore and Correlate (see page 160) task completes the integration of the endpoint.

Explore and Correlate the Endpoint

Hosting Administrator or another administrator with the Execute Explore and Correlate task performs this procedure. The exploration phase of the task identifies the accounts in the endpoint. The correlation phase matches the accounts with users in CA Identity Manager or creates the accounts.

Follow these steps:

1. In an environment, click Endpoints, Execute Explore and Correlate.
2. Select Execute now to run explore and correlate immediately, or select Schedule new job (see page 398) to run explore and correlate at a later time or on a recurring schedule.

   Note: This operation requires the client browser to be in the same time zone as the server. For example, if the client time is 10:00 p.m. on Tuesday when the server time is 7:00 a.m, the Explore and Correlate definition will not work.
3. Click an explore and correlate definition to execute.
4. Click Submit.

   The user accounts that exist on the endpoint are created or updated in CA Identity Manager based on the explore and correlate definition you created.
5. Verify the task succeeded as follows:
   a. Click System, View Submitted Tasks.
   b. Complete the task name field as follows: Execute Explore And Correlate
   c. Click Search.

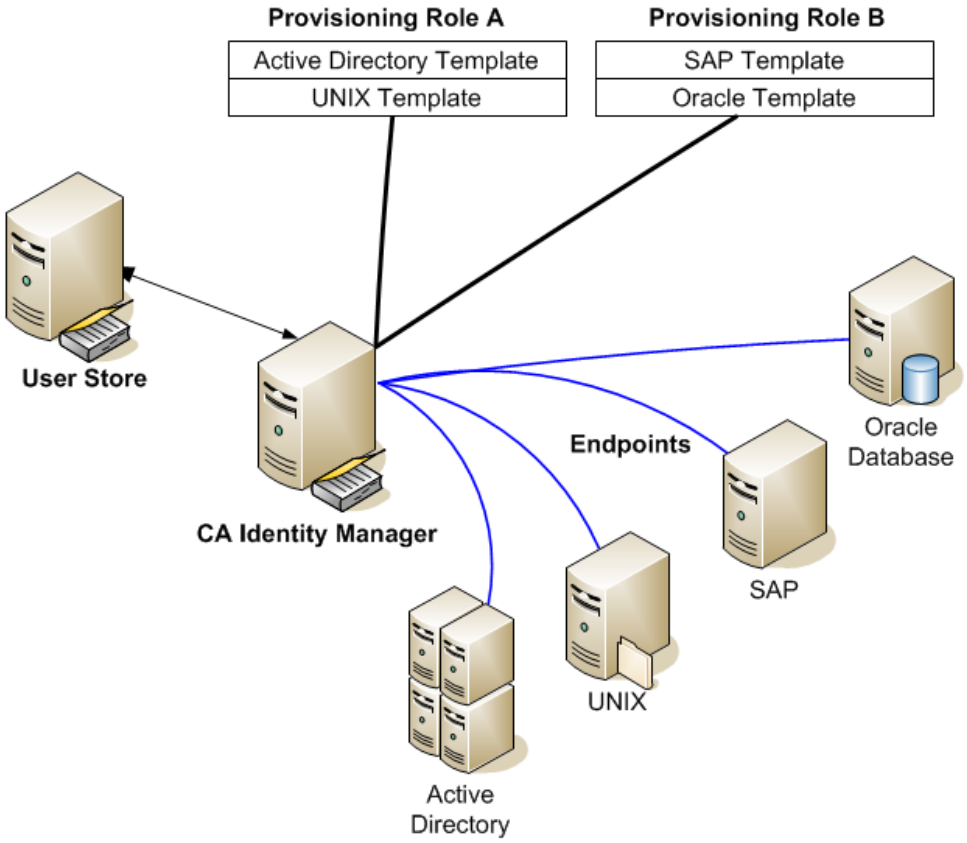
   The results show if the task succeeded.

Note: You can abort an Explore and Correlate task when viewing the task status in View Submitted Tasks (VST). Aborting the task stops the task from processing, leaving the task in the state that it is in when you abort. Any generated notifications are sent, so that all systems are kept synchronized.

Synchronize Users, Accounts, and Roles

The integration of multiple endpoints and accounts into a single user management system can result in a loss of synchronization. The provisioning roles or account templates that are assigned to a user can differ from the actual accounts that exist for that user.

For example, consider a situation with two provisioning roles, one with Active Directory and UNIX account templates and another role with SAP and Oracle templates. The user john_smith has Provisioning Role A, which contains Active Directory and UNIX account templates, but that user only has an Active Directory account. Possibly the UNIX account template was added to the role after it was assigned to the user. Therefore, the administrator synchronizes the user with the current role definition.



The following situations are other reasons why users lose synchronization with provisioning roles or account templates:

- Earlier attempts to create the necessary accounts failed due to hardware or software problems in your network, causing missing accounts.
- Provisioning roles and account templates change, and this creates extra or missing accounts.

- Accounts were assigned to account templates after they were created, so accounts exist, but they are not synchronized with their account templates.
- The creation of a new account is delayed because the account was specified to be created later.
- A new endpoint was acquired. During exploration and correlation, the Provisioning Server did not assign provisioning roles to the users automatically. You update the role to indicate the users who require accounts on the endpoint. Any account that was correlated to a user is listed as an extra account when the user is synchronized.
- An existing account was assigned to a user by copying the account to the user.
- An account was created for a user other than by assigning the user to a role. For example, you copied a user to an account template that is not in a provisioning role for that user. The account is listed as an extra account or as an account with an extra account template. If you copy the user to an endpoint to create an account using the default account template, that account could be an extra account.

The following sections explain how to perform the three types of synchronization:

1. Synchronize users with roles (see page 163).
2. Synchronize user with account templates (see page 163).
3. Synchronize endpoint account with account templates (see page 165).

Synchronize Users with Roles

This task creates, updates, or deletes accounts so they comply with the provisioning roles assigned to a user. For example, administrators use native tools on an endpoint to add or delete accounts, but you have not reexplored that endpoint to update the provisioning directory. Therefore, users have extra or missing accounts. This task also ensures that each account belongs to the correct account templates.

Follow these steps:

1. Log in to the User Console.
2. Select Tasks, Users, Synchronization, Check Role Synchronization.
3. Select a user.

   A screen appears showing the expected accounts, extra accounts, and missing accounts.
4. Click Synchronize to make the accounts match the template in this role.
   a. You can select a checkbox to create the account on the endpoint. If more than one account template for the user prescribes the same account, the account is created by merging all relevant account templates.

      This account is assigned to those account templates, which are currently not synchronized with the account.
   b. You can select a checkbox to delete extra accounts. However, users can have legitimate reasons for having these accounts. If that is the case, leave this option unchecked.

      On certain endpoints, the account deletion function is disabled; therefore, the account is not deleted.

Synchronize User with Account Templates

This task synchronizes the attributes for endpoint accounts with the associated account templates for a user. However, full synchronization depends on these factors:

- Full synchronization of the account occurs in two situations. An account template uses strong synchronization (see page 166) or two or more account templates were added to an account.
- If an account template uses weak synchronization (see page 166), this task starts an account synchronization involving only this template. If the account was previously out of account synchronization with other account templates before this update, it could still be out of account synchronization afterwards.

Follow these steps:

1. Log in to the User Console.
2. Select Tasks, Users, Synchronization, Check Account Template Synchronization.
3. Select a user.

   A screen appears showing the expected accounts, extra accounts, and missing accounts.
4. Click Synchronize to make the accounts match the template.
   a. You can select a checkbox to create the account on the endpoint. If more than one account template for the user prescribes the same account, the account is created by merging relevant account templates.

      This account is assigned to the account templates that are not synchronized with the account. Account synchronization is not necessary on newly created accounts.
   b. You can select a checkbox to delete extra accounts. However, users can have legitimate reasons for having these accounts. If that is the case, leave this option unchecked.

      On certain endpoints, the account deletion function is disabled; therefore, the account is not deleted.

Attributes Only for New Accounts

In an account template, certain attributes are only applied when creating the account. For example, the Password attribute is a rule expression that defines the password for new accounts. This rule expression never updates the password of an account. Changes to the password rule expression only affect accounts that are created after the rule expression was set.

Similarly, a template rule expression for a read-only account attribute affects only accounts that are created after the rule expression was set. Changing it has no effect on existing accounts.

Synchronize Endpoint Accounts with Account Templates

This task synchronizes an endpoint account after modification of an associated account template. For example, perhaps an Active Directory account has no groups, but the associated account template is defined to include groups.

Follow these steps:

1. Log in to the User Console.
2. Select Tasks, Endpoints, Manage Endpoints, Check Endpoint Account Synchronization.
3. Select an endpoint.

   A screen appears showing accounts on that endpoint, associated account templates, and which attributes are not synchronized.
4. Click Synchronize to make the attributes for those accounts match what is defined in the account template.

   Changes that you make to account templates affect existing accounts as follows:

   - If you change the value of a capability attribute, the corresponding account attribute is updated to be synchronized with the account template attribute value. See the description of weak and strong synchronization.
   - Certain account attributes are designated by the connector as not being updated on account template changes. Examples include certain attributes that the endpoint type allows to be set only during account creation, and the Password attribute.

Which Attributes are Updated

When you change capability attributes in an account template, the corresponding attribute on the accounts change. This change has an impact on the attributes for the account. The impact is based on the following factors:

- Whether the account template is defined to use weak or strong synchronization.
- Whether the account belongs to multiple account templates.

Weak Synchronization

Weak synchronization ensures that users have the minimum capability attributes for their accounts. Weak synchronization is the default in most endpoint types. If you update a template that uses weak synchronization, CA Identity Manager updates capability attributes as follows:

- If a number field is updated in an account template and the new number is greater than the number in the account, CA Identity Manager changes the value in the account to match the new number.
- If a check box was not selected in an account template and you subsequently select it, CA Identity Manager updates the check box on any account where the check box is not selected.
- If a list is changed in an account template, CA Identity Manager updates all accounts to include any value from the new list that was not included in the account's list of values.

If an account belongs to other account templates (whether those templates use weak or strong synchronization), CA Identity Manager consults only the template that is changing. This action is more efficient than checking every account template. Because weak synchronization only adds capabilities to accounts, it generally is not necessary to consult those other account templates.

Note: When propagating from a weak synchronization account template, changes that would remove or lower capabilities could leave some accounts unsynchronized. Remember that with weak synchronization, capabilities are never removed or lowered. Without consulting other templates for an account, the propagation does not consider if weak synchronization is sufficient.

In this situation, use Synchronize Users with Account Templates to synchronize the account with its account templates.

Strong Synchronization

Strong synchronization ensures that accounts have the exact account attributes that are specified in the account template.

For example, suppose that you add a group to an existing UNIX account template. Originally, the account template made accounts members of the Staff group. Now, you want to make the accounts members of both the Staff and System groups. All accounts that are associated with the account template are considered synchronized when each account is a member of the Staff and System groups (and no other groups). Any account not in the Staff group is added to both groups.

Some other factors to consider include the following situations:

- If the account template uses strong synchronization, any account belonging to groups, other than Staff and System, are removed from those extra groups.
- If the account template uses weak synchronization, the accounts are added to the Staff and System groups. Any account that has additional groups that are defined to it remains a member of these groups.

Note: Synchronize accounts with their templates regularly to ensure that the accounts stay synchronized with their account templates.

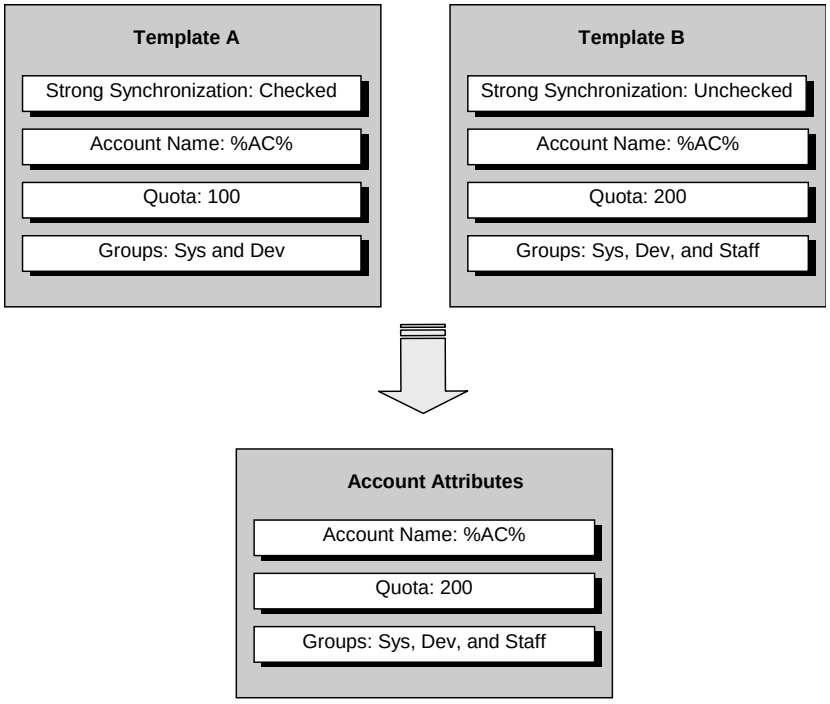
Accounts with Multiple Templates

Synchronization also depends on whether the account belongs to more than one account template. If an account has only one account template and that template uses strong synchronization, each attribute is updated to exactly match what the account template attribute value evaluates to. The result is the same as if the attribute were an initial attribute.

An account may belong to multiple Account Templates, as would be the case if a user belonged to multiple provisioning roles each of which prescribed some level of access on the same managed endpoint. When this happens, CA Identity Manager combines those account templates into one effective account template that prescribes the superset of the capabilities from the individual account templates. This account template is itself considered to use weak synchronization if all its individual account templates are weak or strong synchronization if any of the individual account templates is strong.

Note: Often you use only weak synchronization or only strong synchronization for the account templates controlling one account, depending on whether your company's roles completely define the accesses your users need. If your users do not fit into clear roles and you need the flexibility to grant additional capabilities to your user's accounts, use weak synchronization. If you can define roles to exactly specify the accesses your users need, use strong synchronization.

The following example demonstrates how multiple account templates are combined into a single effective account template. In this example, one account template is marked for weak synchronization and the other for strong synchronization. Therefore, the effective account template created by combining the two account templates is treated as a strong synchronization account template. The integer Quota attribute takes on the larger value from the two account templates, and the multivalued Groups attribute takes on the union of values from the two polices.



Reverse Synchronization with Endpoint Accounts

Although it is the responsibility of CA Identity Manager to create, delete and modify accounts, it is impossible to prevent an endpoint system user from performing these operations on their own. This situation can occur due to emergency reasons, or malicious reasons, such as a hacker. Reverse Synchronization ensures control of the accounts a user has on each endpoint by identifying discrepancies between CA Identity Manager accounts and accounts on the endpoints.

For example, if an account was created in the Active Directory domain using an external tool, CA Identity Manager must be aware of this potential security issue. In addition, bypassing CA Identity Manager causes a lack of approval processes, and audit reports.

Two types of discrepancies between CA Identity Manager and managed endpoints are as follows:

- A new account detected
- A change within an existing account

You can treat both cases by defining policies to handle the change. Then, using Explore and Correlate to update CA Identity Manager, you trigger the execution of policies.

How Reverse Synchronization Works

Reverse synchronization with endpoint accounts occurs as follows:

1. An administrator or a malicious user creates or modifies an account on an endpoint.
2. When Explore and Correlate runs on that endpoint, the new or modified account is detected.
3. The Provisioning Server sends a notification to the CA Identity Manager server.
4. The CA Identity Manager server searches for a reverse synchronization policy that matches the change on the endpoint.
5. If a matching policy is found, it executes. If more than one policy applies to this account and those policies have the same scope, the highest priority policy runs.
6. Depending on the policy, one of the following actions occurs:
   - For a new account, the policy accepts, deletes, or suspends the account or sends it for workflow approval.
   - For a modified account, the policy accepts the value, reverts it to the last known value, or sends it for workflow approval.
7. If workflow is selected, a new event for the workflow is generated and the approvers are set. Then, one of the following actions occurs:
   - For a new account, the approver can accept, delete, or suspend the account or assign it to a user.
   - For a modified account, the workflow process is the same as if the value was changed in the User Console, except that rejected values are reverted at the endpoint.

Map Endpoint Attributes

To use reverse synchronization on an attribute in an endpoint account, you first map it to an attribute visible in the User Console. Some attributes, such as account name and password, are mapped by default. Other attributes are not mapped. For example, the Active Directory attribute group membership is not mapped. For some endpoint types, no attributes are mapped.

To check if the attribute can be mapped

1. In the User Console, click Endpoints, or Tasks, Endpoints.
2. Click Reverse Modify, Create Reverse Sync Modified Account Policy.
3. Choose to create a new policy or a copy of a policy.
4. Click Endpoint Type and choose an endpoint, such as Active Directory.
5. Click Attribute Name to display a list of attributes that can be mapped.
6. Click Cancel.

   You cancel the policy because you are only using it now to check which attributes can be mapped.

Important! You can manage certain attributes only by native tools on the endpoint. So if an endpoint user modifies this type of attribute, the reverse event fails when the reverse synchronization policy is triggered. However, changes to other attributes in that reverse event are not reversed. Therefore, avoid mapping attributes that can only be managed on the endpoint.

To map endpoint attributes for reverse synchronization

1. Click Endpoints, Modify Endpoint.
2. Search for and select an endpoint that requires reverse synchronization.
3. Click the Attribute Mapping tab.
4. Select Use Custom Settings.
5. Click Add to add a new custom attribute.
6. Select an available custom attribute. For example, use CustomField 10 if it is not used in your environment.
7. Map the custom attribute to the account attribute name that you want to manage.
8. Repeat Steps 5 to 7 to add mappings between all account attributes required and the custom attribute selected.

   You can use the same custom attribute (CustomField 10 in our example) for all attributes you want to manage.
9. Click Submit.

To create baseline values for this endpoint

Once all values for an endpoint are mapped, you explore the endpoint. For this operation, you disable inbound notification and enable it after the explore completes. Disabling notification eliminates notifications that are unnecessary. Otherwise, every account that has values on the new attributes would generate a notification during the explore operation.

1. In Provisioning Manager, disable inbound notification as follows:
   a. Click System, Domain configuration, CA Identity Manager Server, Enable Notification.
   b. Select No.
   c. Restart the Provisioning Server to make sure the change takes effect.
2. In the User Console, click Endpoints, Execute Explore and Correlate.

   Choose an explore and correlate definition that has correlation deselected.

   This action repopulates the user store attributes with the new endpoint attribute data. This task may take a while if the endpoint is large.
3. Reenable inbound notification in Provisioning Manager.
4. Restart the Provisioning Server.

At the next explore and correlate operation for that endpoint, modify account notifications are generated. Notifications are generated if a change occurred for an attribute that is mapped to a global user attribute and a policy applies to that attribute.

More information:

Capability and Initial Attributes (see page 197)

Policies for Reverse Synchronization

When an account is created or modified on an endpoint, reverse synchronization policies can take appropriate actions in response. For example, a user creates some Active Directory accounts in several OUs in the corporate domain. Also, the user modifies some Microsoft Exchange accounts. You can detect the new and changed accounts and provide appropriate actions as a response using reverse synchronization account policies.

You can do the following using reverse synchronization:

- Configure a policy to accept the new account, reject it, or send it for workflow approval.
- Configure a policy to accept a change to an attribute, revert it to the original attribute, or send it for workflow approval.
- When an account is sent for workflow approval, the approver can perform one of the following actions:
  - Reject it (delete/suspend it from the endpoint or change the value to match the CA Identity Manager user store value)
  - Accept it and update the CA Identity Manager user store to match the account
  - Assign it to a user in User Console (in the case of account creation)

Create a Policy for New Accounts

If you want to define a process for when a new account is detected on an endpoint, you create an account policy that applies to new accounts. New account policies run when accounts are detected when the Correlate option is included in the Explore and Correlate definition. If an account was found when running explore only, the policy runs the next time the Correlate option is included when exploring that endpoint.

To create a policy for new accounts

1. In the User Console, click Endpoints, or click Tasks, Endpoints.
2. Reverse New, Create Reverse Sync New Account Policy.
3. Enter a name and description for the policy.
4. Enter the following parameters:
   - Priority—The priority of policy. The highest priority policy is the one with the lowest number. If two policies have the same priority and the same scope, either policy may run. Therefore, be sure to set different priority levels.
   - Endpoint Type—All endpoints or a specific endpoint type.
   - Endpoint—The specific endpoint name. If Endpoint Type is All, the only choice is All endpoints.
   - Container—The container where the account resides. This field applies only to hierarchical endpoints. Enter the container as a list of nodes, ending with the endpoint. For example, for an AD OU with the path "ou=child,ou=parent,ou=root,dc=domain,dc=name" the format "child,parent,root" is correct.
   - Correlated User—Controls when to run the policy based on if a correlated user is found in the Provisioning Directory.

5. Select one of the following Actions:
   - Accept—Takes no action on the account. This choice would be useful if two policies exist, one that rejects all new accounts, and a higher priority policy that accepts accounts created under a certain OU. Therefore, if the account was created at that OU, it is accepted. The reject priority does not run since it has a lower priority.
   - Delete—Removes the account from the endpoint.
   - Suspend—Leaves the account in the endpoint, but suspends it.
   - Send for Approval—Submits the change for workflow approval.
6. Perform the following steps if you set Action to Send for Approval:
   a. Click the icon next to Workflow Process.
   b. Choose a workflow process.
   c. Click OK.
7. Click Submit.

If you assigned a workflow process to the policy, you need to create an approval task (see page 176).

Create a Policy for Modified Accounts

Any account attribute in an endpoint account can be managed by Reverse Synchronization, as long as it is defined in the attribute mapping (see page 170).

To define a process for when a discrepancy is found between existing endpoint accounts and their known values in CA Identity Manager, you can create an account policy that applies to existing accounts. If an attribute is multivalued, more than one value might have been added or removed. In this case, the policy is applied to each value separately or you can create different policies for different values.

To create a policy for modified accounts

1. In the User Console, click Endpoints, pr Tasks, Endpoints.
2. Click Reverse Modify, Create Reverse Sync Modify Account Policy.
3. Enter a name and description for the policy.
4. Enter the following parameters:
   - Priority—The priority of policy. The highest priority policy is the one with the lowest number. If two policies have the same priority and the same scope, either policy may run. Therefore, be sure to set different priority levels.
   - Endpoint Type—All endpoints or a specific endpoint type.
   - Endpoint—The specific endpoint name. If Endpoint Type is All, the only choice is All endpoints.
   - Container—The container where the account resides. This field applies only to hierarchical endpoints. Enter the container as a list of nodes, ending with the endpoint. For example, for an AD OU with the path "ou=child,ou=parent,ou=root,dc=domain,dc=name" the format "child,parent,root" is correct.
   - Attribute—The physical name.
   - Value—A string representation of the value, which may contain ***** (asterisk) as a wildcard. The wildcard refers to any value in the change.

5. Select one of the following Actions:
   - Accept—Updates the account value in the CA Identity Manager user store to match the value in the endpoint account.
   - Reject—Reverts the attribute to reinstate the original value without affecting other changes to attributes for the account.
   - Send for Approval—Submits the change for workflow approval.
6. Perform the following steps if you set Action to Send for Approval:
   a. Click the icon next to Workflow Process.
   b. Choose a workflow process.
   c. Click OK.
7. Click Submit.

If you assigned a workflow process to the policy, you need to create an approval task (see page 176).

Create an Approval Task for Reverse Synchronization

You create reverse approval tasks for policies that have a Send to Workflow action. Consider the following guidelines for creating the tasks:

- For tasks that approve new accounts, you have two choices.
  - You can create a generic approval screen for accounts. The profile screen for the task shows only general information about the account. The Approve Reverse New Account task operates in this manner.
  - If the approver needs to see the details of the new account, that screen must be specific to the endpoint type. So the approval task with the screen should be used only for policies that are specific to that endpoint type. The task must include the Reverse Approval tab.
- For tasks that approve account modifications, the approval screen must be specific to an endpoint type, so that the approver can see the changed values.

Reverse approval tasks are identical to approval tasks used for account changes. If an approval task for a specific endpoint type already exists, that task can be used. For a new account, an additional reverse approval tab is needed. If an existing approval task for the endpoint type does not exist, use the following procedure.

To create an approval task for reverse synchronization

1. In the User Console, click Taks, Roles and Tasks, or click Roles and Tasks.
2. Click Admin Tasks, Create Admin Task.
3. Select the modify task for the endpoint.

   The name would start with modify and state the name of the endpoint type. Modify Active Directory Account is an example.
4. Make the following changes on the Profile tab:
   - Change the name of the new task.
   - Change the task tag.
   - Change the action to Approve Event.
5. Make the following changes on the Tabs tab:
   a. Remove all Relationship tabs.
   b. Add the Reverse Approval tab if the task is to approve new accounts. Move this tab to be the first tab.
   c. Copy and edit the approval screens on the tabs as necessary.

      Note: You may run into problems when using some account screens in an approval task. If so, modify the default account screen for the tab to make it work in the task.
6. Click Submit.
7. If the task is for new account approvals, add the task to a role to which the approver would belong. The role defines the user scope, which is used to search for users to whom the new account can be assigned.

Execute Reverse Synchronization

Reverse synchronization occurs when you use the Execute Explore and Correlate task. Using this task, you update the CA Identity Manager Provisioning store with the new or changed accounts on an endpoint.

To execute reverse synchronization

1. Create an explore and correlate definition that includes a Correlate option. Correlation is needed to detect new accounts.
2. Click Tasks, Endpoints, Execute Explore and Correlate.
3. Choose a definition that applies to the endpoint with the new or changed accounts.

   Note: When correlating to the existing user, the user must exist in the Provisioning Directory, otherwise the user is correlated to the default user in that directory. The CA Identity Manager user store is not in the scope of the Explore and Correlate task.
4. Click Submit.

If a policy has no workflow process, the accounts are already processed as defined in the policy.

Note: If multiple attributes were rejected on an account that was detected by reverse synchronization policy, all actions are put into one event. However, if that event fails due to an issue with one of the attributes, no attributes are updated.

If workflow is part of the policy, any approvals generated by the reverse synchronization appear under Workflow, View My Work List for the approver.

For new accounts, the approver has the following choices:

- The approver may choose to suspend or delete the account in the endpoint, by selecting either Delete or Suspend and then clicking reject.
- Otherwise, the approver may accept the new account by clicking Approve.

  If an approver does not select a user in the Correlated User field, the account is assigned to the default user. If the Correlated User field is populated in the approval task, the account is correlated with this user. The Correlated User field contains the suggested user found by the correlation mechanism if a user can be found.

For modified accounts, the approver has the following choices:

- For each account, the approver sees which values are changed and can approve or reject them just as if the changes were initiated in the account management screens.
- The approver sees changes to capability attributes (such as an Active Directory groups) as separate approval events.

To verify if reverse synchronization succeeded

1. Go to System, View Submitted Tasks.
2. Complete the task name field as follows: Provisioning Activity
3. Click Search.

The results show if the reverse synchronization events completed successfully.

Extend Custom Attributes on Endpoints

The Provisioning Server can manage custom endpoint attributes. To enable CA Identity Manager to read custom endpoint attributes that are associated with provisioning roles, additional steps are required.

To extend custom attributes on endpoints

1. Generate metadata from the parser table if this connector was created before CA Identity Manager r12.5.

   See the *Connector Programming Guide*.

2. Use Connector Xpress as follows:

   a. Install metadata in the namespace node.

   b. Generate a JAR file, property file, and role definition file using the Role Definition Generator.

      For details, see the *Connector Xpress Guide*.

3. Copy the JAR file to this location:

   - (Windows) *app server home*/iam_im.ear/user_console.war/WEB-INF/lib
   - (UNIX) *app server home*\iam_im.ear\user_console.war\WEB-INF\lib

     Note: For WebSphere, copy the JAR file to: WebSphere_home/AppServer/profiles/*Profile_Name*/config/cells/*Cell_name*/applications/iam_im.ear/user_console.war/WEB-INF

4. Copy the property file to this location:

   - (Windows) *app server home*/iam_im.ear/custom/provisioning/resourceBundles
   - (UNIX) *app server home*\iam_im.ear\custom\provisioning\resourceBundles

     Note: For WebSphere, copy the properties file to:

     WebSphere_home/AppServer/profiles/*Profile_Name*/config/cells/*cell_name*/applications/iam_im.ear\custom\provisioning\resourceBundles

5. Repeat the preceding two steps for each node if you have a cluster.

6. Restart the application server.
7. Import the role definition file as follows:
   a. In the Management Console, select the environment.
   b. Select Role and Task Settings.
   c. Click Import.
   d. Select the endpoint type and click Finish.

Account Tasks

In the User Console, you can create, modify, view, and delete endpoint accounts that are associated with a CA Identity Manager user. You can also assign other endpoint accounts that are not associated with CA Identity Manager to a user.

Four types of endpoint accounts exist:

Provisioned

Accounts created when the user is assigned a provisioning role

Exception

Accounts created when the user is assigned an account template

Orphan

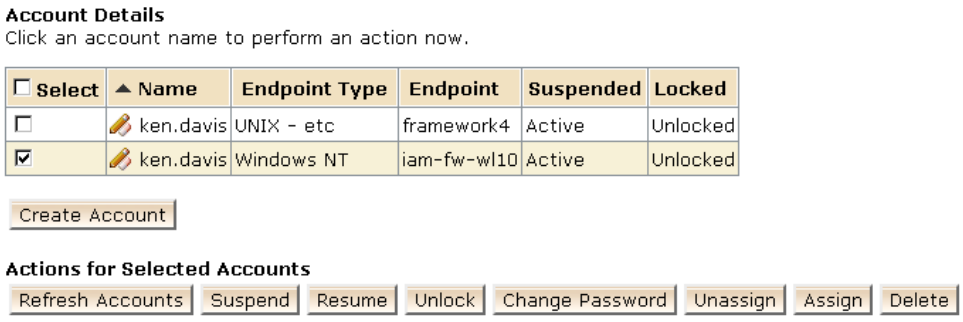
Accounts created on the endpoint system and are not associated with any CA Identity Manager user

System

Accounts created on the endpoint system, are not associated with any CA Identity Manager user and are used to manage the endpoint system

View or Modify Endpoint Accounts

Tasks that allow you to view a user's profile, such as View User or Modify My Profile, include an Accounts tab that lists that user's accounts on endpoints.



For each account, CA Identity Manager displays information such as the account name, the endpoint where the account exists, and the status of the account. For a modify task, additional options are available for changing a user's password and locking or suspending an account.

In this example, the Accounts tab includes a Search button, which means the tab is configured with a search screen. You can configure this tab to use a list screen, a search screen, or both.

- When both the screens are configured, the search screen determines the fields in the search results.
- If only a list screen is configured, it determines the fields in the search results.
- If neither screen is configured, the accounts tab uses a static list display, which means that the Accounts tab cannot be customized for display columns.

For details on the other options you can provide on the Account tab, see the User Console help for the Configure Accounts tab.

Create a Provisioned Account

The recommended way to create an endpoint account for CA Identity Manager user is to assign a provisioning role to the user. The user receives the account with the attributes defined in the account templates for that role. When necessary, changes to that account template, such as the mailbox size for Exchange accounts, update the endpoint account.

To create a provisioned account

1. In the User Console, select Manage Users, Modify User.
2. Select a user to modify.
3. Click the Provisioning Roles tab.
4. Click add a provisioning role.
5. Select a role.
6. Click Submit.

Create an Exception Account

You can create an account directly on the Accounts tab when you use Modify User on a user. This account is named an exception account. However, because no provisioning role is involved with this account, synchronization of roles with users does not update this account.

To create an exception account

1. In the User Console, select Users, Modify User's Endpoint Accounts.
2. Select a user to modify.
3. Click Create.
4. Select an endpoint.
5. Select a container if one is required for this endpoint type.
6. Complete the fields on each tab.
7. Click Submit.

Assign Orphan Accounts

In the User Console, you can manage orphan accounts, which are accounts not associated with CA Identity Manager user.

To create a default user for orphan accounts

If the Provisioning Directory is separate from the CA Identity Manager user store, create the Provisioning Server default user in the CA Identity Manager user store. The default user is used for orphan accounts.

1. In the User Console, click Users.
2. Click Manage Users, Create User.
3. Name the user as follows, including the brackets:
   `[default user]`

   You can now assign orphan accounts to users.

To assign an orphan account

1. In the User Console, click Endpoints,
2. Click Manage Orphan Accounts.
3. Search for and select a user.
4. Click a user to assign to the orphan user.

Assign System Accounts

In the User Console, you can manage system accounts, which are endpoint accounts that are used to manage the endpoint system.

To assign a system account to a user, you create an admin task based on the Manage System Accounts task. The new task has a specific CA Identity Manager user who applies for a specific endpoint. You could create one task for each type of endpoint.

To configure a task to assign system accounts

1. In the User Console, click Roles and Tasks, Admin Tasks, Create Admin Task.
2. Base the new task on the Manage System Accounts.

   For example, you could create a task named *Manage Oracle System Accounts* to assign system accounts on an Oracle endpoint type.
3. On the Search tab, click the Browse button to edit the search screen. On that screen, include a search filter for a user to assign to this system account.
4. Submit the task.
5. Include this task in a role.
6. Assign the role to a user who should assign system accounts for an endpoint to a user.

   The user with this role can execute the new task to assign system users to a CA Identity Manager user.

Move Account Task Screen

Use this task screen to move accounts from one container on an endpoint to another. The fields in this screen are listed below:

Move Account Details

Specifies the account, parent container, destination container, endpoint, and endpoint type that you want to move,

Select Container Button

Click to search for available account containers belonging to the endpoint.

Delete an Endpoint Account

ou can delete an endpoint account in two ways:

1. Using the Modify User task, on the Provisioning Roles tab, remove the role that created that account.
2. Using the Modify User's Endpoint Accounts task, delete the account.

To delete an account with Modify User's Endpoint Accounts

1. In the User Console, select Users, Modify User's Endpoint Accounts.
2. Select a user to modify.
3. Search for accounts based on an endpoint type.
4. Select an account.
5. Click the Delete button.

Deleted accounts are recreated when you use Provisioning Manager as follows:

- Synchronize User with Roles recreates provisioned accounts, accounts created when a user has a provisioning role.
- Synchronize Accounts with Account Templates recreates exception (if the account has an account template) and provisioned accounts.

Change Password for an Endpoint Account

You can change the password of an endpoint account without knowing the current password.

To change the password of an endpoint account

1. In the User Console, select Users, Modify User's Endpoint Accounts.
2. Select a user to modify.
3. Search for accounts based on an endpoint type.
4. Select one or more accounts.
5. Click the Change Password button.
6. Enter a new password.

   CA Identity Manager password policies validate the new password.
7. Click Submit.

Performing Actions on Several Accounts

You can perform several other actions on one or more accounts. For example, you can resume an account that was suspended, unlock an account when a user entered the wrong password, or assign or unassign an account to a user. The actions apply to all selected accounts and the procedure is the same.

To perform tasks on several accounts

1. In the User Console, select Users, Modify User's Endpoint Accounts.
2. Select a user to modify.
3. Search for accounts based on an endpoint type.
4. Select one or more accounts.
5. Click any of the buttons under Actions for Selected Accounts.
6. Respond to the dialog that appears and click Submit.

Advanced Account Operations

In the Provisioning Manager, you can perform a number of additional operations on accounts:

- Associate an Account with Different Global Users
- Automatically Explore Accounts
- Delete Accounts
- Use Delete Pending
- Recreated Deleted Accounts

Change the Global User for an Account

The following are instances when you would want to associate an account to a different global user:

- You have two global users with the same name and CA Identity Manager correlates the account to the wrong person
- CA Identity Manager correlated an account to the [default user] object and you want to associate it with another global user object
- You created an account using New and now you want to associate it with a global user

To associate an account with a different global user in the Provisioning Manager, drag and drop the account onto the correct global user.

How Automatic Exploration Works

The addition or deletion of accounts or other objects using tools native to the endpoint are unnoticed by CA Identity Manager until you explore the endpoint. The exploration process notices additions and deletions (and in some cases modifications) that have occurred and applies those changes to the CA Identity Manager representation of the object in the provisioning directory.

However, if you use the Provisioning Manager to attempt to create an object with the same name before this exploration occurs, CA Identity Manager notices that an object with that name already exists and report this error. CA Identity Manager then explores that object, creating a representation of it in the provisioning directory. You can immediately start working with that object. The automatic one-object explore occurs whenever an Add, Move or Rename operation generates an already exists error from the endpoint when the object does not exist in the provisioning directory.

You can combine automatic exploration with the Synchronization/Automatic Correlation domain configuration parameter described in the *Provisioning Reference Guide*. When these features work together, they first process an attempt to create an account from an account template as an attempt to create a new account. Then, the processing uses the following steps:

- Notices an unexplored account
- Explores that account automatically
- Correlates the account automatically to the global user
- Adds an account template to the account as though it were an existing account correlated to this global user.

Delete Accounts

If you must delete an account, you can use the following methods in the Provisioning Manager:

- Right-click the account and select Delete
- Right-click a global user and select Delete User and Accounts
- Run the Delete Accounts wizard
- Synchronize global users with provisioning roles and specify that you want to delete extra accounts

When you remove a global user from a provisioning role, the Provisioning Manager provides these choices for account deletion:

- If you decide to delete these accounts, CA Identity Manager removes the accounts from the provisioning directory.
- If you decide not to delete the accounts, you can use the Synchronize User with Roles option and select the Delete Account.

When you remove a global user from a provisioning role before deleting accounts, you can list the accounts for the global user. Right-click the global user and select List Accounts.

- The account listing displays the provisioning roles to which each account belongs. If an account belongs to one provisioning role, it is deleted when you remove that user from that role and accept the user synchronization action to delete the accounts.
- If an account belongs to no provisioning role, it is an extra account and is reported by Check User Synchronization. The account is deleted if you select the Synchronize the User with Roles menu item on the global user.

Use Delete Pending

CA Identity Manager can be configured on an endpoint-by-endpoint basis, so accounts on an endpoint are not deleted when administrators initiate delete or synchronization actions that would typically delete the accounts. Instead, the accounts are placed in a Delete Pending state in the User Console and in a Suspended state on the managed endpoint. CA Identity Manager also removes all account templates from the suspended accounts and clears any multi-valued capability attributes on the suspended accounts.

Delete Pending accounts can be identified in the Provisioning Manager on the Statistics tab of the account properties. A suspended account has a suspend reason of Delete Pending and a timestamp when it entered this state. The storing of the Delete Pending status and Suspended timestamp permits the writing of a utility that identifies these Delete Pending accounts and deletes them from the Provisioning Server and the managed endpoint later.

Recreate Deleted Accounts

If you delete an account on a managed endpoint by using a tool other than CA Identity Manager, the Check Account Synchronization feature reports the account as missing, because it exists in the Provisioning Directory but not on the managed endpoint. When this happens, recreate the account on the endpoint by issuing the Synchronize Account with Account Templates function, which recreates the account using the account templates associated to the account.

If accounts are recreated, CA Identity Manager logs them as recreated. These accounts can be identified separately from accounts that have been updated because administrators need to be aware that attributes other than capability attributes (for example, passwords) have been set to the original account template values.

Chapter 8: Provisioning Roles

This section contains the following topics:

Provisioning Roles and Account Templates (see page 189)
Creating Roles to Assign Accounts (see page 189)
Role and Template Tasks (see page 193)
Attributes in Account Templates (see page 197)
Advanced Rule Expressions (see page 201)
Provisioning Role Performance (see page 208)
Provisioning Tasks for Existing Environments (see page 210)

Provisioning Roles and Account Templates

To simplify account management, you create and maintain accounts using account templates, which are used in provisioning roles. A provisioning role contains one or more account templates. When you apply that role to a user, the user receives the accounts as defined by the templates.

These templates provide the basis for accounts on a specific endpoint type. They provide the same type of capabilities as Provisioning Policies provided in eTrust Admin.

Using account templates, you can:

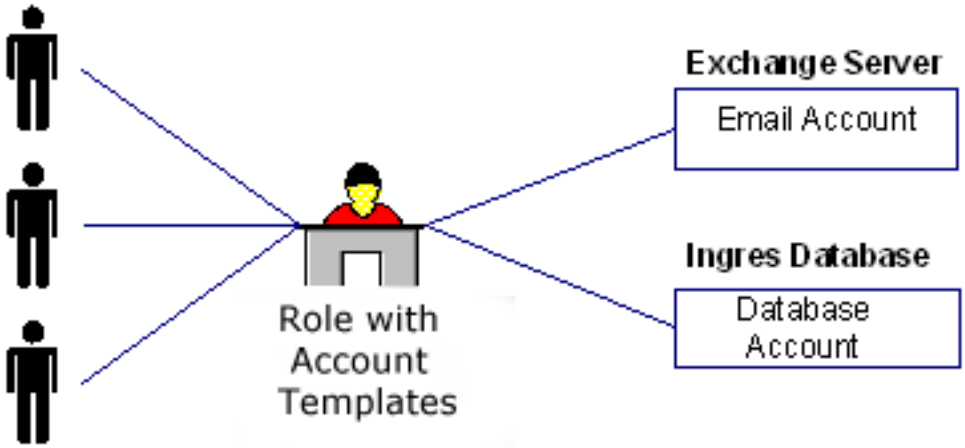
- Control what account attributes CA Identity Manager users have on an endpoint when their accounts are created
- Define attributes using rule strings or values
- Combine account attributes from different provisioning roles, so users have only one account, on a specific endpoint, with all the necessary account attributes
- Create or update account attributes as global users change provisioning roles

Creating Roles to Assign Accounts

In most organizations, administrators spend significant time providing users with login accounts for different systems and applications. To simplify this repetitive activity, you can create provisioning roles, which are roles that contain account templates. The templates define the attributes that exist in one type of account. For example, an account template for an Exchange account defines attributes such as the size of the mailbox. Account templates also define how user attributes are mapped to accounts.

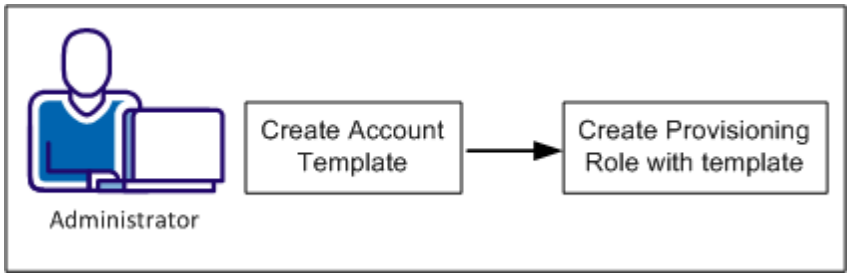
Consider an example where every employee at Forward, Inc needs access to a database and email. An administrator wants to avoid creating a database account and an email account for each employee one at a time. Therefore, the administrator creates a provisioning role for that company. The role contains an account template for a Microsoft Exchange server, to provide email accounts, and a template for an Oracle database. In this example, the Exchange server and the Oracle database are named endpoints, which are the system or application where the accounts exist.

Note: Forward, Inc. is a fictitious company name which is used strictly for instructional purposes only and is not meant to reference an existing company.



After the roles are created, business administrators, such as managers or support personnel, can assign those roles to users to give them accounts in endpoints. After users receive the role, they can log in to the endpoint.

Creating a provisioning role that includes an account template is a two-step process as follows:



The following sections explain how to create a role that can be used to assign accounts:

1. Create an Account Template (see page 191)
2. Create a Provisioning Role (see page 192)

Create an Account Template

To simplify account management, you create and maintain accounts using account templates, which are used in provisioning roles. A provisioning role contains one or more account templates. When you apply that role to a user, the user receives the accounts as defined by the templates.

These templates provide the basis for accounts on a specific endpoint type.

Using account templates, you can:

- Control what account attributes users have on an endpoint when their accounts are created
- Define attributes using rule strings or values
- Combine account attributes from different provisioning roles, so users have only one account, on a specific endpoint, with all the necessary account attributes
- Create or update account attributes as global users change provisioning roles

A default account template for each endpoint type is installed with the CA Identity Manager server. In a provisioning role, you can use the default account template or you can create your own account templates for any endpoint that you have configured.

To create an account template

1. Navigate to Endpoints, which may be listed under tasks, and click Account Templates, Create Account Template.
2. Select an endpoint type for the template.
3. Define Endpoint Name as the system name of the endpoint or localhost if that applies.
4. Select an endpoint to use on the Endpoints tab.
5. Complete the fields in the tabs or use the default values.

   Each endpoint type has a different set of tabs. Click Help for field definitions.
6. Click Submit.

Note: If more than one endpoint is specified while searching for endpoint objects in the Account Template, the common subset (intersection) of the related objects is returned. An example is an Active Directory group that exists on each of the selected endpoints that are associated with the Account Template. When the search results show attributes other than the object name, it shows the attribute values of the objects that are associated with the first endpoint. An example is the description attribute for the language object in a PeopleSoft connector.

Create a Provisioning Role

You create a provisioning role once you decide about the role requirements:

- Which users need other accounts
- Which accounts are associated with the role
- Who the members, administrators, and owners of the role are

To create a provisioning role

1. In the User Console, navigate to Roles and Tasks, Provisioning Roles, Create Provisioning Role.

   For details on each tab, click the Help link on the screen.

2. Complete the Profile tab. Only the Name field is required.

   Note: You can specify custom attributes on the Profile tab that specify additional information about provisioning roles. You can use this additional information to facilitate role searches in environments that include a significant number of roles.

3. Complete the Account Templates tab.

   a. Click an Endpoint Type, such as an ActiveDirectory.

   b. Click an account template.

      The templates that you can click are based on Endpoint Type.

   c. Add more account templates as needed for different endpoint types.

4. Complete the Provisioning Roles tab if you want to nest provisioning roles in this tab.

   This step requires that you have enabled nested roles (see page 196) for this environment.

5. Complete the Administrators tab by adding admin rules that control who manages members and administrators of this role.

6. Complete the Owners tab by adding owner rules that control who can modify this role.

7. Click Submit.

8. To verify that the role was created, click Provisioning Roles, View Provisioning Role.

Role and Template Tasks

In the User Console, you can create and manage provisioning roles by choosing Roles and Tasks and selecting a task under Provisioning Roles. Tasks exist for the standard operations, such as making a user a member of a role and modifying or deleting a role.

Before creating a provisioning role, you need an account template to include in that role or a provisioning role that you want to import. You can import roles that were created in the Provisioning Manager or eTrust Admin. However, CA Identity Manager does not support nested roles that were created in eTrust Admin.

Import a Provisioning Role

Although you manage provisioning roles in the User Console, some provisioning roles may have been created in Provisioning Manager or an external application. For these provisioning roles, you can reset the role owner to be a CA Identity Manager administrator, so you can manage it in the User Console.

To import a provisioning role

1. Log into the User Console as a user with the System Manager role. Click Tasks, Roles and Tasks.
2. Click Provisioning Roles, Reset Provisioning Role Owners and select a provisioning role created in Provisioning Manager.
3. Complete the Owners tab by adding owner rules that control who can modify this role.
4. Click Submit.

The role can now be modified, assigned, or viewed by using tasks in the Provisioning Roles category.

Assign New Owners for Provisioning Roles

You can select one or more provisioning roles and assign owner policies to control who can modify the roles.

To assign new owners for provisioning roles

1. Log into the User Console as a user with the System Manager role.
2. Click Tasks, Roles, or click Roles, and Tasks.
3. Click Provisioning Roles, Create Owner Policies for Provisioning Roles.
4. Select one or more provisioning roles.
5. Complete the Owners tab by adding owner rules that control who can modify this role.
6. Click Submit.

Users who meet the new owner policies can modify the selected provisioning roles.

Passwords for Accounts Created by Provisioning Roles

When a user is assigned a provisioning role, account creation for that user fails if the CA Identity Manager user's password does not meet the endpoint's password requirements. This situation includes creation of a new user with a temporary password.

Therefore, set the password policy to match, or be stricter than, the endpoint password requirements. You can set the password policy by using the CA Identity Manager Password Policy or the Provisioning Password Profile. If both methods are used, the policies must match.

Provisioning Role Event Processing Order

Some default CA Identity Manager tasks include *events*, actions that CA Identity Manager performs to complete a task, that determines provisioning role membership. For example, the default Modify User task includes the AssignProvisioningRoleEvent and the RevokeProvisioningRoleEvent. Assigning or revoking a provisioning role may add or remove an account on an endpoint. In some cases, the endpoint may require that all Add actions occur before Remove actions.

To make CA Identity Manager process Add actions first, you enable the Accumulation of Provisioning Role Membership Events setting in the Management Console. When this setting is enabled, CA Identity Manager accumulates all of the Add and Remove actions into a single event, called the AccumulatedProvisioningRolesEvent. For example, if the Modify User task assigns a user to three provisioning roles and removes that user from two other provisioning roles, an AccumulatedProvisioningRolesEvent will be generated which contains five actions: 3 Add actions and 2 remove actions.

When this event executes, all Add actions are combined into a single operation and sent to the Provisioning Server for processing. Once processing of the Add actions completes, CA Identity Manager combines the Remove actions into a single operation and sends that operation to the Provisioning Server.

Enabling this setting affects the following CA Identity Manager functionality:

- **Provisioning Roles Tab in User Tasks**

  When an administrator adds or removes a user from a provisioning role using the Provisioning Roles tab, CA Identity Manager accumulates those actions into a single event.

- **Identity Policies**

  All provisioning role membership events (AssignProvisioningRoleEvent or RevokeProvisioningRoleEvent) that are generated as a result of an Identity Policy evaluation are accumulated into a single AccumulatedProvisioningRolesEvent. CA Identity Manager executes this event like any other secondary event. For example, consider an identity policy set that includes two identity policies: Policy A revokes membership in the Provisioning Role A and Policy B makes users members of Provisioning Role B. If CA Identity Manager determines that a user no longer satisfies Policy A, but now satisfies PolicyB, an AccumulatedProvisioningRolesEvent that contains two actions (one for the remove action and one for the add action) is generated. The Add action is executed first and then the Remove action is executed.

- **View Submitted Tasks**

  To view the status of the AccumulatedProvisioningRolesEvent and the status for each of the individual actions, use the View Submitted Tasks task to view event details.

  If one of the individual actions fails, the status of the event is failed, which moves the task to a failed state.

- **Workflow**

  You can associate a workflow process with the AccumulatedProvisioningRolesEvent. In this case, an approver can approve or reject the entire event, which approves or rejects each of the individual events.

  Additional configuration is required to enable workflow for individual events within the AccumulatedProvisioningRolesEvent.

- **Auditing**

  CA Identity Manager audits information about the AccumulatedProvisioningRolesEvent and each individual event.

Enable Provisioning Role Membership Event Accumulation

CA Identity Manager provides a configuration setting in the Management Console that enables the combination of all Add and Remove actions for a provisioning role membership event into a single operation. Once combined, CA Identity Manager processes the Add actions as a single operation before processing the Remove actions.

This setting allows sequencing of events required by some endpoint types.

Note: This feature is disabled by default.

To enable Provisioning Role Membership Event Accumulation

1. Access the CA Identity Manager Management Console.
2. Click Environments.
3. Select the environment that you want to configure.
4. Open Advanced Settings, Provisioning.
5. Select the Enable Accumulation of Provisioning Role Membership Events check box.
6. Restart the application server.

Enable Nested Roles in an Environment

You can include a provisioning role within another provisioning role. The included role is named a nested role.

For example, you could create an Employee provisioning role. The Employee role would provide accounts needed by all employees, such as email accounts. You include the Employee role in department-specific provisioning roles, such as a Finance role and a Sales role. The department provisioning roles would provide accounts related only to that department. This combination of roles provides the right accounts for each user.

To enable Nested Roles in an environment

1. In the Management Console, select the environment.
2. Click Role and Task Settings, Import.
3. Select Nested Provisioning Roles Support.
4. Click Finish.
5. Restart the environment.

Include a Role in a Provisioning Role

To include a role in a Provisioning Role

1. Navigate to Roles and Tasks, Provisioning Roles, Modify Provisioning Roles.
2. Complete the Provisioning Roles tab by clicking Add a Role and select a provisioning role.

   For performance reasons, we recommend limiting role nesting to three levels. For example, you are including in the current provisioning role (the first-level role) another role (the second-level role), which can contain a third-level role. We recommend that the third-level role contains no role.
3. Complete the owner policy by modifying the owner rule.

   The scope must be equal to or broader than the scope for the role you added.
4. Click Submit.

Attributes in Account Templates

The attributes in account templates determine how attributes are defined in the account.

Capability and Initial Attributes

Account templates include two types of attributes:

- *Capability attributes* represent account information, such as storage size, quantity, frequency limits, or group memberships. Provisioning Manager bolds the capability attributes on all account template screens to make identifying capability attributes easy.
- *Initial attributes* represent all information that is initially set for an account, such as account name, password, and account status and personal information such as name, address and telephone numbers.

Accounts are considered synchronized with their account templates when all the capability attributes are synchronized. These are attributes that differ from endpoint type to endpoint type such as group memberships, privileges, quotas, login-restrictions; they control what the user can do when logging into the account.

Synchronization does not update other account attributes. They are initialized from the account templates during account creation and they can also be updated during propagation functions. The Provisioning Server provides two propagation functions (an immediate update of accounts at the time the account template is changed and an update of accounts at the time global user attributes change).

Finding Capability and Initial Attributes

To find out which attributes are defined as capabilities and which are initial, you need to generate the eTACapability.txt file. Enter the following command from a Windows Command prompt:

```
PS_HOME\dumpptt.exe -c > eTACapability.txt
```

PS_Home

Specifies C:\Program Files\CA\Identity Manager\Provisioning Server\bin

A version of the file is generated for all of the connectors that you have installed.

Rule Strings in Account Templates

When you create an account template, you use rules strings to define the format of many account attributes. Rule strings are variables for the actual value. Rules strings are useful when you want to generate attributes that change from one account to another. When rules are evaluated, CA Identity Manager replaces the rule strings entered in the account templates with data specified in the user object.

Note: Rule evaluation is not performed on accounts created during an exploration or on accounts created without provisioning roles.

The following table lists the rule strings in CA Identity Manager:

Rule String	Description
%AC%	Account name
%D%	Current date in the format *dd/mm/yyyy* (the date is a computed value that does not involve the global user information*).* This rule string is equivalent to one of the following: %$$DATE()% %$$DATE%
%EXCHAB%	Mailbox hide from exchange address book
%EXCHS%	Mailbox home server name
%EXCMS%	Mailbox store name

Rule String	Description
%GENUID%	Numeric UNIX/POSIX user identifier. This rule variable is the same as %UID% as long as the global user UID value is set. However, if the global user has no assigned UID value, and UID-generation is enabled (Global Properties on System Task), several actions occur. The next available UID value is allocated, assigned to the global user, and used as the value of this rule variable.
%P%	Password
%U%	Global user name
%UA%	Full address (generated from street, city, state, and postal code)
%UB%	Building
%UC%	City
%UCOMP%	Company name
%UCOUNTRY%	Country
%UCU*xx*% or %UCU*xxx*%	Custom field (*xx* or *xxx* represents the two-digit or three-digit field ID as specified on the Custom User Fields tab in the System Task frame)
%UD%	Description
%UDEPT%	Department
%UE%	Email address
%UEP%	Primary email address
%UES%	Secondary email addresses
%UF%	First name
%UFAX%	Facsimile number
%UHP%	Home page
%UI%	Initials
%UID%	Numeric UNIX/POSIX User Identifier
%UL%	Last name
%ULOC%	Location
%UMI%	Middle initial
%UMN%	Middle name
%UMP%	Mobile telephone number

Rule String	Description
%UN%	Full name
%UO%	Office name
%UP%	Telephone number
%UPAGE%	Pager number
%UPC%	Postal code, ZIP Code
%UPE%	Telephone number extension
%US%	State
%USA%	Street address
%UT%	Job title
%XD%	Generates the current timestamp in XML dateTimeValue format, a fixed-length string format. In a dateValue or timeValue attribute, you can write an (:offset,length) substring expression to extract the date or time parts of the dateTimeValue. For example, %XD:1,10% yields YYYY-MM-DD; and %XD:12,8% yields HH:MM:SS.

Values for Attributes

To use a specific, constant value for an account attribute, enter the value in the account template field instead of in a rule string. For example, you can enter values for specifying frequency limits or quantity size.

If the constant attribute value must contain more than one percent sign, enter two percent signs (%%) each time. CA Identity Manager translates them to one percent sign (%) when building the account attribute value. If the account template value contains only one percent sign, CA Identity Manager does not generate an error. The rule states that if you want a literal value of 25%, you must specify 25%%. However, as a special case, 25% will be accepted.

Advanced Rule Expressions

To provide greater flexibility than simple global user attribute substitution, you can enter advanced rule expressions, including the following:

- Substrings of rule expressions using Offset and Length
- Combinations of rule strings and values
- Rule expressions to set multiple values for multivalued account attributes
- Rule variables for other global user attributes
- Invocation of Built-in functions
- Invocation of customer-written Program Exit functions

Combining Rule Strings and Values

You can combine rule strings and constant values into an account template attribute value. For example, if there were no %UI% rule string, you could obtain the same effect by concatenating multiple rule expressions as follows:

```
%UF:,1%%UMI:,1%%UL:,1%
```

The %UA% rule string is equivalent to the following:

```
%USA%, %UC%, %US%, %UPC%
```

You can also combine a rule string with a constant value to create a UNIX home endpoint attribute as follows:

```
/u/home/%AC%
```

Rule Substrings

The following is the syntax for creating a substring value of a rule variable:

`%var[:offset,length]%`

var

Represents the name of the predefined rule variable as defined in the table shown previously.

offset

(Optional) Defines the starting offset of the substring suffix. The number 1 represents the first character.

length

(Optional) Defines the ending offset of the substring suffix. A length value of asterisk (*) indicates to the end of the value.

For example, to set an account attribute to the first 4 characters of a global user's Building attribute, use the following to define the variable:

`%UB:1,4%`

If the Building attribute is empty or has fewer than four characters, the resulting account attribute value will have fewer than four characters.

Multivalued Rule Expressions

Most rule expressions are single-valued. They start from one user attribute value (possibly empty) and result in one account attribute value (also possibly empty). However, sometimes you want to consider an empty user attribute as 0 values. Sometimes you may want to generate multiple values to populate a multivalued account attribute value.

The following rule syntax lets you work with zero or more values that a user attribute may contain:

%*var*%

The optional multivalued flag asterisk (*) immediately after the first percent sign % of a rule expression indicates that the result of this rule expression should be 0, 1 or more than 1 value depending on how many values the referenced user attribute contains.

Most user attribute values are single-valued, so they may only contain 0 or 1 values. However, the custom attributes (CustomField01 through CustomField99) are multivalued attributes, so a rule variable referencing these attributes may contain 0, 1, or more than 1 value.

If a user attribute has more than 1 value, but you fail to include the asterisk (*) in your rule expression, then the result of the rule evaluation will be that of the first value. However, in most cases attribute values are officially unordered and as a result the value that CA Identity Manager considers first may not be predictable.

If a user attribute has more than one value, and you include the * in your rule expression, multiple values are generated for the account attribute. Do not define such a multivalued rule expression in an account template if the account attribute being set from that account template attribute is not itself multivalued.

You can define an extended account attribute in the ADS endpoint type to be multivalued; and use this multivalued rule expression syntax to set that attribute. For example, consider an environment that defines an extended ADS account attribute named patents and custom user attribute number three also named patents.

An ADS account template could define, for the patents attribute, the rule string %*UCU03%. Then, you could change a user's patents attribute by adding one or more values. When applying the changes to the user, select the option of updating the user's accounts. This consults the account's account template, finds the rule variable %*UCU03%, and knows to copy all of the user's patents to the account's patents attribute.

Similarly, during account creation, rule strings are evaluated. Furthermore, during account template change, if the rule string has been changed, you can choose to recompute the rule for all accounts associated to the account template.

The %*var*% syntax is also meaningful for variables *var* that refer to single-valued user attributes. This is true only when concatenation is involved and if the referenced attributes are unset on users.

The optional multivalued flag asterisk (*) indicates that the rule containing a %*var*% rule variable evaluates to no value if the user attribute has no values. This is different from the single-valued rule expression %*var*%, which always evaluates to a single value, even if it is an empty string.

To understand this difference, consider the following rule strings:

```
(310)%UP%
 (310)%*UP%
```

Both rule strings appear to append area code 310 to the telephone number. However, they are different because if users have no value for their telephone number, the first rule evaluates to the account value of (310). The second rule string generates no value and leaves the account attribute unset.

On the other hand, consider the following rule strings that appear to append the telephone extension to the telephone number:

```
%UP% %UPE%
%UP% %*UPE%
```

If everyone has a telephone number, but some do not have extensions, the first rule string generates a value that includes the phone number for each user with no extension. The second rule string generates no values. In this case, use the first rule with %UPE%.

Explicit Global User Attribute Rules

Each user has many more attributes than are listed in the previous rule table. You will probably have no need to create rule expressions referencing any of these other attributes. However, should the need arise, you can use the following syntax to refer to a specific user attribute:

```
%#ldap-attribute%
```

For instance, if you must determine the value of the user's Suspended field, you would determine the corresponding LDAP attribute name for this field (which is eTSuspended) and create the rule expression that evaluates to 0 or 1, like eTSuspended:

```
%#eTSuspended%
```

As another example, you can obtain the user's assigned provisioning roles with the following rule expression:

```
%*#eTRoleDN%
```

These provisioning roles are full LDAP distinguished name values. Perhaps in conjunction with the built-in function RDNVALUE (see the table that follows), the values would be a little more useful. Note the multi-value indicator asterisk (*) so as to obtain all of the user's assigned provisioning roles as multiple values.

The substring syntax is also applicable to these rule expressions, so you could use %#eTTelephone:6,*% to mean the same thing as %UP:6,*. Each asks CA Identity Manager to strip off the first five characters of the user's telephone field.

Built-in Rule Functions

You may use built-in rule functions in your rule expressions to perform various transformations on the values. The general form of built-in rule function invocation is

```
%[*]$$function(arg[,…])[:offset,length]%
```

where the multivalued indicator asterisk (*) and the offset and length substring specifications are once again optional.

The recognized built-in functions are as follows:

Built-in Rule Function	Description
ALLOF	Merges all the parameters into a multivalued attribute. Order is preserved and duplicates are removed. For example, if user attributes are set to the following: eTCustomField01: { A, B } eTCustomField02: { A, C } Then, the rule: %*ALLOF(%*UCU01%,%*UCU02%)% evaluates to three values { A, B, C }.
DATE	Evaluates to the current date in *dd/mm/yyyy* format. The rule expression %D% is equivalent to one of the following: %$$DATE()% %$$DATE%
FIRSTOF	Returns the first value of any of the parameters. Used to insert a default value if an attribute is not set: %$$FIRSTOF(%UCU01%,'unknown')% %$$FIRSTOF(%LN%,%UCU01%,%U%)% If none of the values is set, the result is no values. To enter a constant string in an argument, enclose it in single quotes.
INDEX	Returns one value of a multivalued attribute. Index 1 is the first value. If the index is greater than the number of values, the result is the unset (empty) value. The following rules are equivalent to the following: %$$INDEX(%*UCU01%,1)% %$$FIRSTOF(%*UCU01%)%

Built-in Rule Function	Description
NOTEMPTY	Returns the single value of its one argument, but reports a failure if this attribute value is not set. Example 1: Fail the account creation or update if the user does not have an assigned UID attribute: %$$NOTEMPTY(%UID%)% Example 2: Use the first name, unless it is not set, in which case use the last name. If neither is set, fail the account creation or update. %$$NOTEMPTY(%$$FIRSTOF(%UF%, %UL%)%)%
PRIMARYEMAIL	Returns the primary email address extracted from the multiple email addresses. The expression %UE% is equivalent to the following: %$$PRIMARYEMAIL(%UEP%)%
RDNVALUE	Treats the attribute value as an LDAP distinguished name and extracts the common name of the object from that DN: %*$$RDNVALUE(%#eTRoleDN%)% This returns the common names of all assigned provisioning roles. If the user belongs to two provisioning roles with the same common name, that role name is listed once.
TOLOWER	Converts uppercase text to lowercase: %$$TOLOWER(%AC%)%
TOUPPER	Converts lowercase text to uppercase: %$$TOUPPER(%U%)%

Built-in Rule Function	Description
TRIM	Removes leading and trailing blank characters from an attribute value. For example, “%UF %UL%” would generally create a value with a first and last name separated by a blank character. However, if the user had an empty first name attribute, this rule would generate a value ending with a trailing blank. However, using “%$$TRIM(%UF% %UL%)% ensures that no leading or trailing blank exists in the account attribute value even if one or the other of First Name and Last Name was unset.

Provisioning Role Performance

When using CA Identity Manager with a Provisioning Server, there are some provisioning performance enhancements you may want to consider.

JIAM Object Cache

CA Identity Manager communicates with the Provisioning Server using the Java IAM (JIAM) API. To improve communication performance, you configure a cache for objects retrieved from the Provisioning Server.

Enable the JIAM Cache

To enable the JIAM Cache

1. Access the environment settings through the Management Console. Click Advanced Settings, Miscellaneous.
2. Configure the User Defined Property for the JIAM Cache.
   - **Property**—JIAMCache
   - **Value**—true
3. Click Add.
4. Click Save.

   The User Defined Property is saved.

Define the JIAM Cache TTL (Time-to-live)

The JIAM Cache stores information for a specified period of time before the data expires. This period of time is referred to as time-to-live (TTL). You set the JIAM Cache TTL value (in seconds) to define how long data remains in the cache.

To gain the maximum benefit from locally cached data, you balance performance gains against timely data. We recommend a minimum TTL value of 1 day with a maximum value of 7 days. See the following table for time-to-live values to use:

Desired Lifetime	TTL Settings (secs)
24 hours (1 day)	86,400
72 hours (3 days)	259,200
120 hours (5 days)	432,000
168 hours (7 days)	604,800

To define the JIAM Cache TTL

1. Access the Environment through the Management Console. Click Advanced Settings, Miscellaneous.
2. Configure the User Defined Property for the JIAM Cache TTL.
   - **Property**—JIAMCacheTTL
   - **Value**—number of seconds that data remains in the JIAM Cache

     Default: 300
3. Click Add.
4. Click Save.

   The User Defined Property is saved.

Session Pooling

To improve performance, CA Identity Manager can pre-allocate a number of sessions to be pooled for use when communicating with the Provisioning Server.

For more information on Session Pooling, see the *Management Console Online Help.*

Provisioning Tasks for Existing Environments

If you import custom roles definitions and want to enable provisioning on an environment, you must *also* import the Provisioning Only role definitions in the Management Console. These role definitions can be found in this folder:
`iam_im.ear\management_console.war\WEB-INF\Template\environment`

Note: For more information on importing role definitions, see the *Configuration Guide*.

Chapter 9: Managed Services (Basic Access Requests)

This section contains the following topics:

Creating a Service (see page 212)
Making Services Available to Users (see page 222)
Modifying a Service (see page 225)
Adding a Search to Request and View Access (see page 227)
Deleting a Service (see page 228)
Renewing Access to a Service (see page 230)

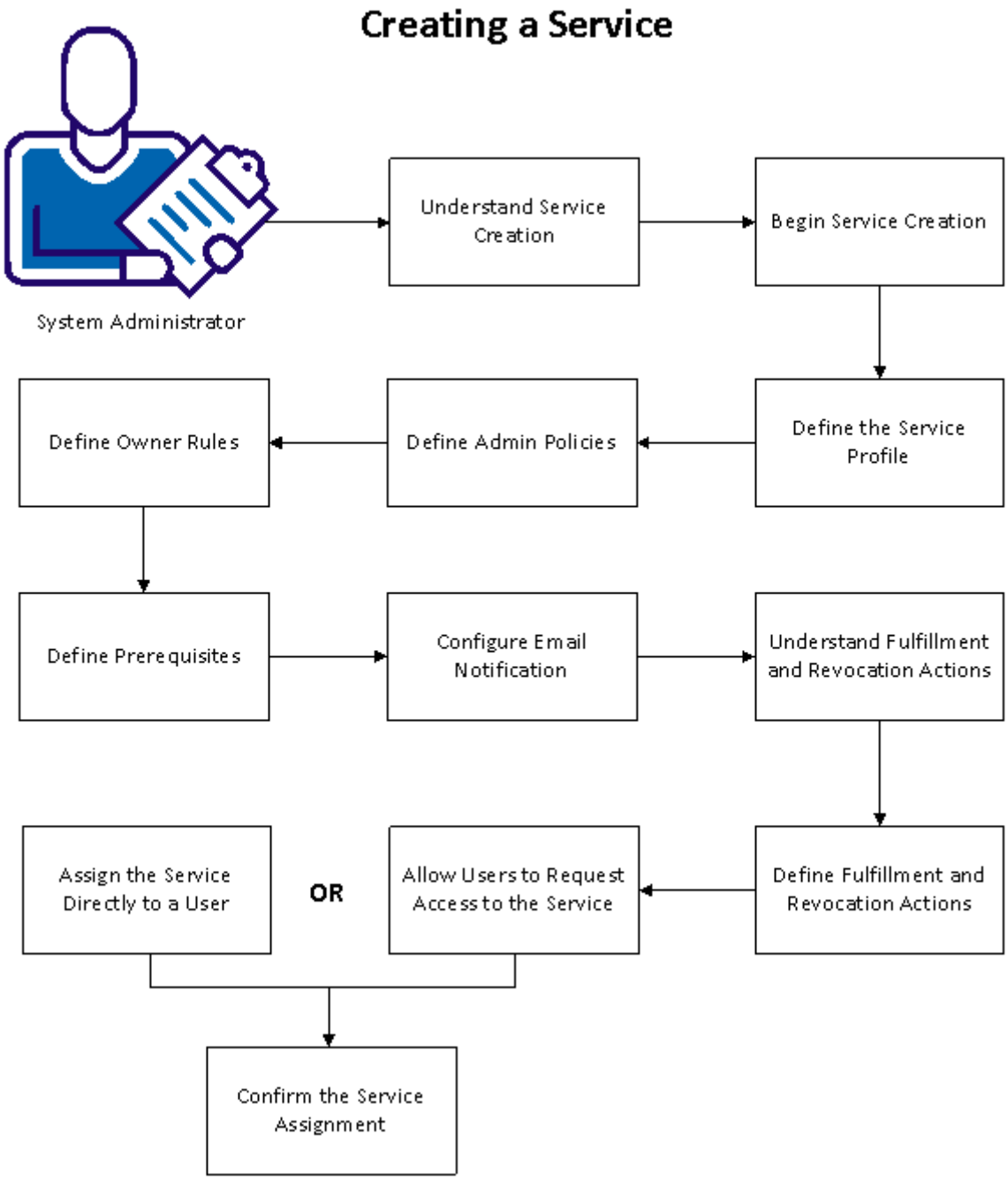
Creating a Service

Services simplify entitlement management. A service bundles together all the entitlements - tasks, roles, groups, and attributes - a user needs for a given business role. Services are available to the user through Access request tasks in the CA CloudMinder User Console. Access request tasks enable a user or administrator to request, assign, revoke and renew a service.

Services allow an administrator to combine user entitlements into a single package, which are managed as a set. For example, all new Sales employees need access to a defined set of tasks and accounts on specific endpoint systems. They also need specific information added to their user account profiles. An administrator creates a service named Sales Administration, containing all the required tasks, roles, groups, and profile attribute information for a new Sales employee. When an administrator assigns the Sales Administration service to a user, that user receives the entire set of roles, tasks, groups and account attributes that are defined by the service.

Another way users can access services is to request access themselves. In the User Console, each user has a list of services available for their request. This list is populated with services marked as "Self Subscribing" by an administrator with the appropriate privileges, typically during service creation. From the list of available services, users can request access to the services they need. When the user requests access to a service, the request is fulfilled automatically, and the associated entitlements are assigned to the user immediately. An administrator with the appropriate privileges can also configure service fulfillment to require workflow approval, or to generate email notifications.

The following diagram shows the information to understand, and the steps to perform, to create a service.


Creating a Service
System Administrator
Understand Service Creation
Begin Service Creation
Define the Service Profile
Define Admin Policies
Define Owner Rules
Define Prerequisites
Configure Email Notification
Understand Fulfillment and Revocation Actions
Define Fulfillment and Revocation Actions
Allow Users to Request Access to the Service
OR
Assign the Service Directly to a User
Confirm the Service Assignment

The following topics explain how to create a service and make it available to users:

1. Understand Service Creation (see page 214).
2. Begin Service Creation (see page 215).
3. Define the Service Profile (see page 215).
4. Define Admin Policies for the Service (see page 217).
5. Define Owner Rules for the Service (see page 217).
6. Define Prerequisites for the Service (see page 218).
7. Configure Email Notification for Service Renewal. (see page 218)
8. Understand Fulfillment and Revocation Actions (see page 219).
9. Define Fulfillment and Revocation Actions for the Service. (see page 220)
10. Allow users to request access to services.

    In the User Console, when the user clicks My Access, then Request & View Access, the user sees a list of services available for their request. The services that appear in this list are those marked "Self Subscribing" by an administrator with the appropriate privileges, typically during service creation.
11. Assign a Service Directly to a User (see page 83).
12. Confirm the Service Assignment.

Understand Service Creation

Before you create a service, consider the prerequisite information and entitlements that are required to create and fulfill the service.

Consider the following questions:

1. What business need does this service address? For example, you can create a service that makes an account on Salesforce.com available to all new employees.
2. Do members of the service need certain admin roles? If so, create or identify those admin roles.
3. Must members of the service receive access to one or more endpoints? If so, create or identify those endpoints.
4. If members of the service need access to endpoints, create or identify the associated provisioning roles and account templates.

5. Must members of the service be members of certain groups? If so, create or identify those groups.
6. Must certain user attributes be referenced or modified when a user becomes a member of the service? For example, when a user receives the Salesforce.com service, is it necessary to confirm whether the department attribute for that user is set to Sales? If so, create or identify those user attributes.

Once you have created or identified these prerequisites, you can begin service creation (see page 215).

Begin Service Creation

You create a service from the User Console.

Follow these steps:

1. Log in to an account that has service management privileges.

   For example, the first user of an environment has the System Manager role, which has the Create Service task.
2. From the navigation menu, select Services, which may be listed under Tasks.
3. Click Manage Services, Create Service.
4. Define the Service Profile.

Define the Service Profile

On the Profile tab, you define basic characteristics of the service.

Follow these steps:

1. Enter a name and tag. A tag is a unique identifier for the service.

   Note: Tags can only contain alphanumeric and underscore characters, and cannot start with a number. Once created, a tagname cannot be changed, or reused, even if a service is later deleted.
2. Select Enabled if you want to make the service available to users as soon as you create it.
3. Select Self Subscribing if you want this service to appear in the list of services available for users to request. When Self-Subscribing is enabled, users can request access to this service through the User Console.

4. (Optional) Add one or more categories. Type a category name and click the up arrow to add it to the service.

   Categories add additional information to a service. You can use this additional information to facilitate service searches in environments that include a significant number of services.

5. Specify a Service Run-time User Data Screen if you want to collect additional user data at the time a user requests the service.

   Use a Service Run-time User Data Screen to help ensure that all user data necessary to fulfill the service exists in the system. For example, a valid email address is required to fulfill a service that creates an account in Google Apps. If an email address for a user does not exist in the CA CloudMinder user store, the user is required to provide it when requesting the service.

   a. Click Browse.

      A list of available profile screens appears. These screens are typically used to collect user data.

   b. Select a profile screen that contains the user data you want to collect. Choose one of the following options:

      - Click Select to collect all user data contained in that screen.

      OR

      - Click Copy to customize the user data you want to collect. Specify a name and unique tag for the new screen. Add, edit or remove user data elements, and click OK.

      OR

      - Click Edit to change the user data contained in that screen. Add, edit, or remove user data elements, and click OK.

      Important! If you edit a user data screen, your changes apply everywhere the screen is used in the User Console. Consider copying and customizing the profile screen instead.

   c. Click Select.

      The user data elements that you selected are collected at the time the user requests the service.

      Note: If the required data exists in the system when a user requests the service, the data is prepopulated in the profile screen.

6. Define Admin Policies for the Service (see page 217).

Define Admin Policies for the Service

On the Administrators tab, you define who can add or remove users as members and administrators of this service. Admin policies contain admin and scope rules and at least one administrator privilege (Manage Members or Manage Administrators).

Admin rules define who can administer this service. Scope rules limit which users can become administrators. For example, an admin rule can allow all members of the Sales group to administer a service. A scope rule can then limit those users to only members of the Sales group in Boston, MA.

Follow these steps:

1. On the Administrators tab, click Add.

   The Admin Policy screen appears.

2. Define an admin rule for which users can administer this service. For example, you can specify users who are members of the Sales group, or who have the specific job title profile attribute of Sales Manager.

   Click the left arrow to edit a previously specified portion of a rule.

3. Define a scope rule to limit which users can administer this service. For example, if you specified users who are members of the Sales group in your admin rule, you can then limit the scope of that rule to only users whose city is Boston, MA.

   Note: You can add several admin policies with different rules and different privileges for each service.

4. If you want to allow administrators to add or remove members of this service, click "Can manage members of this service."

5. Click OK.

6. To edit a policy further, click the Edit icon. To remove a policy, click the minus sign icon.

7. Define Owner Rules for the service. (see page 217)

Define Owner Rules for the Service

On the Owners tab, you define rules about who can be an owner of the service. An owner is a user who can modify the service.

Follow these steps:

1. On the Owners tab, click Add.

   The Owner Rule screen appears.

2. Define an owner rule for which users can own this service. For example, you can specify users who are members of the Sales group, or who have the specific job title profile attribute of Sales Manager.

   Click the left arrow to edit a previously specified portion of a rule.

3. Click OK.

4. Define Prerequisites for the service. (see page 218)

Define Prerequisites for the Service

On the Prerequisites tab, you define services that users must have before requesting this service. A service only appears in the list of available services for a given user if that user is a member of all prerequisite services.

If a duration is set for a prerequisite service, that duration applies to the service you are defining. For example, Service A is a prerequisite for Service B. Service A has a duration of one week. Service B also expires in one week.

Follow these steps:

1. On the Prerequisites tab, click Add Service.

   A search screen appears.

2. Search for a service you want to designate as a prerequisite for this service.

   To display a list of all services over which you have administrative privileges, click Search without modifying the search criteria.

3. Select a service and click Select.

   An updated list of prerequisites for this service appears.

Configure Email Notification for Service Renewal

Some services expire after a certain period.

On the Email tab, you can configure an email notification that reminds service members to renew their membership before it expires. Members can then use the Renew Service task to renew their access.

CA CloudMinder provides a default email template that includes dynamic content. This content is automatically populated when the email is sent. Dynamic content, which appears in curly brackets ({ }) in the email notification editor, adds a specific user name, service name, and expiration date to the email.

You can modify the content of the email notification in the editor. For example, you can modify the body or subject text, change the font, or remove dynamic content.

Note the following items when configuring email notifications:

- If you are including dynamic content in the email notification, do not modify the text between the curly brackets ({ }).
- If the service has a prerequisite service that expires, email notifications are only sent for the prerequisite service, even when email notifications are configured for both services.

Follow these steps:

1. On the Email tab, select the Email notification to users before the service expires check box to enable notifications.
2. (Optional) Customize the email notification using the controls in the editor.

   The email notification editor supports HTML. You can add HTML content to the body of the email notification by clicking the Toggle HTML Source button (<>) in the toolbar.
3. Understand Fulfillment and Revocation actions. (see page 219)

Understand Fulfillment and Revocation Actions

On the Actions tab, you define the entitlements and information - tasks, roles, groups, and attributes - to be added, modified, or removed when a service is assigned or revoked. Put simply, service actions define the actions that a service carries out.

CA CloudMinder uses a Policy Xpress policy to define the circumstances under which Fulfillment and Revocation actions occur. CA CloudMinder preconfigures this policy so that whenever a user requests a service, the proper conditions and data exist. The service is automatically fulfilled or revoked.

An administrator must define the actions that the system takes in fulfilling or revoking a service. For example, when creating a service, an administrator can specify that service members receive the Sales Manager admin role, the Salesforce.com provisioning role, and the Sales group. Likewise, the administrator can specify that these entitlements are removed when the service is revoked.

Define Fulfillment and Revocation Actions for the Service

On the Actions tab, you define the entitlements and information that the system adds, modifies, or removes when a service is assigned to, or removed from, a user.

Follow these steps:

1. Click the Actions tab.

   The Fulfillment and Revocation Actions screen appears.

2. Click the Manage Fulfillment Actions or Manage Revocation Actions button.

   The Create Policy Xpress Policy screen appears.

   The following fields are pre-defined to create an action rule:

   Name

   Provides a friendly name for the action rule. This name must be unique.

   Description

   Defines the meaning of the action rule.

   Priority

   Defines which action rule executes, in the case of several action rules matching. This field is useful for defining default actions. For example, if you have multiple rules, each for a department name, it is possible to set a default by adding an additional rule with no conditions but a lower priority (such as 10 if all others are 5). If none of the department rules are matched, then the default is used.

3. Specify criteria to match under Action Rule Conditions.
4. Click the Add Action when Matched button under Add Actions

   The Add Action when Matched screen appears. On this screen, you define the actions that the system takes when the rule is matched.

5. Enter a friendly name that defines the purpose of the action.

   For example, enter "Add the Sales Manager Admin Role."

6. Select the category of action you want the system to take.

   For example, to add a role, select the Roles category.

7. Select the type of action you want the system to take.

   For example, to add or remove an admin role, select the Set Admin Role type.

8. Select the function that you want the system to perform.

   For example, to add an admin role, select the Add function.

   Note: When you select a function, a description of that function appears. This description can help you determine whether the selected function results in the system behavior you want.

9. Define the specific action that you want the system to take.

   For example, to add an admin role named "Sales Manager", enter the role name, or click the Browse button and select Sales Manager from the list of available admin roles.

10. Click OK.

    Repeat this procedure until you have added all the desired actions for this service.

11. Click OK.

    The system associates the designated fulfillment and revocation actions with the service. When a user receives the service, the associated entitlements and information are added, modified or removed.

12. You can now assign a service to a user (see page 83).

Assign a Service to a User

You can assign a service directly to an individual user. This user becomes a *member* of the service.

Follow these steps:

1. Navigate to Services, Request & View Access.

   A list of services you can administer appears.

2. Select the service that you want to assign to a user and click Select.

   A list of users that are assigned to the service appears.

3. Click Request Access.

4. Search for a user to whom you want to assign the service.

   To display a list of all users for whom you have administrative privileges, click Search without modifying the search criteria.

5. Select a user and click Select.

   An updated list of users that are assigned to the service appears.

6. Click Save Changes.

   The user receives the specified service. The user receives all applications, roles, groups, and attributes you included in the service.

Confirm Service Assignment

Once you have assigned a service to a user, confirm that all tasks associated with the service completed successfully.

Follow these steps:

1. Navigate to Services, View Service Access Request History.

   A search screen appears.

2. Search for the service you assigned to a user.

   To display a list of all services over which you have administrative privileges, click Search without modifying the search criteria.

   A list of services you can administer appears.

3. Select the service that you assigned, and click Select.

   A history of actions that is associated with the service appears.

4. Click Last Changed to see the most recent actions first.

5. Confirm that the user in question received the service successfully.

6. Click Close.

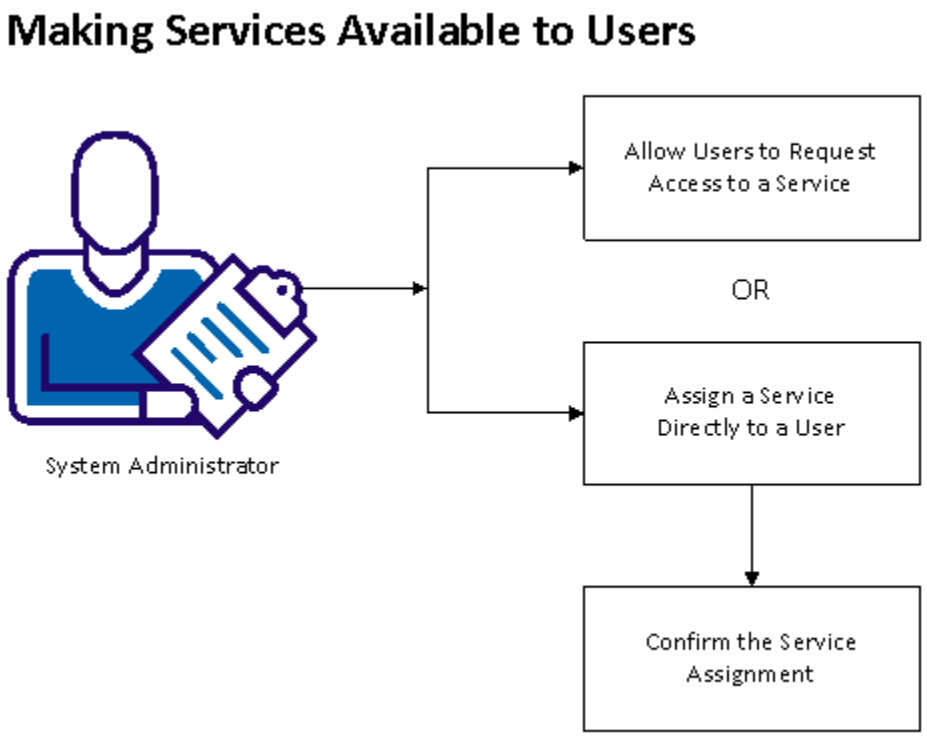
Making Services Available to Users

Services simplify entitlement management. A Service bundles together all the entitlements a user needs for a given business role. Services are available to the user through Access Request tasks in the User Console. Access Request tasks enable a user or administrator to request, assign, revoke and renew a Service through the user interface.

Services allow a system administrator to combine user activities and information - tasks, roles, groups, and attributes - into a single package, which are managed as a set. For example, all new Sales employees need access to a defined set of tasks, accounts on specific endpoint systems, and specific information added to their user account profiles. A system administrator creates a service named Sales Administration, containing all the required tasks, roles, groups, and profile attribute information for a new Sales employee. When an administrator assigns the Sales Administration service to a user, that user receives the entire set of roles, tasks, groups and account attributes that are defined by the service.

Another way users can access services is to request access themselves. In the User Console, each user has a list of services available for their request. This list is populated with services marked as "Self Subscribing" by a system administrator with the appropriate privileges, typically during service creation. From the list of available services, users can request access to the services they need. When the user requests access to a service, the request is fulfilled automatically. The associated tasks, roles, groups and attributes are assigned to the user immediately. A CA CloudMinder administrator with the appropriate privileges can also configure service fulfillment to require workflow approval, or to generate email notifications.

The following diagram shows the information to understand, and the steps to perform, to make services available to users.



You can make services available to users using the following methods:

1. Allow users to request access themselves.

   In the CA CloudMinder User Console, when the user clicks My Access, then Request & View Access, the user sees a list of services available for their request. The services that appear in this list are those marked "Self Subscribing" by a CA CloudMinder administrator with the appropriate privileges, typically during service creation.

   When the user requests access, the system assigns the service to the user. The user receives all applications, roles, groups and attributes associated with the service. If the service includes a Launch Role for an application, an icon and a link to the application appear in the User Console Home page.

2. Assign a Service Directly to a User (see page 83).

3. If you assign a service directly to a user, Confirm the Service Assignment (see page 225).

Assign a Service to a User

You can assign a service directly to an individual user. This user becomes a *member* of the service.

Follow these steps:

1. Navigate to Services, Request & View Access.

   A list of services you can administer appears.

2. Select the service that you want to assign to a user and click Select.

   A list of users that are assigned to the service appears.

3. Click Request Access.

4. Search for a user to whom you want to assign the service.

   To display a list of all users for whom you have administrative privileges, click Search without modifying the search criteria.

5. Select a user and click Select.

   An updated list of users that are assigned to the service appears.

6. Click Save Changes.

   The user receives the specified service. The user receives all applications, roles, groups, and attributes you included in the service.

Confirm Service Assignment

Once you have assigned a service to a user, confirm that all tasks associated with the service completed successfully.

Follow these steps:

1. Navigate to Services, View Service Access Request History.

   A search screen appears.

2. Search for the service you assigned to a user.

   To display a list of all services over which you have administrative privileges, click Search without modifying the search criteria.

   A list of services you can administer appears.

3. Select the service that you assigned, and click Select.

   A history of actions that is associated with the service appears.

4. Click Last Changed to see the most recent actions first.

5. Confirm that the user in question received the service successfully.

6. Click Close.

Modifying a Service

As a system administrator, you can modify a service that you previously created. For example, you can change the entitlements the service grants to service members by adding a role to the service. You can also adjust admin and owner rules for the service, service prerequisites, and other administrative details.

If CA CloudMinder has fulfilled a service for a given user, any changes that are made to the service do not propagate to that user. If you decide to modify a service, users who received the service before you changed it have the original entitlements. Users who receive the service after you change it have the entitlements that the modified service grants. For example, consider the following scenario:

As a system administrator, you create a Sales Manager service that grants the Sales Manager role and the Sales group to service members. Users request the Sales Manager service, and CA CloudMinder fulfills the service by granting the appropriate role and group to the users. You decide to modify the Sales Manager service to include the Employee Manager role. Existing members of the service do not then receive the Employee Manager role. Only new members of the Sales Manager service receive the Employee Manager role, in addition to the Sales Manager role and the Sales group.

Thus, consider modifying a service only if the service has no members. That is, modify a service only if no user has requested and received the service, and no administrator has assigned the service to a user.

You can modify administrative information, admin and owner rules, service prerequisites, and entitlements - tasks, roles, groups, and attributes - for the service.

Follow these steps:

1. Log in to a CA CloudMinder account that has service management privileges.

   For example, the first user of an environment has the System Manager role, which has the Modify Service task.

2. From the navigation menu, select Tasks, Services.
3. Click Manage Services, then Modify Service.

   A search screen appears.

4. Search for a service you want to modify.

   To display a list of all services for which you have administrative privileges, click Search without modifying the search criteria.

5. Select a service and click Select.

   A confirmation message appears.

6. Click Yes.
7. Click Submit.

   CA CloudMinder applies your changes to the service.

Adding a Search to Request and View Access

The Request and View Access task displays a list of services; however, no field exists to search for more services. To add a search field:

1. Select Roles and Tasks, Admin Tasks, Modify Admin Task.
2. Search for Request and View Access.
3. Select the task in the Service category.
4. Click Tabs.
5. Under tab, click the edit icon to the left of Manage Access.
6. Click Browse on the List Screen line.
7. Configure the option that applies to add the correct search.
8. Select the required Screen and click on Edit button to edit the screen.
9. In Configure Standard List Screen, navigate to 'Select the fields that a user can search on:' section.
10. Select the search fields and configure search field names.
11. Click OK to save the changes.

Information about the Service Request, such as the Service Request Duration and User Data, appears in the Service Request approval workflow item. Also, this information is emailed if you assign the AddServiceToUserEvent policy-based workflow to the Request and View Access task.

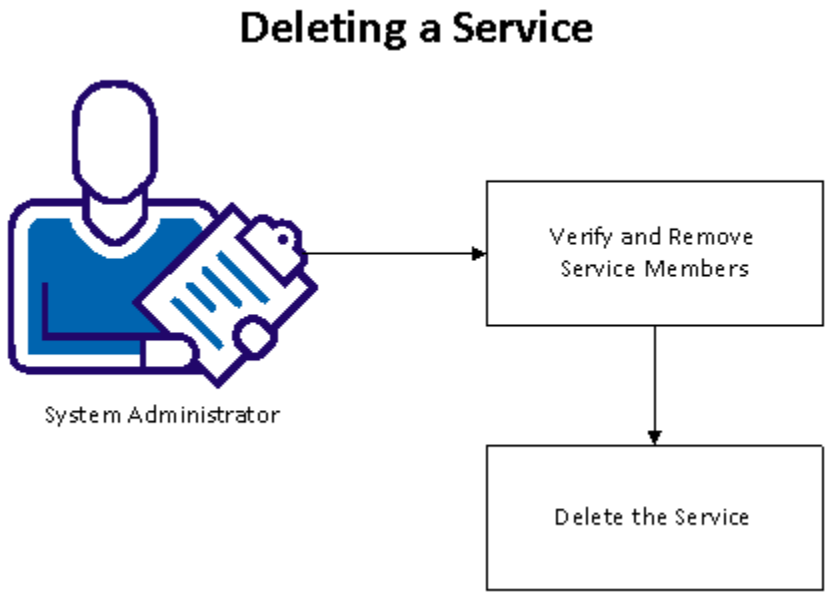
Deleting a Service

As a system administrator, you can delete a service. A deleted service is removed entirely from the system.

If users are assigned to a service, you cannot delete the service. Before you delete a service, first check for and remove all assigned users, or *members*.

Note: Similarly, if a user is a member of a service, you cannot delete the user. First, remove the user as a member of the service, then delete the user.

The following diagram shows the information to understand, and the steps you to perform, to delete a service.



The following topics explain how to delete a service:

1. Verify and Remove Service Members (see page 229)
2. Delete the Service (see page 229)

Verifying and Removing Service Members

Before you delete a service, first check for and remove existing members.

Follow these steps:

1. Log in to a CA CloudMinder account that has service management privileges.

   For example, the first user of an environment has the System Manager role, which has the Modify Service task.

2. Select Tasks, Services, Request & View Access.

   A list of services you can administer appears.

3. Select the service that you want to delete and click Select.

   A list of users that are assigned to the service appears.

4. If the service has members, clear the check boxes next to all users.

5. Click Save Changes.

   A confirmation message appears.

6. Click Yes.

   CA CloudMinder removes the members from the service.

Deleting a Service

You can delete a service that has no service members.

To delete a service

1. Log in to CA CloudMinder with an account that has service management privileges.

   For example, the first user of an environment has the System Manager role, which has the Delete Service task.

2. Navigate to Services from the left pane or by selecting Tasks..

3. Click Manage Services, Delete Service.

   A search screen appears.

4. Search for the service you want to delete.

   To display a list of all services for which you have administrative privileges, click Search without modifying the search criteria.

5. Select the service and click Select.

   A confirmation message appears.

6. Click Yes.

   The service is deleted.

Renewing Access to a Service

Some services expire after a certain period of time. Administrators can renew a service for users to prevent an interruption in their access.

You can renew a service using one of the following methods:

- Select the service, then select the user access to renew
- Select the user, then select the service to renew

Note: Depending on how an environment is configured, end users can also renew their access by using the Renew Access task.

The following procedure describes how to renew access by selecting the service first. If you want to select the user first, use the User Access Requests, Manage User Renew Requests task in the Users category.

Follow these steps:

1. Click Services, Renew Access in the User Console.
2. Search for and select the service that you want to renew.

   The User Console displays a list of users who currently have access to the service you selected, and the date their access expires.

3. Select the duration for the renewal in the Access Request column, then click OK.

   The options in the Duration field are determined when the service is created.

4. Click Save Changes.

You can view the status of the service renewal by using the View Access Request History in the User Console.

Chapter 10: Synchronization

This section contains the following topics:

User Synchronization between Servers (see page 231)
Synchronize Users in Create or Modify User Tasks (see page 234)
Synchronization Tasks (see page 235)

User Synchronization between Servers

You configure synchronization in CA Identity Manager to make sure that the users for the CA Identity Manager user store and provisioning directory have matching data. To handle changes from either directory or user store, you configure inbound and outbound synchronization.

Inbound Synchronization

Inbound synchronization keeps CA Identity Manager users up to date with changes that occur in the provisioning directory. Changes in the provisioning directory include those made using systems with connectors to the Provisioning Server. The synchronization uses the mappings defined on the Provisioning screen of the Management Console.

Failover for Inbound Synchronization

Fail over to an alternate CA Identity Manager Server URL occurs only if the application server named by a URL is not running. If the application server is running and accepts the notification but then encounters a configuration error, such as unknown environment or environment not started, these errors block the delivery of notifications. These problems must be resolved before inbound notifications functions properly.

Outbound Synchronization

Outbound synchronization involves using CA Identity Manager to create and update users in the provisioning directory.

Creating Provisioning Directory Users

User creation in the provisioning directory occurs only for provisioning related events, such as assigning a provisioning role to a user. A user is created in the provisioning directory *only* when you use an admin task that assigns a role to create the user.

Note: A Provisioning Directory user is also called a global user. A global user is the single user that connects endpoint accounts.

When user creation in CA Identity Manager triggers user creation in the provisioning directory, CA Identity Manager sends an email with a temporary password to the new user's email address as it is defined in the provisioning directory. The user can log in to the User Console with that password, however, the user must then change the password. As a result, the password is synchronized between the user store and provisioning directory.

If the user has no email address, the user cannot access the User Console until changing the password in the user store.

Note: To email a temporary password, email notifications must be enabled for the Environment, and the CreateProvisioningUserNotificationEvent must be configured for email notification. (See the *Configuration Guide*.)

Update Global Users using CA Identity Manager

Updates to users in the provisioning directory occur when you use an admin task that modifies users. If no global user exists, no synchronization occurs.

Outbound mappings match the CA Identity Manager user events to an outbound event that affects the provisioning directory.

Identity Manager User Event	Outbound Event
☐ DeleteUserEvent	POST_DELETE_GLOBAL_USER
☐ DisableUserEvent	POST_DISABLE_GLOBAL_USER
☐ EnableUserEvent	POST_ENABLE_GLOBAL_USER
☐ ModifyUserEvent	POST_MODIFY_GLOBAL_USER
☐ ResetPasswordEvent	POST_CHANGE_GLOBAL_USER_PWD

If a user exists in the provisioning directory but not in CA Identity Manager, you can create that user in the User Console. If you have mapped attributes for the create task and the users have the same user ID, the attributes for the provisioning user are updated in the provisioning directory. Now you can manage that user from the User Console.

Note: If an event updates user attributes and you want the values to be synchronized to CA Identity Manager, then you need to map the events to the Outbound Event: POST_MODIFY_GLOBAL_USER.

Delete Global Users using CA Identity Manager

By default, outbound synchronization is configured for the Delete User event. When you delete a user in CA Identity Manager, the user is also deleted in the provisioning directory and all endpoint accounts.

If CA Identity Manager cannot delete a user's account in a managed endpoint, it deletes the user from the remaining accounts, but does not delete the user from the provisioning directory.

For example, suppose User A has a UNIX account and an Exchange account, which are managed in the Provisioning Server. When user A is deleted in CA Identity Manager, the Provisioning Server attempts to delete the user's accounts. If the Provisioning Server cannot delete the Exchange account due to a communication error, it deletes user A's UNIX account, but does not delete the user from the provisioning directory. However, User A is not restored in the user store.

Enable Password Synchronization

The Provisioning Server allows password synchronization between CA Identity Manager users and associated endpoint user accounts. Two configurations are required to enable endpoint initiated changes:

- Endpoints must be configured to capture endpoint-initiated changes and forward the changes to the Provisioning Server.
- The Enable Password Synchronization Agent attribute should be activated for the Global User.

Follow these steps:

1. In the Management Console, choose Advanced Settings, Provisioning.
2. Check Enable Password Changes from Endpoint Accounts.
3. Click Save.
4. Restart the Application Server.

Synchronize Users in Create or Modify User Tasks

On the profile tab of a task that creates or modifies users, synchronization controls ensure that changes to the CA Identity Manager are also made to the global user. If you create admin tasks that create or modify users and you have Identity Policies, set the synchronization controls as follows:

- Set User Synchronization to On Task Completion.
- Set Account Synchronization to On Task Completion.

Note: For best performance, select the On Task Completion option. However, if you select the On Task Completion option for a task that includes multiple events, CA Identity Manager does not synchronize until all of the events in the task complete. If one or more of those events require workflow approval, this may take several days. To prevent CA Identity Manager from waiting to apply identity policies or synchronize accounts until all events complete, select the On Every Event option.

If you add attributes to admin tasks that manage users, you need to update the Attribute Mappings in the Provisioning screen in the Management Console. For each user attribute in CA Identity Manager, a default provisioning attribute exists.

User Attribute	Provisioning Attribute
%ADMIN_ROLE_CONSTRAINT%	%ADMIN_ROLE_CONSTRAINT%
%EMAIL%	%EMAIL%
%ENABLED_STATE%	%ENABLED_STATE%
%FIRST_NAME%	%FIRST_NAME%
%FULL_NAME%	%FULL_NAME%
%IDENTITY_POLICY%	%IDENTITY_POLICY%
%LAST_NAME%	%LAST_NAME%
%PASSWORD%	%PASSWORD%
%PASSWORD_DATA%	%PASSWORD_DATA%
%USER_ID%	%USER_ID%

Synchronization Tasks

You can perform the following types of synchronization:

User Synchronization

Ensures that each user has the necessary accounts on the appropriate managed endpoints, and that each account is assigned to the appropriate account templates as called out by the user's provisioning roles.

Account Synchronization

Ensures that the capability attribute values on accounts are the appropriate values as indicated by the account's assigned account templates. Account synchronization can be strong or weak. Weak synchronization ensures that accounts capability attributes have at least the minimum capability required by its account templates. Strong synchronization ensures that account capability attributes have the exact capability required by its account templates. Account synchronization is strong if the account belongs to at least one account template whose Strong Synchronization check box is selected.

No corresponding Strong Synchronization check box governs User Synchronization, but a similar concept exists. When you issue the Synchronize User with Roles menu item on a user, you are presented with two synchronization options:

- Add missing accounts and account template assignments.
- Delete extra accounts and account template assignments.
- By selecting only the Add check box, which is similar to Weak Account Synchronization, you want global users to have at a minimum all accounts required by their assigned provisioning roles, but you allow users to have additional accounts not prescribed by current provisioning roles.

Select both the Add and Delete check boxes, which is similar to Strong Account Synchronization, to have the provisioning roles define exactly which accounts the user should have. Any additional accounts are deleted.

Choose Weak/Strong Account Synchronization or Weak/Strong User Synchronization based on how precisely provisioning roles are defined. If your users fit into clearly-defined provisioning roles where account access is tied to those roles, you would use Strong Synchronization.

Note: Some endpoint types set strong synchronization as the default. For more information, see the CA Identity Management and Governance Connectors wiki.

User synchronization and account synchronization are separate tasks that you must perform individually. Typically, you perform user synchronization first to ensure that all necessary accounts are created, then perform account synchronization later so the Provisioning Server assigns or changes the values of the account attributes.

The Provisioning Server provides two sets of synchronization menu options for objects:

- Check synchronization menu options verify the synchronization and return a list of the accounts that do not comply with the provisioning roles or account templates.
- Synchronize menu options synchronize global users with their provisioning roles or accounts with their account templates.

If you perform the check synchronization functions first, the Provisioning Server tells you what corrections the synchronize functions will perform. If the check synchronization functions find no problem, the synchronize functions do not run.

Why Users Become Out of Sync

The following are some reasons why users become out of sync with their provisioning roles or account templates:

- Earlier attempts to create the necessary accounts failed due to hardware or software problems in your network, thereby causing missing accounts.
- Provisioning roles and account templates may have changed, thereby creating extra or missing accounts.
- Accounts were assigned to account templates after they were created, so accounts exist that have not been synchronized with their account templates.
- The creation of a new account is delayed because the account was specified to be created later.
- A new endpoint was acquired. During exploration and correlation, the Provisioning Server does not assign provisioning roles to the users automatically, so you must update the role to indicate which users should have accounts on the new endpoint. Any account that was correlated to a user is listed as an extra account when the user is synchronized.
- An existing account was assigned to a user by copying the account to the user, thereby performing a manual correlation and establishing an extra account.
- An account was created for a user other than by assigning the user to a role. For example, if you copy a user to an account template that is not in any of the user's provisioning roles, the account is listed as an extra account or as an account with an extra account template. If you copy the user to an endpoint to create an account using the endpoint's default account template, that account could be an extra account.

User Synchronization

User synchronization creates, updates, or deletes accounts so they comply with the provisioning role assigned to a user. So if administrators add or delete accounts on your managed endpoint by using native tools, and you have not performed a recent re-exploration of your endpoint to update the provisioning directory, User Synchronization may indicate no problems exists when actually a user may have extra or missing accounts.

User with Roles Synchronization

You can check synchronization on users to list extra accounts or account templates and accounts that are missing. When you request to synchronize user with roles, the Provisioning Server ensures that the user has all the accounts required by the person's provisioning roles and ensures each account belongs to the correct account templates.

- With this task, you can select a checkbox to create the account on the endpoint. If more than one account template in the user's provisioning roles prescribes the same account, the account is created by merging all relevant account templates.
- During user with roles synchronization, you have the option to delete extra accounts. You may determine that your users have legitimate reasons for having accounts other than those required by their provisioning roles. If that is the case, you should not select this delete option.

  If an account being deleted resides in a managed endpoint for which account deletions have been disabled, the account is not actually deleted.

Create Accounts

Because provisioning roles contain account templates, and account templates are associated to endpoints, a user should have accounts listed on each endpoint with the correct account attributes.

With this task, you can select a checkbox to create the account on the endpoint. If more than one account template in the user's provisioning roles prescribes the same account, the account is created by merging all relevant account templates.

This account is assigned to those account templates, which are currently not synchronized with the account. Account synchronization is not necessary on newly created accounts.

Delete Accounts

During user with roles synchronization, you have the option to delete extra accounts. You may determine that your users have legitimate reasons for having accounts other than those required by their provisioning roles. If that is the case, you should not select this delete option.

If an account being deleted resides in a managed endpoint for which account deletions have been disabled, the account is not actually deleted.

Add Account Templates to Accounts

If an account is missing one or more account template assignments, user with account templates synchronization assigns an existing account to those Account Templates. When an account is assigned to one or more new Account Templates, account synchronization is run automatically to update the capability attributes of the account to capabilities specified by the Account Templates.

After account update from user with account templates synchronization, the account may or may not be in sync with its Account Templates. If one of the Account Templates added was a strong synchronization account template or if two or more Account Templates were added to an account, user with roles synchronization will start a full account synchronization on the account. However, if only one weak synchronization account template was added, user synchronization with account templates synchronization starts an account synchronization involving only this one account template. If the account was previously out of account synchronization with its other Account Templates before this update, it could still be out of account synchronization afterwards.

Removing Account Templates from Accounts

User with roles synchronization can also be used to remove extra account templates from an account. This is only done if you select the delete option. When user synchronization determines that an account needs to be updated to remove one or more extra account templates, account synchronization is run automatically on the account to synchronize its capability attributes with the account templates remaining on the account.

This account synchronization that occurs when removing account templates from an account will use strong synchronization if any of the remaining account templates is marked for strong synchronization and weak synchronization if all of the remaining account templates are marked for weak synchronization.

Whether weak or strong synchronization is used affects whether account capabilities granted earlier when an account template was assigned to an account are taken away when that that account template is later removed. With strong synchronization, a capability granted by an account template, such as a group membership or higher quota, will be taken away (group membership removed or quota lowered) if none of the account templates remaining on the account prescribe that capability. However, with weak synchronization, typically the account is unchanged because the Provisioning Server does not distinguish between on-demand extra capabilities and capabilities granted through account templates.

The exception to this rule is for certain multivalued capability attributes designated as SyncRemoveValues attributes. A simple multivalued attribute representing a collection of values assigned to the account (a group membership list, say), will typically be listed as a SyncRemoveValues attribute. For these attributes, the weak synchronization action that occurs while removing an account template from an account will remove values prescribed by the account template that is being removed - as long as that value is not also prescribed by one of the remaining account templates.

For example, if you create your account templates where each account template assigns a unique group membership to your account, this SyncRemoveValues feature will mean that when you change a global user's provisioning roles so as to no longer require a particular account template, the account will be updated to no longer belong to the group prescribed by that account template. You will note that this is not exactly the same as strong synchronization, as group memberships given to accounts beyond what is prescribed to account templates are retained.

For all single-valued attributes and certain multivalued attributes which are not designated as SyncRemoveValues attributes, the weak synchronization action while removing an account template from an account is the same as a normal weak synchronization action - capabilities are never removed.

If you want the capabilities never to be removed by weak synchronization, disable the SyncRemoveValues feature by setting the domain configuration parameter Synchronize/Remove Account Template Values from Accounts to No.

Account Template Synchronization

Changes that you make to account templates affect existing accounts as follows:

- If you change the value of a capability attribute, the corresponding account attribute is updated, if necessary, to be in synchronization with the account template attribute value. See the description of weak and strong synchronization.
- Certain account attributes are designated by the connector as not being updated on account template changes. Examples are certain attributes that the endpoint type only allows to be set during account creation, and the Password attribute.

Which Attributes are Updated

When you change capability attributes in an account template, the corresponding attribute on the accounts change. This change has an impact on the attributes for the account. The impact is based on the following factors:

- Whether the account template is defined to use weak or strong synchronization.
- Whether the account belongs to multiple account templates.

Weak Synchronization

Weak synchronization ensures that users have the minimum capability attributes for their accounts. Weak synchronization is the default in most endpoint types. If you update a template that uses weak synchronization, CA Identity Manager updates capability attributes as follows:

- If a number field is updated in an account template and the new number is greater than the number in the account, CA Identity Manager changes the value in the account to match the new number.
- If a check box was not selected in an account template and you subsequently select it, CA Identity Manager updates the check box on any account where the check box is not selected.
- If a list is changed in an account template, CA Identity Manager updates all accounts to include any value from the new list that was not included in the account's list of values.

If an account belongs to other account templates (whether those templates use weak or strong synchronization), CA Identity Manager consults only the template that is changing. This action is more efficient than checking every account template. Because weak synchronization only adds capabilities to accounts, it generally is not necessary to consult those other account templates.

Note: When propagating from a weak synchronization account template, changes that would remove or lower capabilities could leave some accounts unsynchronized. Remember that with weak synchronization, capabilities are never removed or lowered. Without consulting other templates for an account, the propagation does not consider if weak synchronization is sufficient.

In this situation, use Synchronize Users with Account Templates to synchronize the account with its account templates.

Strong Synchronization

Strong synchronization ensures that accounts have the exact account attributes that are specified in the account template.

For example, suppose that you add a group to an existing UNIX account template. Originally, the account template made accounts members of the Staff group. Now, you want to make the accounts members of both the Staff and System groups. All accounts that are associated with the account template are considered synchronized when each account is a member of the Staff and System groups (and no other groups). Any account not in the Staff group is added to both groups.

Some other factors to consider include the following situations:

- If the account template uses strong synchronization, any account belonging to groups, other than Staff and System, are removed from those extra groups.
- If the account template uses weak synchronization, the accounts are added to the Staff and System groups. Any account that has additional groups that are defined to it remains a member of these groups.

Note: Synchronize accounts with their templates regularly to ensure that the accounts stay synchronized with their account templates.

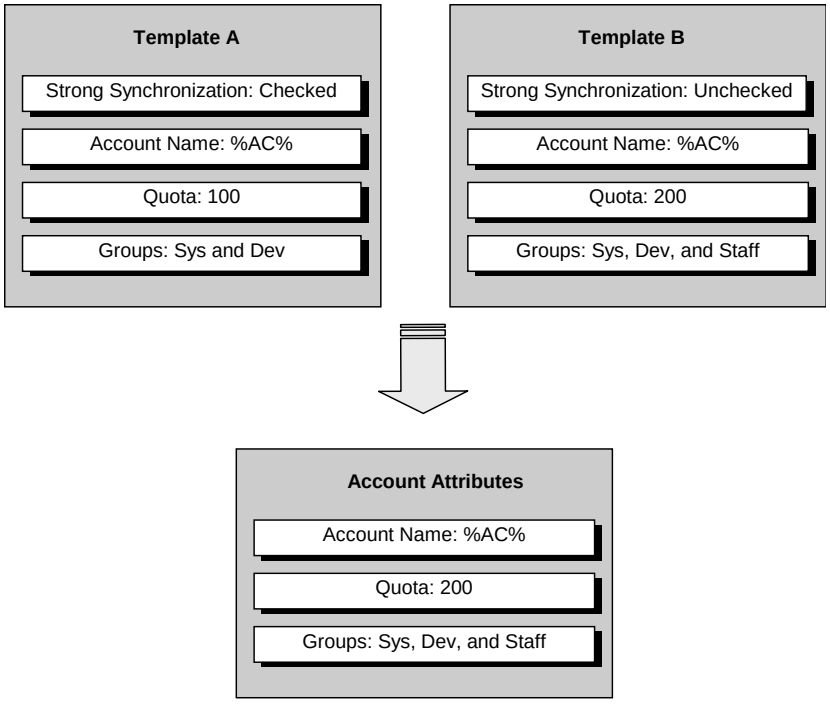
Accounts with Multiple Templates

Synchronization also depends on whether the account belongs to more than one account template. If an account has only one account template and that template uses strong synchronization, each attribute is updated to exactly match what the account template attribute value evaluates to. The result is the same as if the attribute were an initial attribute.

An account may belong to multiple Account Templates, as would be the case if a user belonged to multiple provisioning roles each of which prescribed some level of access on the same managed endpoint. When this happens, CA Identity Manager combines those account templates into one effective account template that prescribes the superset of the capabilities from the individual account templates. This account template is itself considered to use weak synchronization if all its individual account templates are weak or strong synchronization if any of the individual account templates is strong.

Note: Often you use only weak synchronization or only strong synchronization for the account templates controlling one account, depending on whether your company's roles completely define the accesses your users need. If your users do not fit into clear roles and you need the flexibility to grant additional capabilities to your user's accounts, use weak synchronization. If you can define roles to exactly specify the accesses your users need, use strong synchronization.

The following example demonstrates how multiple account templates are combined into a single effective account template. In this example, one account template is marked for weak synchronization and the other for strong synchronization. Therefore, the effective account template created by combining the two account templates is treated as a strong synchronization account template. The integer Quota attribute takes on the larger value from the two account templates, and the multivalued Groups attribute takes on the union of values from the two polices.



Attributes Only for New Accounts

In an account template, certain attributes are only applied when creating the account. For example, the Password attribute is a rule expression that defines the password for new accounts. This rule expression never updates the password of an account. Changes to the password rule expression only affect accounts that are created after the rule expression was set.

Similarly, a template rule expression for a read-only account attribute affects only accounts that are created after the rule expression was set. Changing it has no effect on existing accounts.

Account Synchronization

Account synchronization updates capability attributes to ensure that the account has the capabilities specified by the account templates.This synchronization does not affect the account's initial attributes.

To synchronize capability attribute changes in an account template with its accounts, use one of the synchronization menu options discussed in this section.

Check Account Synchronization

You can check account synchronization for endpoints and users. This action returns a list of accounts that do not comply with account templates. The following table describes what happens when you check the synchronization of accounts on each object:

Object	Synchronizes
Endpoint	Account attributes for each account on an endpoint and ensures they comply with associated account templates.
Global user	Account attributes for each of a user's accounts and ensures they comply with associated account templates.

Synchronize Accounts

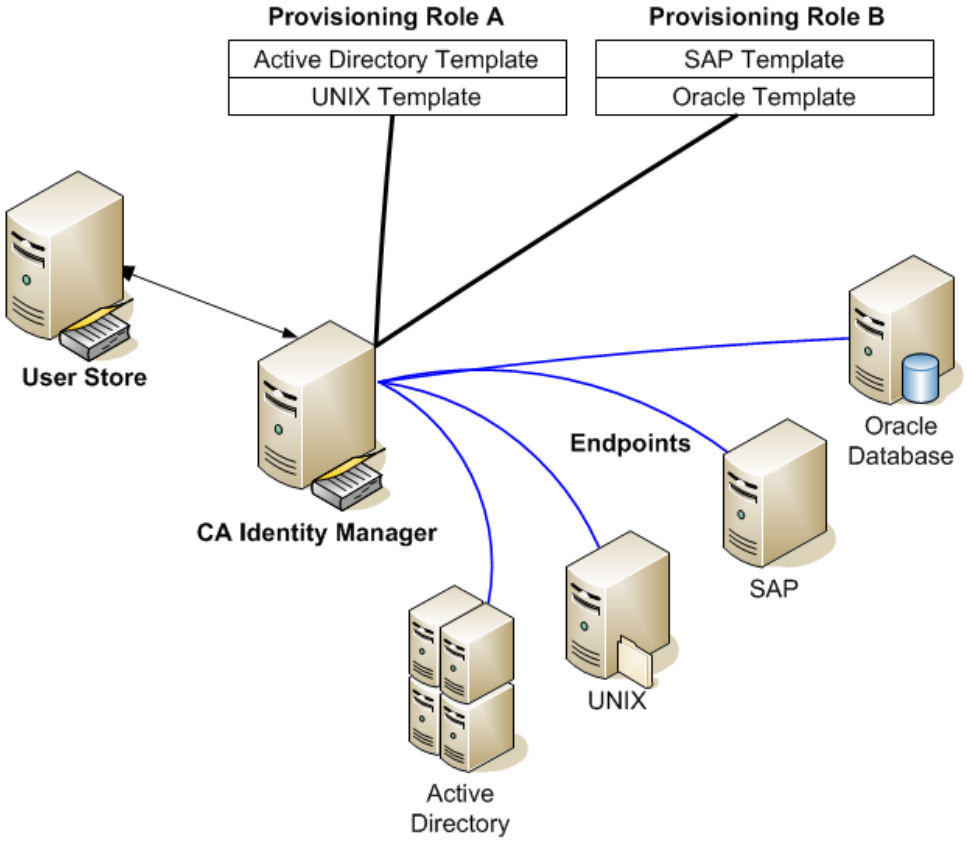
You can perform account synchronization on endpoints, users, and account templates. The following table lists the effect of account synchronization on each object:

Object	Synchronizes
Endpoint	Each account on an endpoint with its associated account templates.
Global user	Each account of a global user with each account template associated to it.

Synchronizing Users, Accounts, and Roles

The integration of multiple endpoints and accounts into a single user management system can result in a loss of synchronization. The provisioning roles or account templates that are assigned to a user can differ from the actual accounts that exist for that user.

For example, consider a situation with two provisioning roles, one with Active Directory and UNIX account templates and another role with SAP and Oracle templates. The user john_smith has Provisioning Role A, which contains Active Directory and UNIX account templates, but that user only has an Active Directory account. Possibly the UNIX account template was added to the role after it was assigned to the user. Therefore, the administrator synchronizes the user with the current role definition.



The following situations are other reasons why users lose synchronization with provisioning roles or account templates:

- Earlier attempts to create the necessary accounts failed due to hardware or software problems in your network, causing missing accounts.
- Provisioning roles and account templates change, creating extra or missing accounts.

- Accounts were assigned to account templates after they were created, so accounts exist, but they are not synchronized with their account templates.
- The creation of a new account is delayed because the account was specified to be created later.
- A new endpoint was acquired. During exploration and correlation, the Provisioning Server did not assign provisioning roles to the users automatically. You update the role to indicate the users who require accounts on the endpoint. Any account that was correlated to a user is listed as an extra account when the user is synchronized.
- An existing account was assigned to a user by copying the account to the user.
- An account was created for a user other than by assigning the user to a role. For example, you copied a user to an account template that is not in a provisioning role for that user. The account is listed as an extra account or as an account with an extra account template. If you copy the user to an endpoint to create an account using the default account template, that account could be an extra account.

The following sections explain how to perform the three types of synchronization:

1. Synchronize users with roles (see page 163).
2. Synchronize user with account templates (see page 163).
3. Synchronize endpoint account wiht account templates (see page 165).

Synchronize Users with Roles

This task creates, updates, or deletes accounts so they comply with the provisioning roles assigned to a user. For example, administrators use native tools on an endpoint to add or delete accounts, but you have not reexplored that endpoint to update the provisioning directory. Therefore, users have extra or missing accounts. This task also ensures that each account belongs to the correct account templates.

Follow these steps:

1. Log in to the User Console.
2. Select Users, Synchronization, Check Role Synchronization.
3. Select a user.

   A screen appears showing the expected accounts, extra accounts, and missing accounts.
4. Click Synchronize to make the accounts match the template in this role.

   a. You can select a checkbox to create the account on the endpoint. If more than one account template for the user prescribes the same account, the account is created by merging all relevant account templates.

      This account is assigned to those account templates, which are currently not synchronized with the account.

   b. You can select a checkbox to delete extra accounts. However, users can have legitimate reasons for having these accounts. If that is the case, leave this option unchecked.

      On certain endpoints, the account deletion function is disabled; therefore, the account is not deleted.

Synchronize User with Account Templates

This task synchronizes the attributes for endpoint accounts with the associated account templates for a user. However, full synchronization depends on these factors:

- Full synchronization of the account occurs in two situations. An account template uses strong synchronization (see page 166) or two or more account templates were added to an account.
- If an account template uses weak synchronization (see page 166), this task starts an account synchronization involving only this template. If the account was previously out of account synchronization with other account templates before this update, it could still be out of account synchronization afterwards.

Follow these steps:

1. Log in to the User Console.
2. Select Users, Synchronization, Check Account Template Synchronization.
3. Select a user.

   A screen appears showing the expected accounts, extra accounts, and missing accounts.
4. Click Synchronize to make the accounts match the template.

   a. You can select a checkbox to create the account on the endpoint. If more than one account template for the user prescribes the same account, the account is created by merging relevant account templates.

      This account is assigned to the account templates that are not synchronized with the account. Account synchronization is not necessary on newly created accounts.

   b. You can select a checkbox to delete extra accounts. However, users can have legitimate reasons for having these accounts. If that is the case, leave this option unchecked.

      On certain endpoints, the account deletion function is disabled; therefore, the account is not deleted.

Synchronize Endpoint Accounts with Account Templates

This task synchronizes an endpoint account after modification of an associated account template. For example, perhaps an Active Directory account has no groups, but the associated account template is defined to include groups.

Follow these steps:

1. Log in to the User Console.
2. Select Endpoints, Manage Endpoints, Check Endpoint Account Synchronization.
3. Select an endpoint.

   A screen appears showing accounts on that endpoint, associated account templates, and which attributes are not synchronized.
4. Click Synchronize to make the attributes for those accounts match what is defined in the account template.

   Changes that you make to account templates affect existing accounts as follows:

   - If you change the value of a capability attribute, the corresponding account attribute is updated to be synchronized with the account template attribute value. See the description of weak and strong synchronization.

- Certain account attributes are designated by the connector as not being updated on account template changes. Examples include certain attributes that the endpoint type allows to be set only during account creation, and the Password attribute.

Which Attributes are Updated

When you change capability attributes in an account template, the corresponding attribute on the accounts change. This change has an impact on the attributes for the account. The impact is based on the following factors:

- Whether the account template is defined to use weak or strong synchronization.
- Whether the account belongs to multiple account templates.

Weak Synchronization

Weak synchronization ensures that users have the minimum capability attributes for their accounts. Weak synchronization is the default in most endpoint types. If you update a template that uses weak synchronization, CA Identity Manager updates capability attributes as follows:

- If a number field is updated in an account template and the new number is greater than the number in the account, CA Identity Manager changes the value in the account to match the new number.
- If a check box was not selected in an account template and you subsequently select it, CA Identity Manager updates the check box on any account where the check box is not selected.
- If a list is changed in an account template, CA Identity Manager updates all accounts to include any value from the new list that was not included in the account's list of values.

If an account belongs to other account templates (whether those templates use weak or strong synchronization), CA Identity Manager consults only the template that is changing. This action is more efficient than checking every account template. Because weak synchronization only adds capabilities to accounts, it generally is not necessary to consult those other account templates.

Note: When propagating from a weak synchronization account template, changes that would remove or lower capabilities could leave some accounts unsynchronized. Remember that with weak synchronization, capabilities are never removed or lowered. Without consulting other templates for an account, the propagation does not consider if weak synchronization is sufficient.

In this situation, use Synchronize Users with Account Templates to synchronize the account with its account templates.

Strong Synchronization

Strong synchronization ensures that accounts have the exact account attributes that are specified in the account template.

For example, suppose that you add a group to an existing UNIX account template. Originally, the account template made accounts members of the Staff group. Now, you want to make the accounts members of both the Staff and System groups. All accounts that are associated with the account template are considered synchronized when each account is a member of the Staff and System groups (and no other groups). Any account not in the Staff group is added to both groups.

Some other factors to consider include the following situations:

- If the account template uses strong synchronization, any account belonging to groups, other than Staff and System, are removed from those extra groups.
- If the account template uses weak synchronization, the accounts are added to the Staff and System groups. Any account that has additional groups that are defined to it remains a member of these groups.

Note: Synchronize accounts with their templates regularly to ensure that the accounts stay synchronized with their account templates.

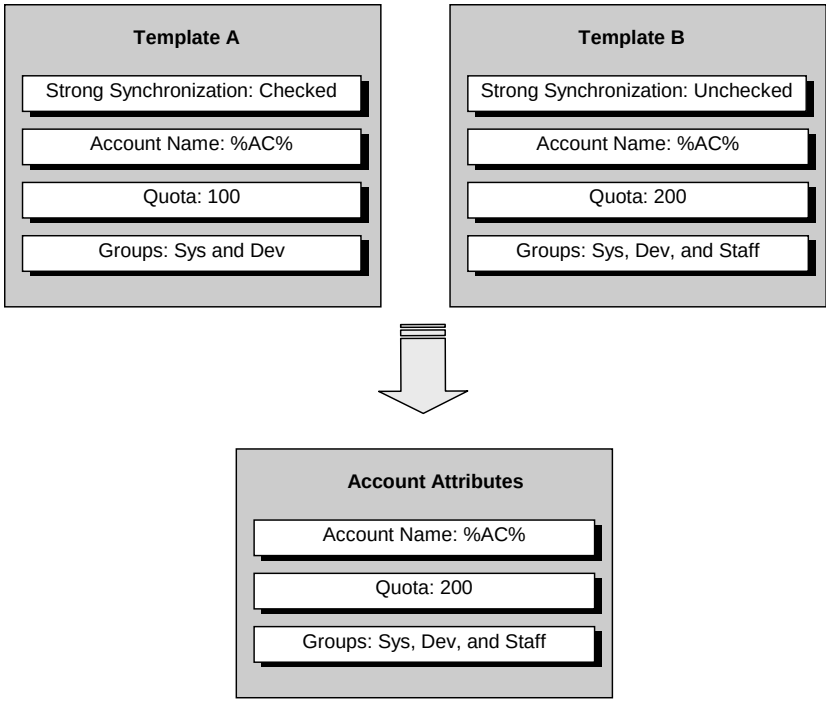
Accounts with Multiple Templates

Synchronization also depends on whether the account belongs to more than one account template. If an account has only one account template and that template uses strong synchronization, each attribute is updated to exactly match what the account template attribute value evaluates to. The result is the same as if the attribute were an initial attribute.

An account may belong to multiple Account Templates, as would be the case if a user belonged to multiple provisioning roles each of which prescribed some level of access on the same managed endpoint. When this happens, CA Identity Manager combines those account templates into one effective account template that prescribes the superset of the capabilities from the individual account templates. This account template is itself considered to use weak synchronization if all its individual account templates are weak or strong synchronization if any of the individual account templates is strong.

Note: Often you use only weak synchronization or only strong synchronization for the account templates controlling one account, depending on whether your company's roles completely define the accesses your users need. If your users do not fit into clear roles and you need the flexibility to grant additional capabilities to your user's accounts, use weak synchronization. If you can define roles to exactly specify the accesses your users need, use strong synchronization.

The following example demonstrates how multiple account templates are combined into a single effective account template. In this example, one account template is marked for weak synchronization and the other for strong synchronization. Therefore, the effective account template created by combining the two account templates is treated as a strong synchronization account template. The integer Quota attribute takes on the larger value from the two account templates, and the multivalued Groups attribute takes on the union of values from the two polices.



Attributes Only for New Accounts

In an account template, certain attributes are only applied when creating the account. For example, the Password attribute is a rule expression that defines the password for new accounts. This rule expression never updates the password of an account. Changes to the password rule expression only affect accounts that are created after the rule expression was set.

Similarly, a template rule expression for a read-only account attribute affects only accounts that are created after the rule expression was set. Changing it has no effect on existing accounts.

Chapter 11: Workflow

This section contains the following topics:

Workflow Overview (see page 253)
Use Workflow Control - Template Method (see page 256)
How to Use the WorkPoint Method (see page 275)
Workpoint Job View (see page 306)
Policy-Based Workflow (see page 307)
Online Requests (see page 323)
Workflow Action Buttons (see page 326)
Work Lists and Work Items (see page 331)

Workflow Overview

The CA Identity Manager workflow feature allows a CA Identity Manager task to be controlled by a workflow process. A *workflow process* is one or more steps that must be performed before CA Identity Manager can complete a task that is under workflow control. A *job* is a runtime instance of a workflow process.

WorkPoint Designer is software from Workpoint LLC, a subsidiary of Planet Group, Inc., that is integrated with CA Identity Manager. WorkPoint Designer lets you manage workflow processes and workflow jobs.

A workflow process consists of one or more steps, called *activities*, that must be performed in order to accomplish some business task, such as creating or modifying an employee user account. Typically, a workflow process includes one or more manual activities which require an authorized user, or participant, to approve or reject the task.

A *participant* is a person who is authorized to perform a workflow activity. In CA Identity Manager, participants are also called *approvers*, since they must approve or reject the task under workflow control. A *participant resolver* is a rule or set of criteria for determining who the participants are.

The individual manual activities in a workflow are called *work items* in CA Identity Manager.

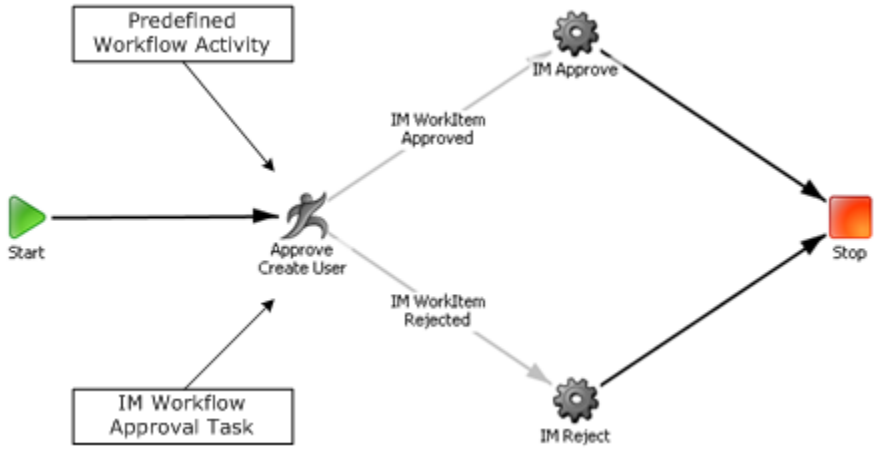
A *work list* is a workflow-generated list of approval tasks, or *work items*, that appears in the User Console of the participant authorized to approve the task.

WorkPoint Process Diagram

In general, CA Identity Manager tasks trigger CA Identity Manager events. For example, to create a user, an administrator selects a Create User task. When this task is initiated, the event CreateUserEvent is triggered.

The following diagram is an example of a simple workflow process (the predefined process CreateUserApproveProcess) as it appears in WorkPoint Designer. This process is invoked by a CreateUserEvent if the Create User task is under workflow control.

The process includes a manual activity, Approve Create User, which corresponds to a CA Identity Manager workflow approval task of the same name. The participant must approve or reject the approval task, typically by clicking a button in the User Console, before the task under workflow control can run to completion.



Workflow and Email Notification

When you initiate a task, CA Identity Manager submits the task for processing. When the task finishes, it displays an acknowledgement message as follows:

```
Confirmation:  Task completed.
```

However, if the task is under workflow control and it requires approval, the message is as follows:

```
Alert:  Task pending.
```

In addition to on-screen messages, CA Identity Manager can automatically generate email notifications when:

- An event or task requiring approval or rejection by a workflow approver is pending.
- An approver approves an event or task.

- An approver rejects an event or task.
- An event or task is completed.

More Information:

Email Notifications (see page 345)

WorkPoint Documentation

For general information about workflow concepts and for instructions about workflow processes, activities, and jobs in WorkPoint Designer, see the WorkPoint documentation. To do so, open the following HTML page:

admin_tools\WorkPoint\docs\designer\default.htm

admin_tools

Defines the installation directory of the CA Identity Manager administrative tools. The default installation directory is as follows:

- **Windows:** C:\Program Files\CA\Identity Manager\IAM Suite\Identity Manager\tools
- **UNIX:** /opt/CA/IdentityManager/IAM_Suite/Identity_Manager/tools

Note: Workpoint is a third-party product installed with CA Identity Manager. CA Identity Manager supports a subset of functionality in WorkPoint. For example, CA Identity Manager does not support the WpConsole. However, the WorkPoint documentation describes all functionality in the product. Portions of the Workpoint documentation do not apply to CA Identity Manager users.

Workflow Control Methods

CA Identity Manager provides two methods of placing tasks under workflow control.

Template Method

CA Identity Manager includes workflow process templates you can use to place tasks under workflow control. The *template method* lets you use these templates to configure and manage workflow entirely from within the User Console. Introduced in CA Identity Manager r12, these generic process templates can be configured to control most CA Identity Manager tasks and events.

The template method enables the following new features:

- Both task-level and event-level workflow control
- Simplified participant resolver configuration for workflow approvers

- Work item delegation, which covers out-of-office scenarios by letting a user delegate another user to approve work items
- Work item reassignment, which lets a running task be reassigned to another user for approval

WorkPoint Method

CA Identity Manager also includes a set of predefined workflow processes with default event mappings that correspond to specific CA Identity Manager tasks. The *WorkPoint method* requires you to configure and customize these processes from within WorkPoint Designer. These predefined processes are compatible with releases prior to CA Identity Manager r12.

The WorkPoint method also enables the following new features:

- Both task-level and event-level workflow control
- Work item delegation, which covers out-of-office scenarios by letting a user delegate another user to approve work items
- Work item reassignment, which lets a running task be reassigned to another user for approval

Note: For greater flexibility and ease of use, CA recommends that you use the template method whenever possible.

More Information:

Use Workflow Control - Template Method (see page 256)

Use Workflow Control - Template Method

Introduced in CA Identity Manager r12, the template method allows you to configure workflow process templates in the User Console, without having to open WorkPoint Designer.

Template method advantages are:

- Multi-stage process templates can address most workflow needs without requiring customization within WorkPoint Designer.
- Templates support both task-level and event-level workflow control.
- The same workflow process template can be configured for use with many different tasks while the process design itself remains unchanged.
- Participant resolvers can be specified easily in the User Console.
- Work item delegation can be performed in the User Console.

Prerequisite: Enable Workflow

You must have workflow enabled before you can use it to control CA Identity Manager tasks. By default, workflow is disabled.

Follow these steps:

1. In the Management Console, select an Environment.
2. Go to Advanced Settings, Workflow.
3. Select the Enabled check box, and click Save.

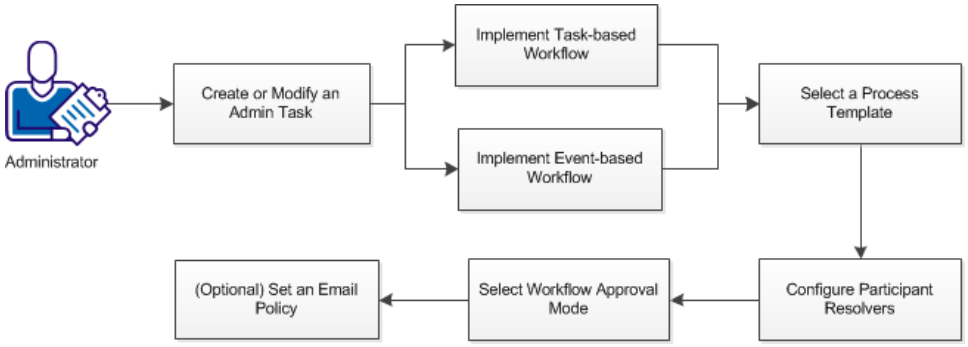
   Note: The Event Mappings on this screen apply only if you use the WorkPoint method to configure workflow. If you use the template method (recommended), do not map events to processes using this Management Console.
4. Restart the application server.
5. (Optional) Configure the WorkPoint Administrative Tools (see page 277).

More Information:

Map a Process to an Event Globally (see page 284)
Workflow Control Methods (see page 255)

Place Admin Tasks under Workflow Control - Template Method

As an administrator, you can place admin tasks under workflow control using the template method.



Follow these steps:

1. In the User Console, select Roles and Tasks, Admin Tasks, Modify (or Create) Admin Tasks.
2. Search for the task you want under workflow control, and click Select.
3. Do *one* of the following:
   - Implement task-level workflow (see page 258) by clicking the Workflow Process edit button on the Profile tab.
   - Implement event-level workflow (see page 261) by selecting one or more events on the Events tab.
4. Select a process template (see page 264).
5. Configure participant resolvers (see page 268).
6. Select workflow approval mode.
7. (Optional) Set an email policy for the workflow process (see page 273).

   Note: If you select the EscalationApproval process, a field named Approval Timeout (min) is displayed. This field is specified in minutes and cannot be empty. By default, the time is set to 60 minutes.

After workflow control is configured, a user with the appropriate role performs the admin task, and the designated workflow participant approves or rejects the task or event.

Task or Event-Based Workflow

CA Identity Manager lets you associate workflow processes with either tasks or events. This means that participants can approve or reject either an entire CA Identity Manager task, or a specific event within a task.

For example, some CA Identity Manager tasks generate several events, and an approver may need to review all events before deciding to approve or reject a request. This is possible under task-level workflow. When a workflow process is associated with a specific event within a task, an approver cannot see the overall task context within which a request is made.

Task-Level Workflow

Task-level workflow lets approvers review all events before deciding to approve or reject a request. Task-level workflow occurs before any task activity is processed. No events or nested tasks execute before the workflow process job begins.

If task-level workflow is rejected, no part of the task is executed.

Note: A task that is configured for task-level workflow control can also be configured for event-level workflow control simultaneously. Concurrent event-level workflow may be applied globally or for a specific task.

More Information

Event-Level Workflow (see page 261)
Global Process to Event Mapping (see page 282)

Task-Level Process Attribute

Workflow processes that are compatible with task-level workflow all have a special attribute defined within WorkPoint Designer. This process level user data attribute, called TASK_LEVEL, is set to true by default in the following process templates:

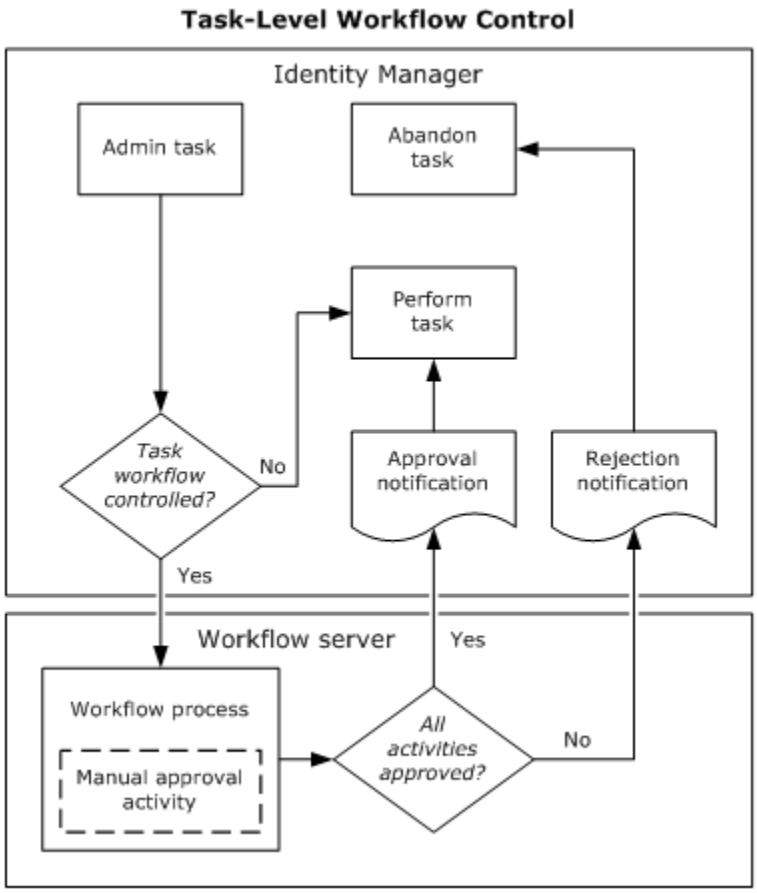
- SingleStepApproval
- TwoStageApprovalProcess
- EscalationApproval

When you select an admin task for task-level workflow, only these process templates are available.

Note: Although TASK_LEVEL is set to true, the process templates can still be used for event-level workflow. Do not change this TASK_LEVEL attribute value.

Task-Level Control Diagram

The following diagram illustrates the interaction between CA Identity Manager and the workflow server when a typical task-level workflow process is initiated:



More Information:

Event-Level Control Diagram (see page 262)

How to Configure Task-Level Workflow

Task-level workflow occurs before any task activity is processed. No events or nested tasks execute before the workflow process job begins.

To configure non-policy based task-level workflow

1. In the User Console, select Roles and Tasks, Admin Tasks, Modify (or Create) Admin Tasks.

   A Select Admin Task screen appears.

2. Search for the task you want under workflow control, and click Select.

   A Modify (or Create) Admin Task screen appears.

3. On the Profile tab, verify that Enable Workflow is checked.

4. On the Profile tab, click the Workflow Process button.

   The Task Level Workflow Configuration tab appears.

5. Select one of the following process templates from the Workflow Process list:

   - SingleStepApprovalProcess
   - TwoStageApprovalProcess
   - EscalationApprovalProcess

   The Task Level Workflow Configuration tab expands.

6. Configure participant resolvers as required by the process template.

   The participant requests are added to the process.

7. Click OK.

   CA Identity Manager saves your task-level workflow configuration.

8. Click Submit.

   CA Identity Manager processes the task modification.

Note: To configure policy based task-level workflow see the Policy-Based Workflow (see page 307) section.

Event-Level Workflow

An event can be mapped to a workflow process. When an event that is mapped to a workflow process is triggered, the workflow process begins. The task that triggered the event is placed in a pending state and is considered under workflow control.

A workflow process may require a participant to approve or reject an event or task before the process can be complete. A task that requires manual workflow approval by a participant takes longer to complete than a task not under workflow control.

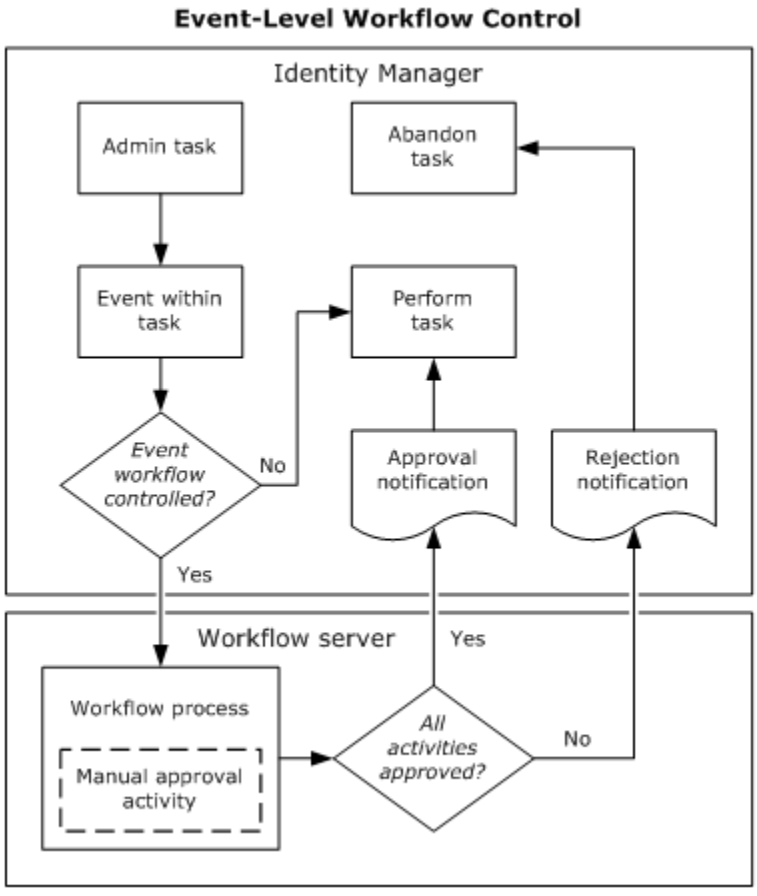
After all activities in a workflow process have been carried out, the event mapped to the workflow process is released from workflow control. When all events triggered by a given task are released from workflow control, the workflow-controlled task is complete.

While the task is under workflow control, the contents of the task screens are saved in the task persistence database. The workflow job state (workflow-relevant data) is stored in the WorkPoint database.

Note: The Events tab lists the events that are generated by each tab in a task. After adding a new tab to a task, you must submit and then reopen the task using Modify Admin Task before the new events are displayed on the Events tab.

Event-Level Control Diagram

The following diagram illustrates the interaction between CA Identity Manager and the workflow server when a typical event-level workflow process is initiated:



More Information:

Task-Level Control Diagram (see page 260)

How to Configure Event-Level Workflow

Event-level workflow begins when an event that is mapped to a workflow process is triggered. The task that triggered the event is placed in a pending state until the participant approves or rejects the task.

To configure non-policy based event-level workflow

1. In the User Console, select Roles and Tasks, Admin Tasks, Modify (or Create) Admin Task.

   A Select Admin Task screen appears.

2. Search for the task you want under workflow control, and click Select.

   A Modify (or Create) Admin Task screen appears.

3. On the Profile tab, verify that Enable Workflow is checked.

4. On the Events tab, select an event to map to a process template.

   The workflow mapping screen appears.

5. Select one of the following process templates from the Workflow Process list:

   - SingleStepApproval
   - TwoStageApprovalProcess
   - EscalationApprovalProcess

   The workflow mapping screen expands.

6. Configure participant resolvers as required by the process template.

   The participant requests are added to the process.

7. Click OK.

   CA Identity Manager saves your event-level workflow configuration.

8. Repeat steps 3 - 6 for each event you want under workflow control.

9. Click Submit.

   CA Identity Manager processes the task modification.

To configure policy-based event level workflow, see the Policy-Based Workflow (see page 307)section.

Note: The Workflow Process list includes processes for use with both the template method and the WorkPoint method:

- When a template method process is selected (either SingleStepApproval, TwoStageApprovalProcess, or EscalationApproval), the page expands to enable participant resolver configuration.
- When a WorkPoint method process is selected, the page does not expand. Participant resolvers are configured in WorkPoint Designer.

Types of Process Templates

A workflow process template has the following characteristics:

- Defined in WorkPoint Designer.
- Has manual activities, which correspond to CA Identity Manager approval tasks.
- Includes special attributes which contain information to identify participants (also called approvers).

Workflow process templates include no information for selecting specific participants. This is provided by CA Identity Manager after a user configures a workflow and its participant resolvers. This information is mapped to an event for event-level workflow control, and to a task for task-level workflow control.

When using the template method, all workflow and participant configuration is done within the User Console.

There are three process templates for use with the template method:

- SingleStepApprovalProcess
- TwoStageApprovalProcess
- EscalationApprovalProcess

How a Process Template Works

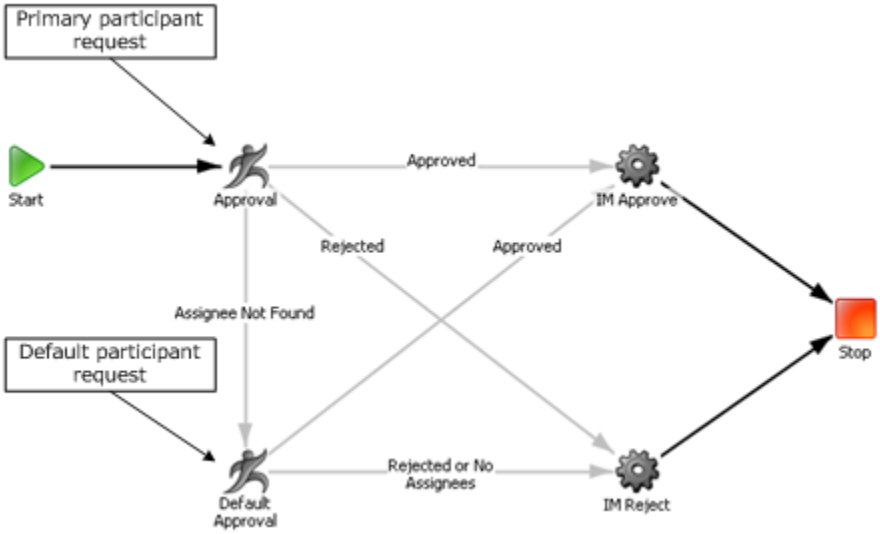
A workflow process template contains a number of places where it requests lists of participants. When the template is mapped to a CA Identity Manager task or event, configure participant resolvers for these lists.

At runtime, as shown in the following figure, CA Identity Manager provides the participant lists to the workflow process based on your configured information:

Single Stage Template Diagram

The following diagram illustrates the SingleStageApproval process template as it appears in WorkPoint Designer. The process template includes two manual activities:

- An approval node for the primary participant. If this user approves or rejects the request, the process runs to completion.
- An approval node for a default participant. This user can approve or reject the request if the primary participant is not found.

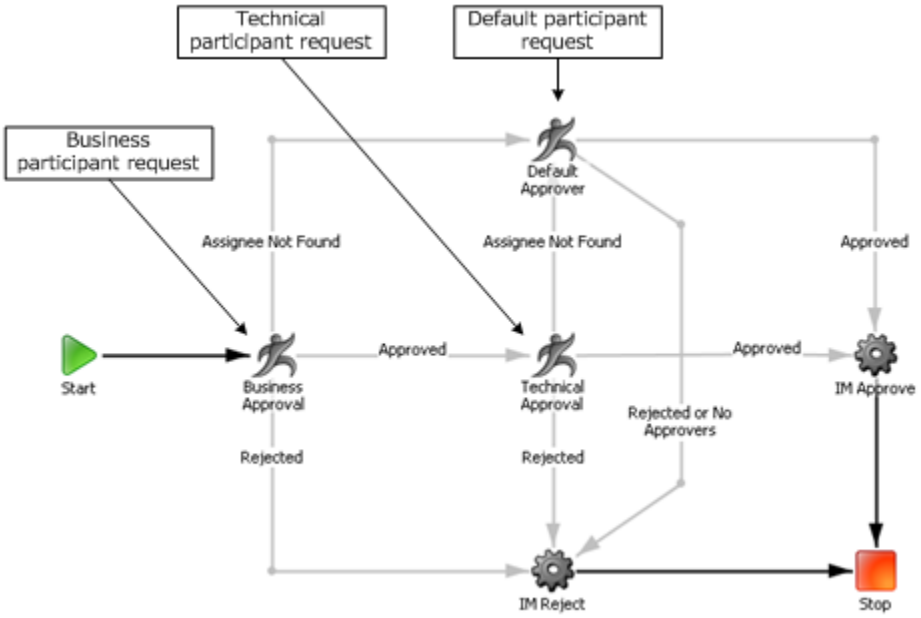


Two Stage Template Diagram

The following diagram illustrates the TwoStageApproval process template as it appears in WorkPoint Designer. The TwoStageApproval process template includes three manual activities:

- An approval node for the business participant. If this user approves the request, the process proceeds to the technical approver and, if this user rejects the request, the process runs to completion.

- An approval node for the technical participant. If this user approves or rejects the request, the process runs to completion.
- An approval node for a default participant. This user can approve or reject the request if either the business or technical participant is not found.

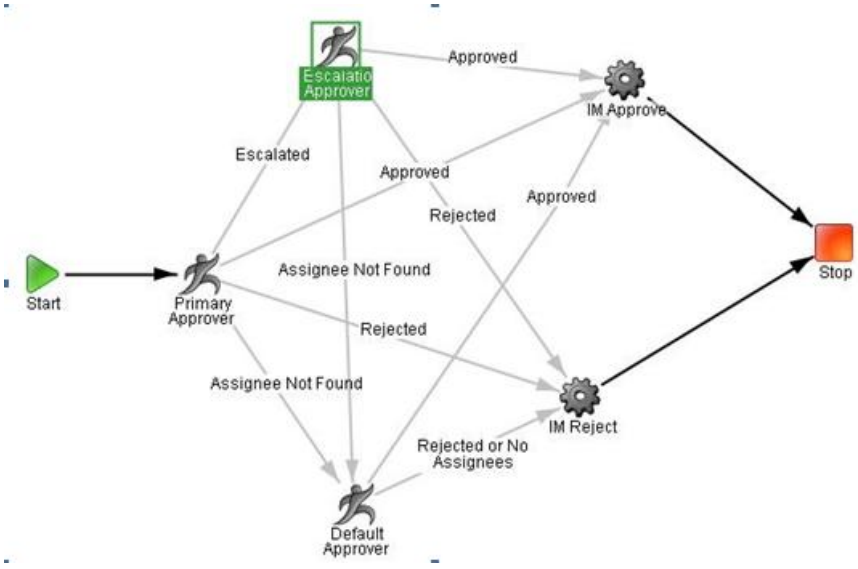


Escalation Approval Template Diagram

The following diagram illustrates the EscalationApproval process template as it appears in WorkPoint Designer. The process template includes the following manual activities:

- An approval node for the primary participant. If this user approves or rejects the request, the process runs to completion.
- An approval node for a default participant. This user can approve or reject the request if the primary participant is not found.

- A timed transition approval node from the primary approver to the escalation approver. This user can approve or reject the request if the primary participant is found but does not respond in the configured time out period.



Note: To add the timeout option to an existing process, add the user data field PARTICIPANT_TIMEOUT to the activity node and add 'Escalated' Transition to the node where you need the work item to be escalated.

Using the Escalation Approval Template

To use the Escalation Approval Template, import the following ZIP file when upgrading from r12.5 to 12.6.5:

`12.5to12.5SPUpgradeWFScripts.zip`

The ZIP file is located in the following default locations:

- Windows: C:\Program Files\CA\Identity Manager\IAM Suite\Identity Manager\tools\WorkflowScripts
- UNIX: /opt/CA/IdentityManager/IAM_Suite/Identity_Manager/tools/WorkflowScripts

Types of Participant Resolvers

For the template method, there are seven types of participant resolvers:

Approval Task Role Members

Specifies the participants are members of roles that grant access to the approval task.

User List

Specifies the participants are a specified list of users.

Group Members

Specifies the participants are members of a specified list of groups.

Admin Role Members

Specifies the participants are members of a specified list of admin roles.

Admin Task Members

Specifies the participants are members of admin roles associated with a specified list of admin tasks.

Dynamic Resolver

Specifies the participants are dynamically selected depending on the task or event being approved.

Null Resolver

Resolves to a null list with no users.

Custom

Specifies the participants are determined by a custom participant resolver.

Business Owner Resolver

Specifies the list of participants configured in the Catalog Rule as Business Owners of an Entity.

Admin Owner Resolver

Specifies the list of participants configured in the Catalog Rule as Admin Owners of an Entity.

Manager Resolver

Specifies the participant that is set as Manager of the User Object.

Approval Task Role Members

This resolver assigns the activity to all members of all CA Identity Manager roles that grant access to the approval task. This resolver requires no further configuration.

List of Users

This resolver assigns the work item to a specified list of users.

Scoping is not enforced. Any user may be added to or removed from the list by anyone who has access to the workflow configuration screen.

This resolver has the following validation rules:

- At least one user name must be provided.
- The user names must be those of a currently existing users.

Group Members

This resolver assigns the work item to all members of all groups specified in the group list.

Evaluation of who the group members are is performed at the time the work item is created, not at the time the participant resolver is specified.

Scoping is not enforced. Any group may be added to or removed from the list by anyone who has access to the workflow configuration screen.

This resolver has the following validation rules:

- At least one group must be specified
- The group names must be those of currently existing groups

Admin Role Members

This resolver assigns the work item to all members of the admin roles specified in the admin role list.

Evaluation of who the role members are is performed at the time the work item is created, not at the time the participant resolver is specified.

Scoping is not enforced. Any role may be added to or removed from the list by anyone who has access to the workflow configuration screen.

This resolver has the following validation rules:

- At least one admin role must be specified.
- The admin role names must be those of currently existing admin roles.

Admin Task Members

This resolver assigns the work item to all members of all admin roles associated with the admin tasks specified in the admin task list.

Scoping is not enforced. Any task may be added to or removed from the list by anyone who has access to the workflow configuration screen.

Evaluation of who the role members are and what roles are present on the tasks is performed at the time the work item is created, not at the time the participant resolver is specified.

This resolver has the following validation rules:

- At least one admin task must be specified.
- The admin task names must be those of currently existing admin tasks.

Dynamic Resolver

This resolver returns a list of users according to a dynamic rule resolved at run-time. Use the following selection to set dynamic rule constraints:

Approvers

Specifies the type of user to approve this task.

Note: This only shows those objects that can contain users (or approvers).

User or Object

Specifies the user or object where the approvers can be found.

- Object associated with the event—The event under workflow control.
- Initiator of this task—The user who initiated the admin task.
- Primary object of this task—The object being created/modified by the task.
- Previous approver of this task—The previous approvers of this task.

User Associated with this account

Updates the User or Object Attributes field to list CA Identity Manager user attributes instead of endpoint account attributes. The resolver works off attributes at the CA Identity Manager user level. This check box applies when you select an endpoint account object, such as an Active Directory account.

Attribute

Specifies the attribute that contains the approvers.

Note: The Attribute list is sorted in alphabetical order and contains a list of unique display names. Extended attributes are excluded from the list.

Event Object Type

Specifies the type of object from the event.

Note: This appears only if "Object associated with the event" is selected.

Note: Dynamic Resolver with Create Group requires existence of the object. Group membership/administrators information can be used with dynamic/match attribute resolvers for existing groups only.

The Dynamic Resolver has been enhanced to add the previous approver to the supported object list. If the physical attribute hosting manager information is selected, the configuration routes the approval to a manager.

To configure the resolver for Manager Approval Resolver:

- Set Approvers to Users
- Select "Previous approver of this task" from User or Object drop-down list
- Set the Attribute to the physical attribute containing manager information

Matching Attribute Resolver

This resolver works on objects of type User only. A value from any object available is matched against a field on the user object. Use the following selection to set matching attribute rule constraints:

Approvers

Specifies the type of user to approve this task.

User or Object

Specifies the value that approvers will have in the attribute selected below.

Note: The value retrieved from the user or object should be an acceptable value for a search on user for the selected attribute.

- Object associated with the event—The event under workflow control.
- Initiator of this task—The user who initiated the admin task.
- Primary object of this task—The object being created/modified by the task.(Only available for task level event mapping.)
- Previous approver of this task—The previous approvers of this task.

User Associated with this account

Updates the User or Object Attributes field to list CA Identity Manager user attributes instead of endpoint account attributes. The resolver works off attributes at the CA Identity Manager user level. This checkbox applies when you select an endpoint account object, such as an Active Directory account.

Use or Object Attribute

Specifies the attribute that contains the value to use in the search for approvers.

Approver Search Attribute

Specifies the attribute that is used in the search to match the value identified above.

Note: When you set 'Approve Create User' task as a Match Attribute Resolver that works on Users, Participant Resolver, you must change the method signature for the imApprovers script in Workpoint Designer to point to the unique name for TwoStageProcessDefinition.

Null Resolver

The null resolver returns no users. Depending on how the workflow process is designed, this can cause the process to skip the approval entirely. The null resolver requires no further configuration.

Custom Participant Resolver

The custom participant resolver is a Java object that determines workflow activity participants and returns a list to CA Identity Manager, which then passes the list to the workflow engine. Typically, you write a custom participant resolver only if the standard participant policies cannot provide the list of participants that an activity requires.

Note: You create a custom participant resolver using the Participant Resolver API. For more information, see the *Programming Guide for Java*.

Set an Email Policy for a Workflow Process

You can specify an email policy for each step of the workflow process. Based on the defined email policy, an email is sent when a process reaches a corresponding step or activity. For workflow process-related email notifications, you can only select *When to Send* type *Workflow Pending Email*.

Note: For more information about email policies, see How to Create Email Notification Policies.

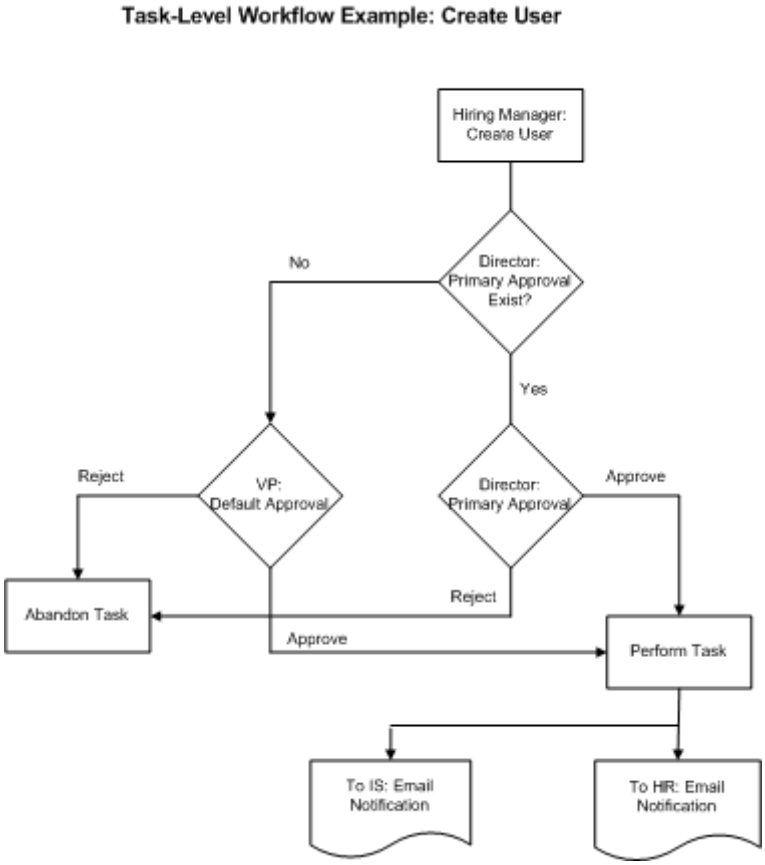
Workflow Example: Create User

A company's CA Identity Manager administrator needs to define a workflow and user roles to handle the following scenario:

- The company Sales Manager hires a new Sales Representative. The Sales Manager must be able to create a CA Identity Manager user for the new hire.
- To streamline the hiring process, the participants want to perform only a single work item to approve (or reject) the task.
- The Sales Director should be primary approver for all new hires. If the Sales Director is not found, the VP of Sales should be the default approver.
- If the new hire is approved, CA Identity Manager should send new user email notifications to both the Human Resources (HR) and Information Services (IS) departments.

Create User Control Diagram

The following diagram illustrates the logic flow for the create user scenario:



Workflow Example Implementation

To implement this example scenario, the administrator needs to perform the following tasks:

- Ensure that the task initiator is a member of the required admin role.

  The Sales Manager needs to be a member of the User Manager admin role. This role gives the Sales Manager the required authority to initiate the Create User admin task for the new hire Sales Representative.

- Enable task-level workflow for the Create User admin task.

  Task-level workflow guarantees that only one work item is generated to complete the Create User task. Because there are several individual events associated with the Create User task, event-level workflow would generate several work items, and also would be harder to configure.

- Configure the participant resolvers.

  The number of possible participant resolvers is determined by the selected workflow process template. The SingleStageApproval template includes primary and default approvers, other templates allow for more.

  Because this scenario requires only two individuals approvers, the User List participant resolver provides the simplest solution. This resolver allows individual approvers to be selected by name, rather than multiple users to be selected by role or group.

- Configure email notification.

  The Management Console allows email notification for specific tasks and events. For this scenario, task email is enabled and email notifications are sent when the Create User task completes.

  A custom email template is required to send email to the HR and IS departments with the appropriate subject line and message text.

More Information

Email Notifications (see page 345)
Place Admin Tasks under Workflow Control - Template Method (see page 257)
How to Configure Task-Level Workflow (see page 261)

How to Use the WorkPoint Method

The WorkPoint method applied to CA Identity Manager releases prior to r12. There are 14 predefined WorkPoint workflow processes that by default are mapped to specific CA Identity Manager events. You must use WorkPoint Designer to configure participant resolvers and otherwise modify workflow processes.

The WorkPoint method also requires you to use the Management Console to map a workflow process to an approval event to place the corresponding task under workflow control at a global level within the environment.

This section lists the high-level steps involved with placing admin tasks under workflow control using the WorkPoint method.

Note: For greater flexibility and ease of use, CA recommends that you use the template method whenever possible.

To use the WorkPoint method

1. Configure Workpoint Administrative Tools. (see page 277)
2. In the Management Console:
   a. Ensure workflow is enabled for your environment by selecting the Enabled check box in Advanced Settings, Workflow.

      Note: The Event Mappings on this screen apply only if you use the WorkPoint method to configure workflow. If you use the template method (recommended), do not map events to processes using this Management Console.

   b. (Optional) For global event mapping, associate one or more events to the appropriate predefined workflow process.
   c. If necessary, restart the CA Identity Manager environment.
3. In the User Console:
   a. For task-specific event mapping, associate one or more events to the appropriate predefined workflow process. (optional)
4. In WorkPoint Designer:
   a. Associate an approval task with a workflow process (optional).
   b. Configure participant resolvers with a workflow process (optional).
5. In the User Console:
   a. After workflow control is configured, the user with the appropriate role performs the admin task.
   b. The designated workflow participant approves or rejects the event.

More Information:

Mapping Processes to Events (see page 283)
Associate a Workflow Activity with an Approval Task (see page 288)
Participant Resolvers: WorkPoint Method (see page 289)

Configure WorkPoint Administrative Tools

WorkPoint Designer is software from Workpoint LLC, a subsidiary of Planet Group, Inc., that is integrated with CA Identity Manager. WorkPoint Designer lets you manage workflow processes and workflow jobs. WorkPoint Administrative Tools include WorkPoint Designer and WorkPoint Archive. In order to configure WorkPoint Administrative Tools, install the CA Identity Manager Administrative Tools. If you have not installed the CA Identity Manager Administrative Tools, you can run the installer and select the CA Identity Manager Administrative Tools option.

Note: To use the Administrative Tools for workflow, a supported JDK must be installed on the system where the Administrative Tools are installed. For a complete list of supported platforms and versions, see the CA Identity Manager Support Matrix on the CA Identity Manager support site.

The workflow client tools are located in the WorkPoint directory in the CA Identity Manager Administrative tools. The Administrative Tools are placed in the following default locations:

- **Windows:** C:\Program Files\CA\Identity Manager\IAM Suite\Identity Manager\tools
- **UNIX:** /opt/CA/IdentityManager/IAM_Suite/Identity_Manager/tools

The tools in this directory let you do the following:

- Create the workflow database schema
- Load the default workflow scripts
- Design and monitor Workflow processes and jobs

Configure WorkPoint Administrative Tool on JBoss

To configure the WorkPoint Administrative Tools on JBoss, edit the init.bat/sh and the workpoint-client.properties files.

Edit init.bat/init.sh

To edit init.bat/init.sh

1. In a text editor, edit one of the following files:
   - **Windows:**

     admin_tools\Workpoint\bin\init.bat
   - **UNIX:**

     *admin_tools/*Workpoint/bin/init.sh
2. Uncomment the EJB_CLASSPATH line in the JBoss section of the file.

   Note: Be sure that all sections for other application servers are commented.

3. Create a directory named JBoss under *admin_tools*\Workpoint\lib.
4. Copy the content of the jb*oss_home*\client directory to the *admin_tools*\Workpoint\lib\JBoss directory.

Edit workpoint-client.properties

Edit the workpoint-client.properties file based on the type of application server you selected during the CA Identity Manager installation.

To configure the workpoint-client.properties file

1. Open *admin_tools*\Workpoint\conf\ workpoint-client.properties in a text editor.

   admin_tools is the installed location of the Administrative tools. The Administrative Tools are placed in the following default locations:

   - **Windows:** C:\Program Files\CA\Identity Manager\IAM Suite\Identity Manager\tools
   - **UNIX:** /opt/CA/IdentityManager/IAM_Suite/Identity_Manager/tools
2. Locate the section titled JBOSS SETTINGS.
3. Uncomment all of the property values in that section.

   For example:

   ```
   java.naming.provider.url=localhost
   java.naming.factory.initial=org.jnp.interfaces.NamingContextFactory
   java.naming.factory.url.pkgs=org.jboss.naming
   ```

   Note: You may need to edit the java.naming.provider.url property value. For example, replace localhost with jnp://*server_name or ip*:*port*. Ensure you use the jnp port number 1099.
4. Save the file.

Configure WorkPoint Administrative Tools on WebLogic

To configure the WorkPoint Administrative Tools on WebLogic, edit the init.bat/sh and the workpoint-client.properties files.

Edit init.bat/init.sh

To edit init.bat/init.sh

1. In a text editor, edit one of the following files:
   - **Windows:**

     admin_tools\Workpoint\bin\init.bat
   - **UNIX:**

     admin_tools/Workpoint/bin/init.sh
2. Uncomment the EJB_CLASSPATH in the WebLogic section of the file:

   Note: Be sure that all sections for other application servers are commented.
3. Copy the wlclient.jar file from *weblogic_home*\server\lib to the following location:

   admin_tools\Workpoint\lib\

Edit workpoint-client.properties

Edit the workpoint-client.properties file based on the type of application server you selected during the CA Identity Manager installation.

To configure the workpoint-client.properties file

1. Open *admin_tools*\Workpoint\conf\ workpoint-client.properties in a text editor.
2. Locate the WebLogic section of the file.
3. Uncomment all property values in that section.
4. Save the file.

   Note: The java.naming.provider.url property must point to the fully-qualified domain name and WebLogic port number of the system on which you installed the CA Identity Manager Server.

Configure WorkPoint Administrative Tools on WebSphere

To configure the WorkPoint Administrative Tools on WebSphere, edit the init.bat/sh and the workpoint-client.properties files.

Edit init.bat/init.sh

To edit init.bat/init.sh

1. In a text editor, edit one of the following files:
   - **Windows:**

     admin_tools\Workpoint\bin\init.bat
   - **UNIX:**

     admin_tools/Workpoint/bin/init.sh
2. Uncomment the IBM WebSphere section.

   Note: Do not comment the WP_CLASSPATH entry in the COMMON WP_CLASSPATH section.
3. Be sure that all sections for other application servers are commented.
4. If necessary, replace the values for JAVA_HOME and WAS_HOME with the appropriate paths for your environment.

Edit workpoint-client.properties

Edit the workpoint-client.properties file based on the type of application server you selected during the CA Identity Manager installation.

To configure the workpoint-client.properties file

1. Open *admin_tools*\Workpoint\conf\ workpoint-client.properties in a text editor.

   admin_tools is the installed location of the Administrative tools. The Administrative Tools are placed in the following default locations:
   - **Windows:** C:\Program Files\CA\Identity Manager\IAM Suite\Identity Manager\tools
   - **UNIX:** /opt/CA/IdentityManager/IAM_Suite/Identity_Manager/tools
2. Locate the section titled IBM WEBSPHERE SETTINGS.
3. Uncomment all of the property values in that section.

   For example:
   `java.naming.factory.initial=com.ibm.websphere.naming.WsnInitialContextFactory`
   `java.naming.provider.url=iiop://localhost:`*`bootstrap_port`*

   Note: The bootstrap port number must match the port number specified in the WebSphere Administrative Console. To locate the correct port number, go to Server, Endpoints, Bootstrap server address.

4. Update BOOTSTRAP_ADDRESS port for the WebSphere profile as follows:
   a. In the WebSphere Administrative Console, navigate to Application Servers, server_name, Communications.
   b. Expand Ports.
   c. Edit the workpoint-client.properties file under iam_im.ear/config.
   d. Change the default port 2809 in the WebSphere section to the profile's port for the BOOTSTRAP_ADDRESS.
5. Save the file.

Starting WorkPoint Designer

To start WorkPoint Designer, run the following file:

- **Windows:** *admin_tools*\WorkPoint\bin\Designer.bat
- **UNIX:** *admin_tools*/WorkPoint/bin/Designer.sh

where *admin_tools* is the installation directory of the CA Identity Manager administrative tools. The Administrative Tools are placed in the following default locations:

- **Windows:** C:\Program Files\CA\Identity Manager\IAM Suite\Identity Manager\tools
- **UNIX:** /opt/CA/IdentityManager/IAM_Suite/Identity_Manager/tools

Note: You must have workflow components installed and configured before you can run WorkPoint Designer. For instructions, see the "Configure WorkPoint Administrative Tools" section for your application server.

More Information:

Configure WorkPoint Administrative Tool on JBoss (see page 277)
Configure WorkPoint Administrative Tools on WebLogic (see page 278)
Configure WorkPoint Administrative Tools on WebSphere (see page 279)

WorkPoint Processes

CA Identity Manager includes a number of workflow processes that are predefined in WorkPoint Designer. You can use the predefined processes with their default event mappings, map the workflow processes to other events, modify workflow processes by adding or removing activities, and create new workflow processes.

Global Process to Event Mapping

The mapping of a workflow process to an event at a global level can be a non policy-based or policy-based.

For more information on how to map an event to a workflow process using policy-based workflow, see Global Event Policy-Based Workflow Mapping.

This table shows the default global workflow process and event mappings that are specified in the Management Console.

Important! These are global mappings. The mapped workflow process executes whenever the corresponding event is generated by any task in the environment.

Workflow Process	Mapped Event
CertifyRoleApproveProcess	CertifyRoleEvent
CreateGroupApproveProcess	CreateGroupEvent
CreateOrganizationApproveProcess	CreateOrganizationEvent
CreateUserApproveProcess	CreateUserEvent
DeleteGroupApproveProcess	DeleteGroupEvent
DeleteOrganizationApproveProcess	DeleteOrganizationEvent
DeleteUserApproveProcess	DeleteUserEvent
ModifyAccessRoleMembershipApproveProcess	AssignAccessRoleEvent RevokeAccessRoleEvent
ModifyAdminRoleMembershipApproveProcess*	AssignAdminRoleEvent RevokeAdminRoleEvent
ModifyGroupMembershipApproveProcess*	AddToGroupEvent RemoveFromGroupEvent
ModifyOrganizationApproveProcess	ModifyOrganizationEvent
ModifyObjectApproveProcess	ModifyObjectEvent
SelfRegistrationApproveProcess	SelfRegisterUserEvent

Note: Workflow processes marked with an asterisk (*) are not mapped to events by default.

More Information:

Map a Process to an Event Globally (see page 284)
Map a Process to an Event in a Specific Task (see page 285)

Mapping Processes to Events

You create and modify workflow processes in WorkPoint Designer. When you create a workflow process for CA Identity Manager, you do so with a particular CA Identity Manager task in mind. The execution of this task is controlled by the workflow process.

In addition to creating the workflow process, you must also do the following:

- Identify the event that is generated by the CA Identity Manager task, described in Admin Tasks and Events. You can create a workflow process for any CA Identity Manager task that generates an event.
- Map the workflow process to an event by doing one of the following:
  - Assign a Workflow Process to an Event Globally.

    With this global mapping, the workflow process occurs whenever the event is generated in the environment, regardless of the task that generates the event.
  - Assign a Workflow Process to an Event Generated by a Specific Task.

    With this task-specific mapping, the workflow process occurs only when the specified task generates the event.

  Note: If you map an event to a workflow process both globally and to a specific task, the workflow process associated with the specific task takes precedence.
- Specify a participant resolver for the workflow activity in the workflow process.
- Associate a workflow activity with an approval task.

More Information:

Map a Process to an Event Globally (see page 284)
Map a Process to an Event in a Specific Task (see page 285)
Workflow Activities (see page 286)
Participant Resolvers: WorkPoint Method (see page 289)

Map a Process to an Event Globally

You map a workflow process to an event globally so the workflow process executes when the event is generated by any task in the environment.

Note: Although the following procedure works, the Global Event Level Policy-Based (see page 322) procedure is the now recommended method of mapping a process to an event.

To map a non-policy based workflow process to an event globally

1. Open the Management Console by entering the following URL in a browser:

   `http://hostname/iam/immanage`

   hostname

   Defines the fully qualified domain name of the server where CA Identity Manager is installed. For example, myserver.mycompany.com:port.

2. Click Environments, and select the name of the appropriate CA Identity Manager environment.
3. Click Advanced Settings, and then click Workflow.
4. Do the following to map an event to a workflow process:
   a. Select an event from the Event list box.
   b. Select a workflow process from the Approve Process list box.
   c. Click Add.
5. After you finish mapping events to workflow processes, click Save.
6. Restart the CA Identity Manager environment for changes to take effect.

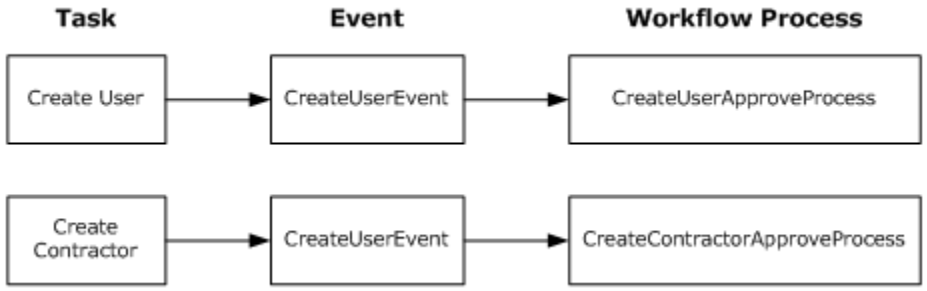
More Information:

Global Process to Event Mapping (see page 282)

Map a Process to an Event in a Specific Task

You can assign a workflow process to an event that is generated by a particular task. In this case, the workflow process occurs only when the mapped event is generated by the specified task.

Task-specific mapping provides variable control over the workflow processes that can be executed for the same event. For example, the following diagram shows two different tasks generating the same event but triggering two different workflow processes:



In this diagram, each task uses a different workflow process.

Create User

Specifies the default admin task that triggers CreateUserEvent, which is mapped to CreateUserApproveProcess, a default workflow process.

Create Contractor

Specifies a custom task based on Create User. In this case, CreateUserEvent is mapped to CreateContractorApproveProcess, a custom workflow process created for approving new contractor accounts.

To map a non-policy based workflow process to an event in an existing task

1. In the User Console, select Roles and Tasks, Admin Tasks, Modify Admin Task.
2. Search for an administrator task.
3. Select a task (for example, the Modify User or Create User tasks) and click Select.
4. On the Events tab, select a workflow process for the event in the task.

   Note: Workflow must be enabled for the event names and the workflow process drop-down menu to appear on this tab.
5. Click the Edit button to view the Workflow mapping screen.
6. Using the Workflow Process drop-down menu, assign a workflow process to the event name and click OK.
7. Click Submit.

To map a non-policy based workflow process to an event in a new task

1. In the User Console, select Roles and Tasks, Admin Tasks, Create Admin Task.

   Note: Be sure you select an existing workflow approval task (such as Approve Create Group or Approve Create User) as the template for your new workflow approval task.

2. On the Profile tab, enter the information in the appropriate fields.

3. On the Events tab, select a workflow process for the event in the task.

   Note: Workflow must be enabled for the event names and the workflow process drop-down menu to appear on this tab.

4. Using the Workflow Process drop-down menu, assign a workflow process to the event name and click OK.

5. Click Submit.

Note: To map a policy-based workflow process to an event, see the Policy-Based Workflow (see page 307) section.

Note: The Workflow Process list includes processes for use with both the template method and the WorkPoint method:

- When a template method process is selected (either SingleStepApproval, TwoStageApprovalProcess, or EscalationApproval), the page expands to enable participant resolver configuration.
- When a WorkPoint method process is selected, the page does not expand. Participant resolvers are configured in WorkPoint Designer.

More Information:

Global Process to Event Mapping (see page 282)

Workflow Activities

CA Identity Manager includes a number of workflow activities that are predefined in the WorkPoint Designer. These activities are assigned to predefined workflow processes.

The predefined workflow processes are single-step processes—that is, each process contains a single predefined activity.

Each predefined activity corresponds to a workflow approval task with the same name that is predefined in CA Identity Manager. You can use the predefined activities in other workflow processes, and you can create new activities.

You can use the predefined workflow processes without modification or add more activities to them. For information about adding an activity to a workflow process, see the WorkPoint documentation.

Processes, Tasks, and Activities

The table below lists the predefined workflow activities and the predefined workflow process that each activity is assigned to by default.

Note: The predefined workflow activities and their corresponding workflow approval tasks have the same name.

Workflow Process	Workflow Task/Activity
CertifyRoleApprovalProcess**	Approve Certify Role
Consultation Process*	
CreateGroupApproveProcess	Approve Create Group
CreateOrganizationApproveProcess	Approve Create Organization
CreateUserApproveProcess	Approve Create User
DeleteGroupApproveProcess	Approve Delete Group
DeleteOrganizationApproveProcess	Approve Delete Organization
DeleteUserApproveProcess	Approve Delete User
ModifyAccessRoleMembershipApproveProcess	Approve Modify Access Role Membership
ModifyAdminRoleMembershipApproveProcess	Approve Modify Admin Role Membership
ModifyGroupMembershipApproveProcess	Approve Modify Group Membership
ModifyIdentityPolicySetApproveProcess	Approve Modify Identity Policy Set
ModifyOrganizationApproveProcess	Approve Modify Organization
ModifyUserApproveProcess	Approve Modify User
SelfRegistrationApproveProcess	Approve Self Registration
SingleStepApproval*	
TwoStageApprovalProcess*	

Note: Workflow processes marked with one asterisk (*) are designed for use with the template method. They are configured in the User Console, and therefore have no default associated tasks or activities. The CertifyRoleApprovalProcess (**) is a sample process demonstrating a custom participant resolver.

Associate a Workflow Activity with an Approval Task

To associate a workflow activity with a workflow approval task, you define a name/value pair in WorkPoint Designer.

Note: If a name/value pair is not defined for a workflow activity by default, CA Identity Manager uses a task with a name that matches the approval task.

To associate a workflow activity with an approval task

1. Start WorkPoint Designer.
2. Click File, Open, Process.
3. Select a workflow process and click Open.
4. Right click the activity node in the process, and select Properties.
5. Select Text from the Type drop-down menu.
6. Enter the following in the User Data tab:
   - **Name**—TASK_TAG.
   - **Value**—Approval Task Tag name.
7. Click Add.
8. Click OK to save your changes.

Create Approval Tasks for Endpoints

You can create Approval Tasks for account management screens. For tasks that approve account modifications, the approval screen must be specific to an endpoint type, so that the approver can see the changed values. To create an approval task for a Create or modify task, follow this procedure:

To create an approval task for an endpoint

1. In the User Console, click Roles and Tasks, Admin Tasks, Create Admin Task.
2. Select "Create a copy of an admin task" used to manage accounts on the endpoint.

   The name would start with create and state the name of the endpoint type. Create Active Directory Account is an example.
3. Make the following changes on the Profile tab.
4. Change the name of the new task.
   - Change the task tag.
   - Change the action to Approve Event.
5. Make the following changes on the Tabs tab:
   a. Remove all Relationships tabs.
   b. Copy and then edit the approval screens on the tabs as necessary.

      Note: You may run into problems when using the account screens in an approval task and changes may need to be made to the default account screen to make them work in an approval task.
6. Click Submit.

Participant Resolvers: WorkPoint Method

To specify participants using the WorkPoint method, define the following activity properties in WorkPoint Designer:

- The name of the predefined CA Identity Manager script which enables communication between CA Identity Manager and the workflow server. The script issues a request to CA Identity Manager for activity participants, and supplies that list to the workflow server.
- References to one or more participant resolvers.

Types of Participant Resolvers

Rather than entering a specific list of participants in workflow activity properties, the participants are referenced by an arbitrary name that is mapped to a *participant resolver*.

For the predefined process model, there are four types of participant resolvers:

Role Participant Resolver

Specifies the participants are members of a particular role.

Group Participant Resolver

Specifies the participants are members of a particular group.

Custom Participant Resolver

Specifies the participants are determined by a custom participant resolver.

Filter Participant Resolver

Specifies the participants are selected through a search filter.

Role Participant Resolvers

With role type participant resolvers, CA Identity Manager retrieves all of the members for that role and returns those members as participants.

If no resolver type is specified in the UserData parameter of the Activity dialog box, the role type resolver is used by default.

If you do not specify any participant resolvers in the User Data tab of the WorkPoint Activity Properties dialog box, by default, CA Identity Manager finds all available roles containing this approval task and returns back those role members as participants.

To configure role participant resolvers

1. Start WorkPoint Designer.
2. Click File, Open, Process.
3. Select a workflow process and click Open.
4. Right click the activity node in the process, and select Properties.
5. Select Text from the Type drop-down menu.
6. Enter the following in the User Data tab:
   - **Name**—APPROVER_ROLE_NAME
   - **Value**—The name of a CA Identity Manager role (for example, Security Manager)

7. Click Add.

   Note: This role does not need to contain any approval tasks.

8. Select Text from the Type drop-down menu.
9. In the User Data tab, enter the following name/value pair (optional):

   Value—APPROVERS_REQUIRED

   Value—YES.

10. Click Add.

    Note: The default approval setting is APPROVERS_REQUIRED=NO. In this case, an activity is approved automatically if no participants are found.

    If APPROVERS_REQUIRED=YES and CA Identity Manager finds no participants, the activity is not successfully completed.

11. Click OK to save your changes.

Group Participant Resolvers

With group type participant resolvers, CA Identity Manager retrieves all of the members for that group and returns those members as participants.

To configure group participant resolvers

1. Start WorkPoint Designer.
2. Click File, Open, Process.
3. Select a workflow process and click Open.
4. Right click the activity node in the process, and select Properties.
5. Select Text from the Type drop-down menu.
6. Enter the following in the User Data tab:
   - **Name**—APPROVER_GROUP_UNIQUENAME
   - **Value**—The name of a CA Identity Manager group
7. Click Add.
8. Select Text from the Type drop-down menu.
9. In the User Data tab, enter the following name/value pair (optional):
   - **Name**—APPROVERS_REQUIRED
   - **Value**—YES.
10. Click Add.

Note: The default approval setting is APPROVERS_REQUIRED=NO. In this case, an activity is approved automatically if no participants are found.

If APPROVERS_REQUIRED=YES and CA Identity Manager finds no participants, the activity is not successfully completed.

11. Click OK to save your changes.

Custom Participant Resolvers

The custom participant resolver is a Java object that determines workflow activity participants and returns a list to CA Identity Manager, which then passes the list to the workflow engine. Typically, you write a custom participant resolver only if the standard participant policies cannot provide the list of participants that an activity requires.

Note: You create a custom participant resolver using the Participant Resolver API. For information, see the *Programming Guide for Java*.

To configure a custom participant resolver

1. Open the Management Console by entering the following URL in a browser:

   `http://hostname/iam/immanage`

   hostname

   Defines the fully qualified domain name of the server where CA Identity Manager is installed. For example, myserver.mycompany.com:port.

2. Click Environments, and select the name of the appropriate CA Identity Manager environment.
3. Click Advanced Settings, Workflow Participant Resolver.
4. On the WorkFlow Participant Resolver screen, click New and enter:

   Name

   Specifies the custom participant resolver name, for example, GroupFinder.

   Description

   Specifies a description of the custom participant resolver.

   Class

   Specifies the Java class name, for example, com.netegrity.samples.GroupFinder

5. Click Save.
6. Start WorkPoint Designer.
7. Click File, Open, Process.
8. Select a workflow process and click Open.
9. Right click the activity node in the process, and select Properties.

10. Select Text from the Type drop-down menu.
11. Enter the following in the User Data tab:

    Name

    APPROVER_CUSTOMRESOLVER_NAME

    Value

    Specifies a unique name for the custom resolver. This must match the name you entered on the Custom Type Participant Resolver screen in the Management Console, for example, GroupFinder.
12. Click Add.

    Note: The default approval setting is APPROVERS_REQUIRED=NO. In this case, an activity is approved automatically if no participants are found.

    If APPROVERS_REQUIRED=YES and CA Identity Manager finds no participants, the activity is not successfully completed.
13. Click OK to save your changes.

Filter Participant Resolvers

A filter participant resolver enables CA Identity Manager to search for users or groups that match the filter criteria. You specify a search filter in WorkPoint Designer, and CA Identity Manager returns matching approvers for the corresponding workflow activity.

You create a filter participant resolver on the User Data tab of the WorkPoint Activity Properties dialog box.

Participant Resolvers Filter Syntax

The following are three required attributes that combine to make a search filter:

- Approver attribute, such as title
- Approver attribute operation, such as equals
- Approver attribute value, such as manager

The required search filter attributes combine together in the following order:

attribute operation value

For example:

title equals manager or *department contains payroll*

Required Participant Resolver Filter Attributes

The following are *required* participant resolver filter attributes:

Note: For each filter, n is a positive integer indicating the search filter number. The default is 1.

APPROVER_FILTER_n_ATTRIBUTE

Specifies the approver attribute. For example, Title, Department, User ID. (Approver attribute name strings must match CA Identity Manager user attribute name strings.)

APPROVER_FILTER_n_OP

Specifies the operation associated with the approver attribute. For example, equals, not_equals, or contains. (Operation keywords are not case-sensitive.)

The following are valid entries for this filter:

- EQUALS
- STARTSWITH
- NOT_EQUALS
- CONTAINS
- ENDS_WITH
- GREATER_THAN
- LESS_THAN
- GREATER_THAN_EQUALS
- LESS_THAN_EQUALS

APPROVER_FILTER_n_VALUE

Specifies the value associated with the approver. For example, manager, payroll, engineering.

Optional Participant Resolver Filter Attributes

The following are *optional* participant resolver filter attributes.

APPROVER_OBJECTTYPE

USER or GROUP (not case-sensitive)

The default is USER.

APPROVER_ORG_UNIQUENAME

A unique name for an approver's organization. (Organization name strings must match CA Identity Manager organization name strings.)

The default is root.

APPROVER_ORG_AND_LOWER

The approver's organization or sub-organizations:

- 0 means search in the approver's organization.
- 1 means search in all sub-organizations of the approver's organization.

The default is 1.

APPROVER_FILTER_NO

The number of search filter that you are using. If you have two filters, then this number would be 2.

The default is 1.

Note: This filter is required if the number of filters is greater than one.

APPROVER_FILTER_n_CONJ_TYPE

You can combine search filters using OR or AND conjunction types.

Note: Filters separated by the OR conjunction take precedence over those separated by AND.

For example, you can specify the AND conjunction type if you are searching for "title equals manager" AND "department equals development."

Note: n is a positive integer greater than 1 indicating the search filter number.

Add a Participant Resolver Filter

To add participant resolver filters

1. Start WorkPoint Designer.
2. Click File, Open, Process.
3. Select a workflow process and click Open.
4. Right click the activity node in the process, and select Properties.
5. Select Text from the Type drop-down menu.
6. Enter the following in the User Data tab:
   - **Name**—APPROVER_FILTER_1_ATTRIBUTE
   - **Value**—A unique role identifier (for example, title).
7. Click Add.
8. Repeat steps 6 and 7 for each attribute in the search filter.

Note: The default approval setting is APPROVERS_REQUIRED=NO. In this case, an activity is approved automatically if no participants are found.

If APPROVERS_REQUIRED=YES and CA Identity Manager finds no participants, the activity is not successfully completed.

9. Click OK to save your changes.

Example: Filter Participant Resolver

The user store in the following table contains four users—Holly, Sarah, John, and Dave—with user ID, job title, and department attributes.

User	ID	Title	Department
Holly	admin1	sysadmin	administration
Sarah	test1	sysadmin	development
John	admin2	manager	development
Dave	admin3	sysadmin	accounting

CA Identity Manager applies the three filters defined in the following table against the preceding user store:

Name	Value
APPROVER_FILTER_NO	3
APPROVER_FILTER_1_ATTRIBUTE	uid
APPROVER_FILTER_1_OP	equals
APPROVER_FILTER_1_VALUE	admin*
APPROVER_FILTER_2_CONJ_TYPE	AND
APPROVER_FILTER_2_ATTRIBUTE	department
APPROVER_FILTER_2_OP	equals
APPROVER_FILTER_2_VALUE	administration
APPROVER_FILTER_3_CONJ_TYPE	OR
APPROVER_FILTER_3_ATTRIBUTE	title
APPROVER_FILTER_3_OP	equals
APPROVER_FILTER_3_VALUE	sysadmin

CA Identity Manager applies the filters in the following sequence:

1. Evaluates the second and third filters connected by the OR conjunction.

   "department equals administration" OR "title equals sysadmin"

   This excludes John and returns Holly, Sarah, and Dave.

2. Evaluates the first and second filters connected by the AND conjunction, (where * is a wild card character.

   "uid equals admin*" AND "department equals administration"

   This excludes Sarah, and returns Holly and Dave.

The final users returned from the user store are Holly and Dave.

Participant Resolver Order of Precedence

If you do not specify any participant resolvers, by default CA Identity Manager identifies all available roles containing the approval task and returns those role members as participants.

If you specify more that one participant resolver, CA Identity Manager evaluates them using this order of precedence:

1. Custom
2. Role
3. Filter
4. Group

CA Identity Manager identifies and applies the first resolver in this order of precedence, and ignores any subsequent remaining resolvers.

You should only have one resolver at a time. Also, make sure that the resolver is configured properly so that CA Identity Manager correctly identifies participants.

Specify Workflow Resource Script

CA Identity Manager is shipped with a script, named IM Approvers, that passes information between CA Identity Manager and the workflow server.

When a list of participants is required for a workflow activity, the script passes to CA Identity Manager the activity name, the participant identifier provided on the User Data tab of the WorkPoint Activity Properties dialog box, and any other information provided on the User Data tab. CA Identity Manager searches for the participants and passes the list back to the script. The script then provides the list to the workflow server.

When you have a new workflow process definition and the workflow process activity is a CA Identity Manager workflow approval task, the IM Approvers script must be specified in the Resources tab of the WorkPoint Activity Properties dialog box.

To specify the IM Approvers script in WorkPoint Designer

1. In the Resources tab, click Select.
2. In the Select Resources dialog box, select Rule from the drop-down list. This action lists the rules (scripts) that you can associate with the activity.
3. Select the script name IM Approvers and click Add.
4. Click OK, and then click Apply on the Activity Properties dialog box.

Note: Do not modify the IM Approvers script.

Specify Participants for Certify User Tasks

Certify User tasks generate the event CertifyRoleEvent. This event can be subject to workflow approval through the predefined process CertifyRoleApproveProcess.

CA Identity Manager also includes the predefined participant resolver CertifyRoleParticipantResolver, which appears in your environment by default. Participants for activities in a CertifyRoleApprovalProcess are specified through CertifyRoleParticipantResolver.

To provide participant configuration information

1. Open the Management Console by entering the following URL in a browser:

   `http://hostname/iam/immanage`

   hostname

   Defines the fully qualified domain name of the server where CA Identity Manager is installed. For example, myserver.mycompany.com:port.
2. Click Environments, and select the name of the appropriate CA Identity Manager environment.
3. Click Advanced Settings and then click Miscellaneous.
4. Define name/value pairs that specify the approvers for each role to be certified:
   - In the Property field, use the format: *role-type.role-name*

     role-type must be one of these roles: admin, access, provisioning.

     role-name is the name of any existing role.

     The role-name and role-type must be separated by a period (.).
   - In the Value field, specify the IDs of the approvers, and separate the IDs with a semi-colon (;).

In the following example, user certification can be approved for the following roles and by the following participants:

- jsmith01 and ajones19 can approve certification for the User Manager role
- plewis12 is the only approver for the System Manager role
- rtrevor8 and pkitt3 can approve certification for My Access Role

Property	Value
admin.User Manager	jsmith01;ajones19
admin.System Manager	plewis12
access.My Access Role	rtrevor8;pkitt3

Note: Any unspecified roles will not have approvers for a CertifyRoleEvent.

Processes in WorkPoint Designer

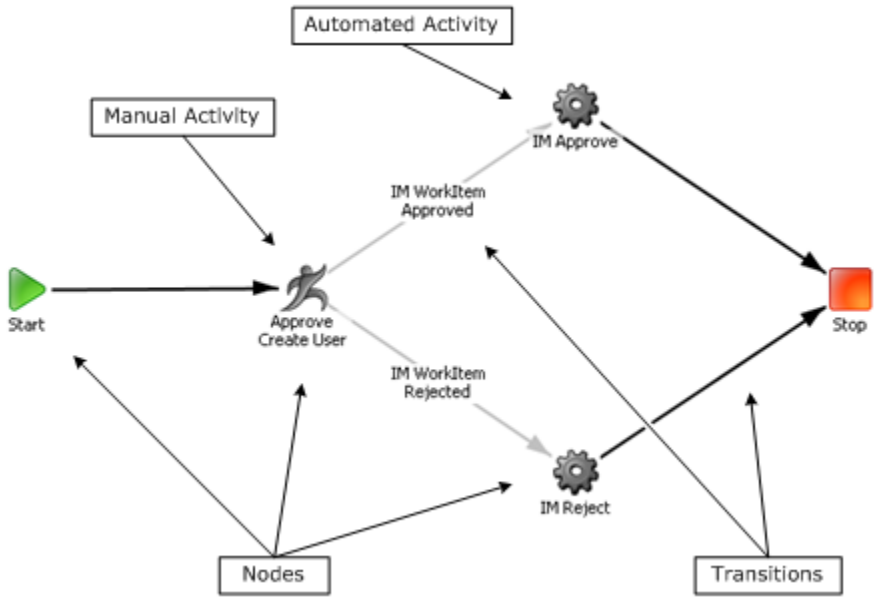
In WorkPoint Designer, you can customize the default workflow processes and activities that come with CA Identity Manager, and you can create new ones.

This document presents WorkPoint workflow information that is specific to CA Identity Manager. For complete information, see the WorkPoint Designer documentation.

Note: When creating a workflow process, consider doing so by making a copy of an existing CA Identity Manager process, and then modifying the new process to suit your needs. A workflow process created in this way includes default CA Identity Manager-specific elements and nodes such as transition scripts and automated activities.

WorkPoint Process Diagram

The following diagram shows a typical workflow process with the minimum set of components for a process that controls a CA Identity Manager task. The diagram illustrates the predefined process CreateUserApproveProcess, which controls the execution of a Create User task.



WorkPoint Process Components

The workflow process contains the following nodes and transitions:

Start

Every workflow process begins with this node.

Stop

Every workflow process ends with this node.

Manual activity

A manual activity requires the approval or rejection of a CA Identity Manager task by a participant, and must have the same name as a CA Identity Manager workflow approval task.

A workflow process that controls a CA Identity Manager task must include at least one manual activity requesting approval for that task.

Automated activity

An automated activity is assigned one of two scripts:

- Notify IM Approve—Informs CA Identity Manager to execute the CA Identity Manager task under workflow control.
- Notify IM Reject—Informs CA Identity Manager to cancel execution of the CA Identity Manager task.

In general, the Notify IM Approve script is activated if all manual activities are approved, and the Notify IM Reject script is activated if any manual activity is rejected.

Unconditional transition

An unconditional transition is a path from one node in the workflow process to another, and is not associated with a condition script.

Conditional transition

A conditional transition represents an alternative path from one node in the workflow process to another, and is associated with a condition script.

A condition script determines whether the transition occurs by evaluating the outcome of the associated activity. If the script returns true, the transition is performed and the process moves to the next indicated node.

It is possible to have two or more condition scripts return true. This allows an activity to be performed in parallel, since each script is associated with a different transition.

Note: You can use custom scripts in conditional transitions. For instructions, see the *Programming Guide for Java*.

Manual Activity Properties

Property settings specific to CA Identity Manager are listed in the following table. These settings are defined in the specified tabs of the WorkPoint Designer Activity Properties dialog box.

Property Tab	Property Descriptions
Resources	IM Approvers—Specified in the Include list. This script passes information between CA Identity Manager and the workflow server.
Agents	Nobody Auto Complete—Specified in the Asynchronous list and associated with the Available state. This script determines whether an activity should be considered approved if no activity participants exist.

Property Tab	Property Descriptions
User Data	Define name/value pairs that CA Identity Manager uses to retrieve activity participants. Optionally, you can also define data to be passed to a custom participant resolver.

Conditional Transition Properties

The following default scripts appear in the Condition tab of the Transition Properties dialog box:

IM WorkItem Approved

Returns true if the associated activity is approved. The workflow process flows to the next node indicated by the transition.

IM WorkItem Rejected

Returns true if the associated activity is rejected. The workflow process flows to the next node indicated by the transition.

Jobs and Process Instances

A *workflow process* defines the steps that must take place before CA Identity Manager can complete a particular task. A *job* is a runtime instance of a workflow process.

For example, the default workflow process CreateUserApproveProcess defines the steps that must occur for a new user to be approved. When a new user is actually created in CA Identity Manager and the task is submitted for approval, a job instance of CreateUserApproveProcess is created in WorkPoint Designer.

You can open, view, and modify jobs in WorkPoint Designer using an interface that is very similar to that used for editing workflow processes.

Multiple jobs based on the same process can exist simultaneously.

Filtering Jobs

WorkPoint Designer includes filtering, which lets you search for jobs based on various criteria. For example, you can search for jobs that:

- Are based on one or more selected workflow processes
- Have a user-defined job reference or a unique job ID
- Are in a particular state (such as active, complete, or suspended)
- Were created or were started within a specified date range

Note: For instructions and reference information about job filtering, see the WorkPoint Designer documentation.

Job Status and Properties

When you open a job, the job's workflow diagram is displayed. Workflow activity nodes and transitions are rendered in color indicating whether that have been performed.

You can view, and in some cases modify:

- Properties of a job, including participant and job history information
- The state of an open job, for example whether it has completed
- Properties of individual nodes and transitions in a job

Activity and Work Item Properties

You can view, and in some cases, modify job activity properties and process activity properties, including the following:

- Activity state information
- Activity approval information
- Approval task (called *work item* in WorkPoint Designer) information, for example:
  - If no participant has the work item reserved (which removes the item from the work lists of other approvers), the state is Available, and no participant user ID is displayed.
  - If a participant has reserved but not yet completed the work item, the state is Open, and the participant's user ID and the reservation time are displayed.
  - If the work item has been completed, the state is Complete. The user ID of the participant who approved or rejected the task under workflow control is displayed, along with the time of completion.

Specific work item properties include:

- The work item name and current state
- State history information, including the user IDs of the participants responsible for given states
- Authorized work item participants information

Note: For more information about job, activity, and work item properties, see the WorkPoint Designer documentation.

Performing Workflow Activities

In a workflow process, a manual activity is performed by a person designated as an activity participant, who approves or rejects an event associated with an approval task. Participants perform this activity in CA Identity Manager.

The following operations take place when an activity associated with a CA Identity Manager approval task is performed:

1. CA Identity Manager notifies the participants.
2. A participant approves or rejects the task.
3. The workflow server completes the activity.

Find and Notify the Participants

When a workflow activity associated with a CA Identity Manager approval task begins, the workflow server passes information about activity participants to CA Identity Manager. This information is defined in the activity properties. CA Identity Manager uses this information to retrieve activity participants and alert them that an approval task is pending.

After identifying the participants, CA Identity Manager adds a new work item (the approval task) to each participant's work list. Optionally, CA Identity Manager also sends an email notification about the new work item to each participant.

Note: If the APPROVERS_REQUIRED activity property is set to false and no participants are found, the task is considered approved by default.

Note: A circle in the Status column indicates that the approval task is available for any participant to claim. A check mark indicates that the work list owner has accepted the approval task but has not yet completed it.

Accept and Perform the Approval Task

Once participants are found, the activity cannot be completed until one participant accepts the approval task and either approves or rejects the task under workflow control.

A participant accepts an approval task by clicking the work item name in the Workflow Activity Console, and then clicking Reserve Item. (Reserving an item removes it from the work lists of other approvers.)

Once a participant accepts an approval task, he commits to making the approval or rejection decision for the task under workflow control. And, since multiple participants cannot accept the same approval task, the approval task is removed from the work lists of other participants.

After a participant accepts an approval task, an approval screen appears, in which the participant can take one of these actions:

- Approve or reject the task under workflow control immediately.
- Release the approval task to make it available to other participants.
- Close the dialog box and complete the activity later. To reopen the Approve Create User dialog box shown above, the participant clicks the name of the approval task in his work list.

Additionally, the participant can update one or more modifiable fields, if any, on the approval screen. You can make fields on this screen modifiable when you create the task.

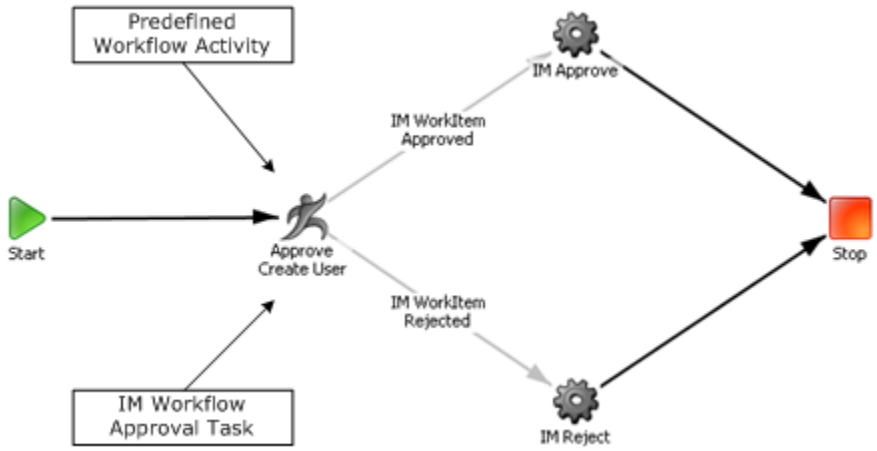
After the participant approves or rejects the task under workflow control, the activity is complete, and the workflow process can continue along the path determined by the outcome of the activity, as described in the next section.

Workflow Server Completes the Activity

A manual activity appears in the Designer window with two or more conditional transitions leading from it.

Each conditional transition is associated with a script. When a participant completes the activity, the scripts evaluate the activity outcome. The result of these evaluations determines the direction of the process flow.

The following illustration shows the Approve Create User activity in the Designer and the corresponding approval task of the same name in CA Identity Manager.



When the activity participant (or approver) clicks the Approve or Reject button in CA Identity Manager:

1. The Approve Create User activity in the process job instance ends. The scripts associated with the conditional transitions evaluate the outcome of the activity.
2. The job instance continues, depending on which conditional transition evaluates to true:
   - If the activity is approved, script IM WorkItem Approved returns true. The workflow takes the IM WorkItem Approved transition to the next node. This automated activity, IM Approve, notifies CA Identity Manager to execute the Create User task.
   - If the activity is rejected, script IM WorkItem Rejected returns true. The workflow takes the IM WorkItem Rejected transition to the next workflow node. This automated activity, IM Reject, notifies CA Identity Manager to cancel the Create User task.

Workpoint Job View

You can view the runtime status of Workpoint jobs in the User Console from the following:

- Approval tasks
- View Submitted Tasks.

In new environments, all approval tasks include the View Job tab by default. Only events created in this release support viewing the job images for all process definitions invoked for the selected event or task in View Submitted Tasks. Events created in earlier releases do not support the Workflow Job View feature.

Add the View Job Tab to Existing Approval Tabs

For Approval Tasks you must add the new View Job Tab to all existing tasks in order to view the job image for that work item.

Note: New environments contain this tab for all approval tasks.

To add the Job View tab to an existing task

1. From the Admin Tasks and Role category, execute the ModifyAdminTask by selecting Admin Task, Modify Admin Task.
2. Click Search and select an approval task (for example, Approve Create User), and click Select.

   The Modify Admin Task: Approve Create User dialog appears.
3. Click the Tabs tab and from the drop-down menu, select View Job (JobView) and click Submit.

   The View Job Tab has been added to the approval task.

   Repeat for all existing approval tasks.

Policy-Based Workflow

Policy-based workflow allows you to place an event or an admin task under workflow control based on the evaluation of a rule. This means that instead of an event or an admin task always launching a workflow process, the workflow process runs and generates a work item only if a rule associated with the event or an admin task is true.

An *approval rule* is a condition that determines whether to start a workflow process. If started, the workflow process places the event or an admin task under workflow control by adding a work item to an approver's work list.

An *approval policy* is the combination of the approval rule, the rule evaluation type, policy order, policy description, and the workflow process.

For example, when creating a new group, you can define an approval policy that places the CreateGroupEvent under workflow control and creates a work item only if the new group is part of a designated parent organization. If the new group is not part of that organization, the workflow process does not run and no work item is created.

If an event has multiple rules, then all workflow process associated with the event need to be approved in order for the event to be approved. Similarly for an admin task, you can define an approval policy that places the CreateGroupTask under workflow control and creates a work item only if the name of the new group starts with Sales. If the name of the new group does not start with Sales, the workflow process does not run and no work item is created.

You can create a policy rule that is always evaluated or only when a specified attribute of a managed object changes, for example, when an employee's salary changes value.

Note: In earlier versions of policy-based workflow, if any approver made any change to the attributes, they were sent for re-approval. With attribute level approve and reject, changes at any stage are approved only once. The work item is never submitted for re-approval even if the attribute contained in the rule is modified. Once an approver approves a change, they will not see the work item again until a new change is submitted or the task is resubmitted.

More Information:

Event-Level Workflow (see page 261)
Task-Level Workflow (see page 258)
Policy Order (see page 311)
Rule Evaluation (see page 310)

Objects of Rules

A CA Identity Manager administrator can create approval policies for an event or admin task based on the following objects. The following are the objects for an event if they apply to a given event and are present during event execution:

- **Initiator of the task** – The CA Identity Manager administrator who executes the task.
- **Primary object of the event** – The primary object associated with the event.
- **Secondary object of the event** – The secondary object associated with the event relative to the primary object.

The following are the objects for an admin task:

- **Primary Object of the Task** – The primary object associated with the task
- **Initiator of the Task** - The CA Identity Manager administrator who executes the task.
- **Identity Policy Violations** - For identity policy violations, the rules are based on the policy name of the identity policy that caused the violation, for example, Policy Name EQUALS TitlePolicy. The violation message is displayed on the Task Details tab of the Approval Screen which is the same as the View Submitted Tasks Task Details. The SOD violation message is displayed under a new section heading named Identity Policy Violation. An approver can view these messages and decide to approve or reject the task.

  Note: If a rule is based on Identity Policy Violation, the evaluation is different from normal evaluation. An SOD violation once approved does not invoke any other workflow process even if there are other rules that may evaluate to true for that particular SOD violation. With normal evaluation, all workflow processes one-by one even if the same change while the normal evaluation is, it will invoke all the workflow processes one-by-one even if the same change has been approved by other approvers.

Rule Evaluation

Policy rules can be evaluated for an event in the following two ways:

- Always

  A policy with evaluation type of Always gets invoked if the policy evaluates to True irrespective of whether any attributes contained in the policy are changed or not. On the approval screen for a work item that was generated as a result of a policy evaluation type of Always, an approver can change any editable attribute on the approval screen.

  Note: If the approver clicks the Reject button, the event is rejected.

  For Always, evaluation type behaviour is the same for tasks and events.

- Only if an attribute specified in the approval condition changes

  A policy with evaluation type of OnChange gets invoked only if the policy evaluates to True and any of the attributes contained in the policy changed. On the approval screen for a work item that was generated as a result of a policy with evaluation type of Onchange, the approver can only change the value of those attributes contained in the policy, if those attributes have a permission of readwrite for that approval screen. All other attributes that exist on the approval screen have read-only permissions.

  Note: For event level workflow, if the approver clicks the Reject button, only changes made to the attributes contained in the approval policy are rejected and the next approval policy in order, gets evaluated.

  For task level workflow, if the approver clicks the reject button, the event is rejected.

  Note: For both rule types OnChange and Always, when an approver un-does all changes and clicks Approve, the changes are rejected and audited accordingly.

Rule Evaluation Example

Consider the following policies, all for ModifyUserEvent in the Modify User admin task:

Policy	Rule	Evaluation
Policy1	User where (User ID = Smith01)	Always
Policy2	User where (Title = Manager)	When the Title attribute changes
Policy3	User where (Salary >= 80000)	When the Salary attribute changes

Policy1 is evaluated every time administrator invokes the Modify User task for user Smith01, regardless of which attribute changes.

Policy2 is evaluated when the administrator invokes the Modify User task to change the Title attribute for any user object. Policy2 is true if Title changes to Manager.

Policy3 is evaluated when the administrator invokes the Modify User task to change the Salary attribute for any user object. Policy3 is true if salary changes to 80000 or more.

In this example, if an administrator uses the Modify User task to change the Title attribute to Manager for user Smith01, then both Policy1 and Policy2 evaluate to true, and their respective workflow processes are started. In this case, the standard ordering priority applies.

Conditional rule evaluation allows an approver of one work item to change an attribute that affects another work item for the same event while the event is still pending. This is only possible for approval policies that have an evaluation type of Always. In the preceding example, if an administrator changes an attribute for user Smith01, then Policy1 is true and generates a work item. While approving the work item generated by Policy1, that approver may, on the same approval screen, change the Salary attribute for Smith01. In this case, the new Salary value for Smith01 determines whether or not Policy3 generates a work item for the same instance of ModifyUserEvent. If the approver changes the salary to 90000, then Policy3 generates a new work item which must be approved before the event itself is approved. Standard ordering priority applies.

Policy Order

All approval policies contain a Policy Order field in which a positive integer value, ordered from lowest to highest, specifies priority. The priority for each policy determines the following:

- The order in which approval rules are evaluated
- For rules that are true, the order in which workflow processes are started

A policy with a lower integer value has a higher priority, and its rule is evaluated before a policy with a higher integer value. For all policies for an event or admin task that are true, the policy with the highest priority starts its workflow process first.

Policy Order Example

This simple example demonstrates how policy ordering works. In this example, assume the policy rules are always evaluated.

If an event has multiple policies that are always evaluated, then for the event itself to be approved, all policies must be approved. However, if one policy associated with the event which has a policy evaluation type as ALWAYS is rejected, the event itself is rejected.

Note: If a policy associated with the even has an evaluation type as Onchange, only the changes associated with the attributes contained in that policy are rejected. The event itself is not rejected and the next policy in line is evaluated.

In this example, Policy1, Policy2, and Policy3 all have a policy evalutation type of ALWAYS. Policy1 evaluates to false, the workflow process named Process1 does not execute, and no work item is generated for User1. Event control immediately passes to Policy2. Policy2 and Policy3 both evaluate to true. Because of its higher priority, workflow Process2 runs first, and generates a work item for User2.

If User2 approves the work item, workflow Process3 runs and generates a work item for User3, who must then approve the work item for the event itself to be approved. These actions are shown in the following table:

Priority	Policy	Result	Workflow	Approver	Action
1	Policy1	False	Process1	User1	—
2	Policy2	True	Process2	User2	Approved
3	Policy3	True	Process3	User3	Approved

However if User2 rejects the work item, the event itself is rejected, and no work item is generated for User3, as shown in the following table:

Priority	Policy	Result	Workflow	Approver	Action
1	Policy1	False	Process1	User1	—
2	Policy2	True	Process2	User2	Rejected
3	Policy3	True	Process3	User3	—

Next, Policy1, Policy2, and Policy3 all have a policy evaluation type of ONCHANGE. If User2 rejects the work item, only changes associated with the attributes contained in Policy2 are rejected. Policy3 is then evaluated and Workflow Process3 runs and generates a work item for User3. If User3 rejects the work item, the event is rejected as all changes to this event were rejected. If User3 approves the work item, the event is approved and attribute changes contained in Policy3 get persisted.

Priority	Policy	Result	Workflow	Approver	Action
1	Policy1	False	Process1	User1	—
2	Policy2	True	Process2	User2	Rejected
3	Policy3	True	Process3	User3	Approved

Policy Description

An optional, non-searchable string description attribute has been added to the Approval policy managed object and appears on resulting work items.

Maximum number of characters supported: 255 characters

You can enter bundle/key information in the following format for the description:

```
$ (bundle=<fully qualified resource bundles name> : key=<key>)
```

Approval Policies and Multivalued Attributes

If a rule was set up for a multivalued attribute, there was no way to say that this rule should apply only on newly added or removed values for the multivalued attribute. By looking at the Policy Evaluation Type for a rule based on a multivalued attribute, this is now achieved. If the rule evaluation type is Onchange then this rule can only be applied to the new added or removed values of the multivalued attribute and not on all values of the multivalued attribute.

If the rule must be based on all values of the multivalued attribute irrespective of whether they were newly added or removed, the evaluation type for that rule must be Always.

Changes made to multivalued attributes are highlighted on the profile screen with an undo icon. If a rule evaluated to true because a new value was added or removed to a multivalued attribute, the approver approving this change sees ALL values contained in the multivalued attribute. Clicking the undo icon reverts the value for that attribute back to its original value. If an approver wants to see the removed values, clicking the Undo icon shows the original set of values.

Clicking the redo icon shows the new set of values letting the approver differentiate which were the removed values and which were the added ones. Clicking the approve button approves all the changes to this multivalued attribute. Clicking the reject button rejects all changes to this multivalued attribute. All subsequent rules pertaining to this multivalued attribute are not evaluated unless there is a new delta of values for this multivalued attribute.

Note: For rules based on multivalued attributes, the values contained in the multivalued attribute are the actual values and not the display values. For example, the display value for the state MA is Massachusetts. When creating an approval policy that is based on the state attribute, the rule should look like state=MA.

Consider the following example policies, all for ModifyUserEvent in the Modify User admin task:

Policy	Rule	Evaluation
Policy1	User where (State = MA)	OnChange
Policy2	User where (state = DC)	Always

Policy1 is evaluated every time an administrator invokes the ModifyUser task to change the state attribute and evaluates to true if the value MA is either added or removed from the state attribute.

Policy 2 is evaluated every time the administrator invokes the Modify User task for a user whose state contains the value DC.

Attributes Highlighted as Changed on Workflow Approval Screens

On an approval screen, additional attributes may appear highlighted as changed even if an administrator did not change them in the original task. This is because the screen can contain scripts that can change values of various attributes contained on the screen as a part of screen initialization or screen validation for a change of some other attribute.

Policy Examples

The following business use case examples demonstrate how you can apply workflow approval policies for an event:

Example 1:

Use Case – An administrator modifies a relational database account belonging to an employee.

Admin Task – ModifyMSSQLAccount

Event – ModifyMSSQLAccountEvent

Approval Rule – User where (Title = RDBAcctManager)

Workflow Process – ModAcctApproval (custom workflow process)

Object – Initiator of the task

Evaluation – Always evaluate the rule

Example 2:

Use Case – An administrator modifies an employee's salary to reflect a new raise.

Admin Task – Modify User

Event – ModifyUserEvent

Approval Rule – User where (Salary >= 100000)

Workflow Process – SalaryChangeApproval (custom workflow process)

Object – Primary object of the event (user)

Evaluation – Evaluate only when the Salary attribute changes

Example 3:

Use Case – An administrator adds a user to the Contractors group when that user's title changes to Contractor. This example could be divided into the following two approval policies:

Policy 1:

Admin Task – Modify User

Event – ModifyUserEvent

Approval Rule – User where (Title = Contractor)

Workflow Process – SingleStepApproval (default process template)

Object – Primary object of the event (user)

Evaluation – Evaluate only when the Title attribute changes

Policy 2:

Admin Task – Modify Group (or Modify Group Membership)

Event – AddToGroup

Approval Rule – Group where (Group Name = Contractors)

Workflow Process – SingleStepApproval (default process template)

Object – Secondary object of the event (group)

Evaluation – Always evaluate the rule

The following business use case examples demonstrate how you can apply workflow approval policies for a task:

Example 1:

Use Case – An administrator modifies an Active Directory account belonging to an employee.

Admin Task – ModifyActiveDirectoryAccount

Object – Initiator of the task

Approval Rule – User where (Title = ActiveDirectoryManager)

Workflow Process – Single Step Approval

Evaluation – Always evaluate the rule

Example 2:

Use Case – An administrator modifies a user whose employee code is HighSecurity.

Admin Task – Modify User

Object – Primary Object of the Task

Approval Rule – User where (employeenumber = HighSecurity)

Workflow Process – Single Step Approval

Evaluation – Always evaluate the rule

Example 3:

Use Case – An administrator modifies a user to assign admin roles CheckApprover and CheckSigner.

Admin Task – Modify User

Object – Identity Policy Violation

Approval Rule – IdentityPolicy where (Name = CheckRoles)

Workflow Process – Single Step Approval

Evaluation – Always evaluate the rule

How to Configure Policy-Based Workflow for Events

The procedure for configuring policy-based workflow is similar to that for configuring event-level workflow, with the additional steps of defining the approval policies which determine whether the workflow executes.

To Configure Policy-Based Workflow

1. In the User Console, select Roles and Tasks, Admin Tasks, Modify (or Create) Admin Task.

   A Select Admin Task screen appears.

2. Search for the task you want under workflow control, and click Select.

   A Modify (or Create) Admin Task screen appears.

3. On the Profile tab, verify that Enable Workflow is checked.

4. On the Events tab, select an event to map to a process template.

   The workflow mapping screen appears.

5. Select the Policy-Based radio button, and then click Add.

   The Approval Policy screen appears.

6. Configure an approval policy (see page 320).

7. Configure participant resolvers as required by your selected workflow process.

   The participant requests are added to the process.

8. Click OK.

   CA Identity Manager saves your event-level workflow configuration.

9. Click Submit.

   CA Identity Manager processes the task modification.

Note: The Workflow Process list includes processes for use with both the template method and the WorkPoint method:

- When a template method process is selected (either SingleStepApproval, TwoStageApprovalProcess, or EscalationApproval), the page expands to enable participant resolver configuration.
- When a WorkPoint method process is selected, the page does not expand. Participant resolvers are configured in WorkPoint Designer.

More Information:

Participant Resolvers: WorkPoint Method (see page 289)
How to Configure an Approval Policy (see page 320)

How to Configure Policy-Based Workflow for Tasks

The procedure for configuring policy-based workflow for tasks is similar to that for configuring task-level workflow, with the additional steps of defining the approval policies which determine whether the workflow executes.

To Configure Policy-Based Workflow

1. In the User Console, select Roles and Tasks, Admin Tasks, Modify (or Create) Admin Task.

   A Select Admin Task screen appears.

2. Search for the task you want under workflow control, and click Select.

   A Modify (or Create) Admin Task screen appears.

3. On the Profile tab, verify that Enable Workflow is checked

4. On the Profile tab, click on the pencil icon next to the Workflow Process field

   The workflow mapping screen appears.

5. Select the Policy-Based radio button, and then click Add.

   The Approval Policy screen appears.

6. Configure an approval policy (see page 320).

7. Configure participant resolvers as required by your selected workflow process.

   The participant requests are added to the process.

8. Click OK.

   CA Identity Manager saves your task-level workflow configuration.

9. Click Submit.

   CA Identity Manager processes the task modification.

Note: The Workflow Process list includes processes for use with the template method for task-level policy-based workflow:

- When a template method process is selected (either SingleStepApproval or TwoStageApprovalProcess), the page expands to enable participant resolver configuration.

More Information

How to Configure an Approval Policy (see page 320)

How to Configure an Approval Policy

Configuring an approval policy for an event or task involves the following steps.

1. Select an object to test.
2. Define an approval rule for the object.
3. For primary objects, decide if this is a conditional evaluation.
4. Enter the order of policy evaluation.
5. Configure a workflow process to run if the rule is true.

To configure an Approval Policy

1. On the Approval Policy screen, select an object for the rule to test from the drop-down list.

   The screen changes to reflect your selection.
2. From the new drop-down next to the object name, select a condition expression template.

   The screen changes to reflect your selection.
3. Create and edit your condition expression as required.
4. Select the Rule Evaluation option button to indicate if the rule is always evaluated, or only if an attribute in the approval condition changes.
5. Enter a positive integer value to specify the policy evaluation order (in case there are multiple policies for the event).
6. Select and configure the workflow process that executes if the rule evaluates to true.
7. Click OK to save the approval policy.

More Information:

How to Configure Event-Level Workflow (see page 263)
How to Configure Policy-Based Workflow for Events (see page 317)
How to Configure Policy-Based Workflow for Tasks (see page 319)

Policy-Based Workflow Status

CA Identity Manager administrators can display the status of tasks containing workflow approval policies using the following standard system tools:

- View Submitted Tasks tab
- User History tab
- Reports and logs

The submitted task and task history information includes:

- Task and event information
- Workflow and approval rule information
- Approval rule evaluation results

See the System tab documentation for submitted task history descriptions.

More Information:

Description of Event Status (see page 538)
Task Status in CA Identity Manager (see page 532)

Global Event Level Policy-Based Workflow Mapping

An event can be mapped to a workflow process from the Management Console, or be associated with policy-based workflow approval policies in a specific task. The new Configure Global Policy-based Workflow for Events task, lets administrators set up policy-based workflow mapping for events at the environment level. Unlike setting up policy-based workflow for an event in an admin task, the configured policy-based workflow mappings are applied to all tasks that generate the event.

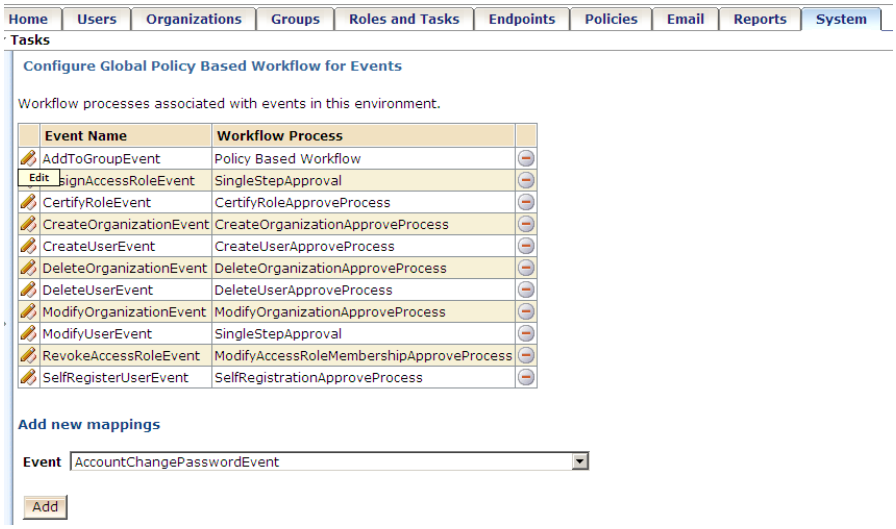
Note: The Configure Global Policy Based Workflow for Events task works only when workflow is enabled. Executing this task when workflow is disabled throws an error.

This task has been added to the System tab. When a task is submitted, the workflow process of each event in this task is retrieved in the following way:

Any workflow configured for the event for that admin task takes precedence. An event can be configured for either policy-based or non-policy based workflow. If policy-based workflow is configured for the event for that admin task the workflow process associated with the policy is invoked. If no rule matched, no workflow is invoked for the event. Likewise, if non-policy based workflow is configured for the event for that admin task, the workflow process associated with the policy is invoked. If no workflow was configured for the event for that admin task, global workflow configuration for that event takes precedence.

Configure Global Policy Based Workflow for Events Task Screen

The Configure Global Policy Based Workflow for Events tasks lets an administrator configure policy or non-policy based workflow for all events in the current environment. Clicking the task displays the default event mapping to workflow process definitions. Each event mapping can be modified or deleted, and new event mappings can be added for events that have not been configured.



The fields on this screen are as follows:

Workflow processes associated with events in this environment.

Specifies the workflow processes associated with approval policies.

Add New Mappings

Specifies an approval policy to map to a workflow process.

Add Button

Adds the new mapping.

Adding or modifying a mapping opens the Workflow Mapping screen where you can select the process mappings and approval policies. The behavior is the same as the event level workflow configuration. Clicking the Add button on the Workflow Mappings page brings up another page where you can configure an approval policy.

More Information

How to Configure Policy-Based Workflow for Events (see page 317)
How to Configure an Approval Policy (see page 320)

Online Requests

CA Identity Manager lets you create general purpose online request tasks. The default online request implementation is comprised of a set of related tasks for both self-modification requests and administrative user modification requests. However, the online request feature could easily be implemented for other CA Identity Manager request tasks.

A user modification request triggers a workflow process which generates a work item. Workflow participants can either approve and implement the work item, or reject it. The user initiating the task enters a description of the request in the history editor, a text area which CA Identity Manager uses to maintain a history of the request. This history editor can be configured to allow participants to leave comments about the action they perform on the work item. These comments become part of the cumulative work item history.

New actions in addition to (or in place of) the standard approve and reject actions are also possible. For example, a business participant can clarify or comment on the request, and a technical participant can implement the request. These new activities can be represented by new workflow action buttons like “Clarify” and “Implement” which you can add to the standard “Approve” and “Reject” buttons on the approval task.

Online Request Tasks

There are five tasks that work together to make up the default online request implementation. These tasks demonstrate the use of custom requests, history, and workflow action buttons:

Note: The admin tasks (Change My Account and Create Online Request) are configured by default for event-level workflow using the Consultation Process template.

Change My Account

This is a self-modification admin task that creates a user account change request. It has a Request tab with a history editor for describing the request, and a Profile tab with read-only user details.

Create Online Request

This is a user modification admin task that creates an account change request for a particular user. It has a Request tab with a history editor for describing the request, and a Subject Profile tab with read-only user details.

Approve Online Request

This is an approval task that allows the business participant to approve or reject the task, or to request further clarification of the task. This task has a Request tab with a history display and a history editor for queries or comments, a read-only Subject Profile tab, and an Assignees tab.

Clarify Online Request

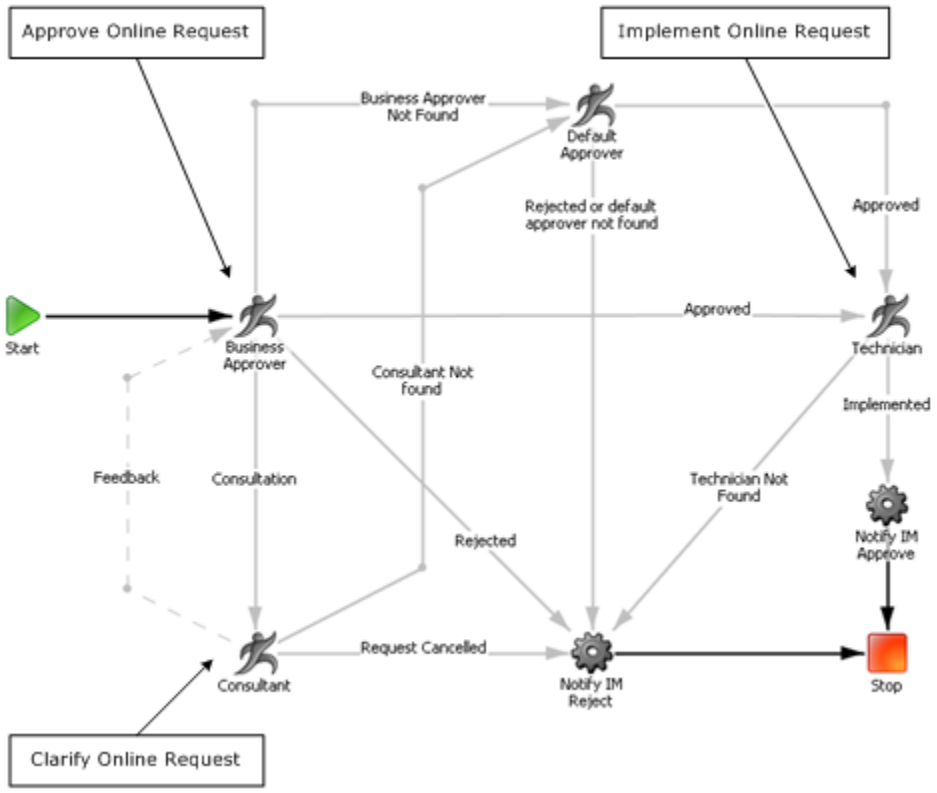
This is an approval task that allows the clarifying participant to respond to a clarification request, and sends the task back to the business participant for approval. It has a Request tab with a history display and a history editor for comments, and a read-only Subject Profile tab.

Implement Online Request

This is an approval task that allows the technical participant to implement the task and to add a comment to the task history. It has an Implement Request tab with a history display and a history editor for comments, a read-only Subject Profile tab, and an Assignees tab.

Online Request Process

The online request tasks are controlled by a workflow process template called Consultation Process, shown as it appears in WorkPoint Designer:



The Consultation Process includes four manual activities which correspond to approval tasks in the online request implementation:

- An activity for the business approver, who rejects the work item, approves the work item and passes it on to the technician, or requests further clarification from the consultant.
- An activity for the consultant, who clarifies the work item and sends it back to the business approver.
- An activity for a default approver, who takes over if either the business approver or consultant cannot be contacted.
- An activity for the technician, who implements the request and completes the work item.

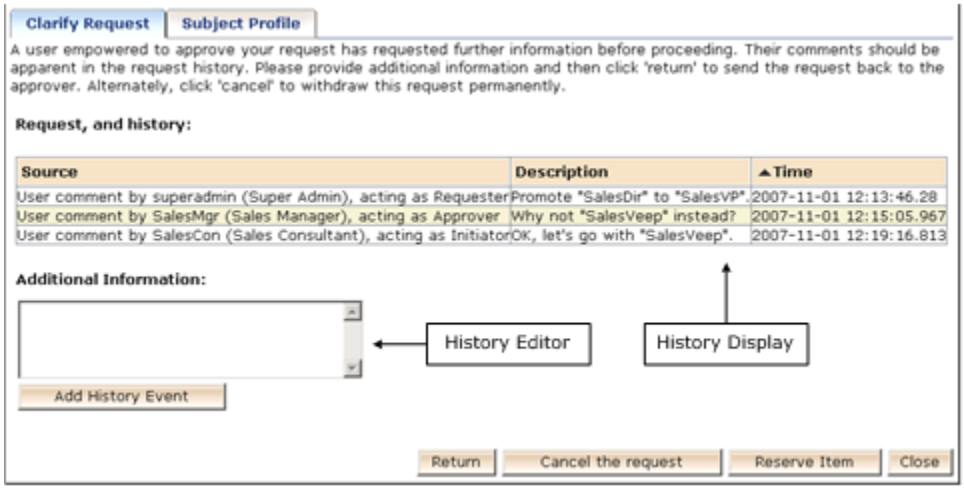
Online Request History

The online request history feature allows participants to create a record of work item actions. As responsibility for the work item passes from one participant to another, the new participant is able to review work item history before taking action.

Two controls are used to implement online request history:

- The history display is a read-only table containing details of previous history entries in chronological order.
- The history editor is a text box for creating new history entries. It also has an optional button for adding multiple entries without submitting the work item.

By default, the history editor and history display appear on the Request tabs for all tasks associated with the online request implementation. The following screen illustrates the history controls in the Clarify Online Request task:



Using Online Requests

The following steps describe the online request workflow process. For each step, the generated IM task appears in parentheses. At every step in the process, the participant can add a comment in the history editor. This comment appears in the history display to the next participant in the workflow process.

1. The Task Initiator requests a modification to a CA Identity Manager user (Create Online Request).
2. The Business Approver receives a work item, and does one of the following:
   - Approves the work item (Approve Online Request).
   - Rejects the work item and terminates the workflow process. No new task is generated.
   - Requests a clarification from the consultant (Clarify Online Request).
3. The Consultant receives a work item, and does one of the following:
   - Adds a clarification and returns the work item to the Business Approver. No new task is generated.
   - Cancels the work item and terminates the workflow process. No new task is generated.
4. The Technician receives a work item, and implements the request (Implement Online Request).

Workflow Action Buttons

Approval tasks in CA Identity Manager historically have Approve and Reject action buttons that appear on their corresponding work item screens. Workflow action buttons allow administrators to extend the functionality of CA Identity Manager tasks and workflows by adding action buttons to approval tasks, and by removing or modifying existing buttons. (The standard Approve and Reject buttons are implemented in the same manner as custom workflow action buttons.)

For example, a workflow process might require an action that allows mid-level participants to escalate certain cases to a more senior participant for final approval or rejection. These mid-level participants could add a comment or recommendation using the history editor, and then send the work item to the senior participant to review and approve or reject.

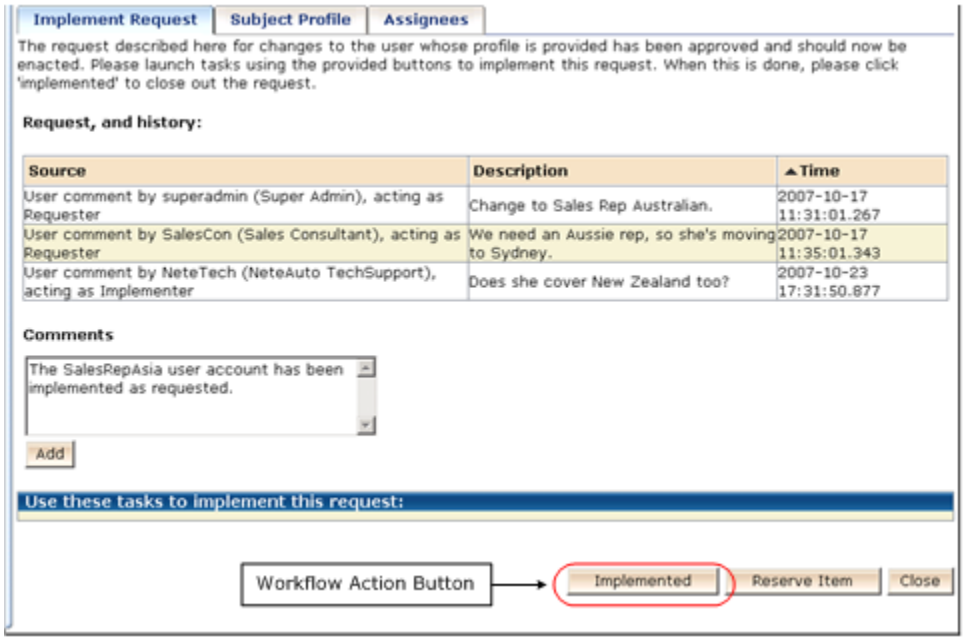
Adding or removing workflow action buttons requires appropriate changes to the WorkPoint workflow process that provides the business logic for handling these new actions.

More Information:

Button Configuration In CA Identity Manager (see page 328)
Workflow Buttons in Approval Tasks (see page 327)
Button Configuration in WorkPoint Designer (see page 330)

Workflow Buttons in Approval Tasks

Workflow action buttons correspond to transition nodes pointing away from manual activity nodes on a WorkPoint process diagram. For example, in the Consultation Process, the Technician activity node has a single transition called Implemented. This corresponds to the "Implemented" button on the Implement Online Request approval task, shown in the following figure:



Note: The "Reserve Item" and "Close" buttons are governed by CA Identity Manager programming logic and are not under workflow control.

More Information:

Workflow Action Buttons (see page 326)
Button Configuration In CA Identity Manager (see page 328)

Button Configuration In CA Identity Manager

To configure a workflow action button, click the button named Workflow Action Buttons on the Profile tab of an Approval task.

The button Profile tab has a table with a row for each workflow action button. Each button row has the following four properties, which correspond to columns in the table:

Display Name

The name that appears on the button in the approval screen. The name is a conditionally localized value, which can be either a string or a key for a localized string in a resource file.

Action

The value that is passed back to the workflow process when the option is selected. This value is an attribute of the corresponding transition node in the WorkPoint process diagram. The value is a non-localized string. The default settings are “approved” and “rejected”.

Tool Tip

A short description (or tool tip) of the button action which appears when a user hovers the mouse cursor over the button. The tool tip is a conditionally localized value, which can be either a string or a key for a localized string in a resource file.

Long Description

A longer description of the button action which adds a message describing the action on the "View Submitted Task" screen. If the description is blank, the message that is displayed on the "View Submitted Task" screen is the button name. The name is a conditionally localized value, which can be either a string or a key for a localized string in a resource file.

More Information:

Button Configuration in WorkPoint Designer (see page 330)

Adding Workflow Action Buttons

To add a new button to an existing workflow process, perform the following high-level steps:

1. Add the workflow button in CA Identity Manager.

   For instructions, see How to Add a Workflow Action Button (see page 329).

2. If necessary, add localization keys.

   For instructions, see the *Configuration Guide*.

3. Add any new required nodes in WorkPoint Designer.

   For instructions, see the WorkPoint Designer online help.

4. Define a script in the WorkPoint Designer transition node.

   For instructions, see Button Configuration in WorkPoint Designer (see page 330).

More Information:

Button Configuration in WorkPoint Designer (see page 330)
How to Add a Workflow Action Button (see page 329)

How to Add a Workflow Action Button

ou can add workflow action buttons to approval tasks in CA Identity Manager.

To add a workflow action button to an admin task

1. In the User Console, select Roles and Tasks, Admin Tasks, Modify Admin Task.

   The Select Admin Task screen appears.

2. Search for the approval task, and click Select.

   The Modify Admin Task screen appears.

3. On the Profile tab, click the button named Workflow Action Buttons.

   The Workflow Action Button Profile tab appears.

4. Click "Add Button" to add a new button to the approval task.

5. Enter the button property information.

6. Click OK.

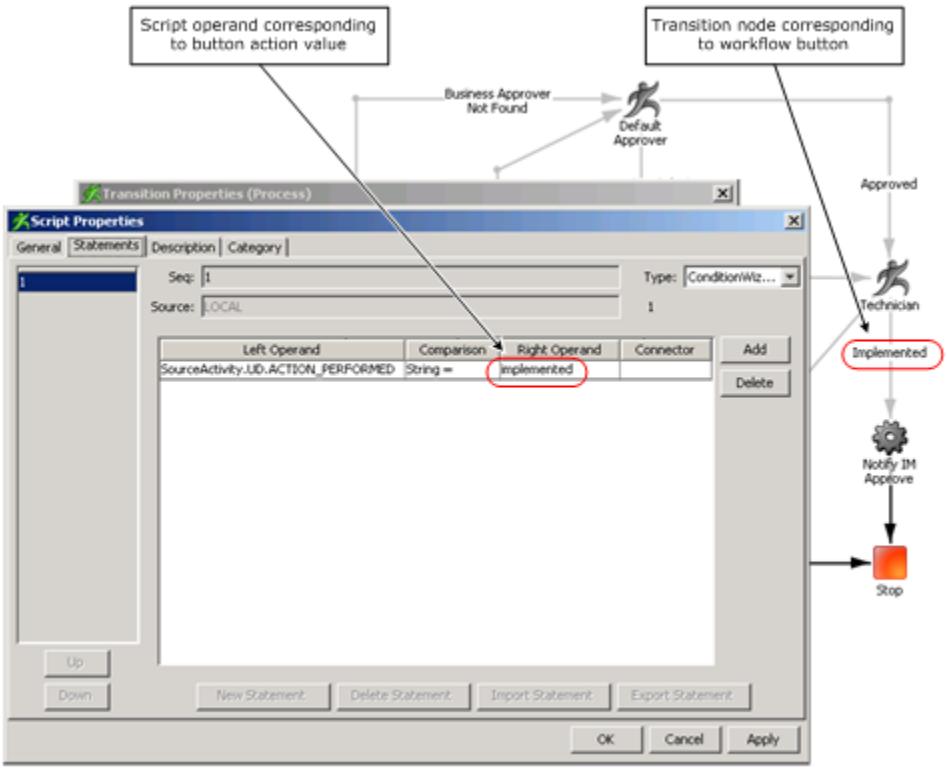
   CA Identity Manager saves the new button information.

7. Click Submit.

   CA Identity Manager processes the task modification.

Button Configuration in WorkPoint Designer

In WorkPoint Designer, workflow action buttons are configured using transition node script properties, as shown in the following figure:



By default, workflow action buttons use the following script properties to perform a string comparison:

- Left Operand--ACTION_PEFORMED, which is defined in the User Data properties of the preceding manual activity node.
- Right Operand--The Action value of the button, which is defined in the button profile tab of the User Console.

Note: See the WorkPoint Designer online help for information about activity node and transition node scripts and properties.

More Information:

Button Configuration In CA Identity Manager (see page 328)

Work Lists and Work Items

A *work list* is a list of work items (or approval tasks) that appears in the User Console of the participant authorized to approve the task. Work items correspond to manual activities in a workflow process. Work items are represented as rows in the work list.

Work items can be added to a work list in the following ways:

- A participant resolver determining a list of approvers.
- Receiving delegated work items from another user.
- Reassigning it to another user.

Work items can be removed from a work list in the following ways:

- Completing (approving or rejecting) the work item.
- Reassigning it to another user.
- Reserving it. This removes it from the work list of all other participants.

Note: When you accept or reject a work item, the change is not immediate. For example, if you reject a work item, that item still appears in you work list until the workflow process records the information and progresses the process to the next node.

The information tabs that appear on a work item depend on whether the work item was generated by workflow under task-level or event-level control:

- **Profile**—Provides profile information about the object affected by the event (event-level only).
- **Task Details**—Provides detailed information for all events within the task (task-level only).
- **Approvers**—Lists all individual approvers and delegators for the task or event (task-level and event-level)

Displaying a Work List

Your work list appears automatically when you log into the User Console if you have been assigned as a participant to approve tasks (or work items) initiated by other users.

To display your work list manually

1. In the User Console, select Home, View My Work List.

   Your work list appears.

2. Click the name of a work item to display it.

   The selected work item appears.

Administrators can manage work items for users over whom they have scope.

Note: Managing a user's work items allows administrators to reserve a work item. Viewing a user's work list does not allow work item changes of any kind.

To view the work list of another user

1. In the User Console, select Users, Manage Work Items, View User's Work List.

   A select user screen appears.

2. Search for the user whose work list you want to view, and click Select.

   The user's work list screen appears.

To manage work items for another user

1. In the User Console, select Users, Manage Work Items, Manage User's Work Items.

   A select user screen appears.

2. Search for the user whose work items you want to manage, and click Select.

   The user's work list screen appears.

3. Click the name of a work item to display it.

   The selected work item appears.

Enabling Work List Search Screen

You can enable the pre-configured search screens to find work items.

1. In the Management Console, go to in Home, Environments, <environment>, Roles.
2. Click Import. Import the file worklistsearch.xml from this location:
   `<INSTALL_LOCATION>\CA\IdentityManager\IAM Suite\Identity Manager\tools\worklistsearch`
3. Click Finish.
4. Log into the CA Identity Manager environment.
5. In the User Console, select Roles and Tasks, Admin Tasks, Modify Admin Task.
6. Search for and select the View My Work List task.
7. Select the Search tab. Click Browse.

   A list of screen definitions appears.
8. Click New.

   A list of new screen types appears.
9. Select Work List Search Screen and click OK.
10. Enter details to configure the work list search screen and click OK.

    The new search screen is added to the list of screen definitions

Reserving Work Items

You can reserve a work item to "check it out" and remove it from the work list of other participants. Reserving a work item holds it for the user performing the reservation.

If the reserving user releases the work item, it becomes available again on the work list of other participants. If the reserving user approves or rejects the work item, it is completed, and no longer available to other participants.

More Information:

Delegation and Reserved Work Items (see page 334)
Reassignment and Reserved Work Items (see page 334)

Reassignment and Reserved Work Items

If a user has a work item reserved while it is reassigned, the user keeps it reserved. But if the user then releases that work item, he loses access to it.

An administrator can reassign, reserve, or release another user's work item, but cannot approve or reject another user's work item. Only the assigned work item participant can do that.

More Information:

Reassigning Work Items (see page 340)

Delegation and Reserved Work Items

While a delegation is active, either the delegate or the delegator may reserve a work item. A work item reserved by one user cannot appear on another user’s work list.

For example, if a delegate has a work item reserved while the delegation is withdrawn, the delegate keeps the work item reserved. But if the delegate then releases that work item, he loses access to it.

If a user who is a delegate is deleted while the delegate has a work item reserved, the delegate still retains the work item. If the delegate then approves the work item, auditing can no longer determine who delegated it.

If a delegate has a work item reserved while the delegation is withdrawn, the delegate retains access until the work item is completed or released.

More Information:

Delegating Work Items (see page 335)
Reserving Work Items (see page 333)

How to Reserve or Release a Work Item

You reserve a work item to "check it out" and remove it from the work list of other participants.

You release a reserved work item to make it available on the work list of other participants.

Note: The only way to free a reserved work item is to explicitly release it.

To reserve or release a work item

1. In the User Console, select Home, View My Work List.

   Your work list appears.

2. Select the work item you want to reserve or release.

   The expanded work item screen appears.

3. Click Reserve Item or Release Item.

   CA Identity Manager confirms your action.

Delegating Work Items

Work item *delegation* lets a user (the delegator) specify that another user (the delegate) is allowed to approve tasks in the delegator's work list. A delegator can assign work items to another approver during periods when the delegator is “out of the office.” Delegators retain full access to their work items during the delegation period.

Delegated work items are not changed in any way. Logging indicates whether a work item was delegated.

Delegation works by allowing the delegate to “impersonate” the delegator and view the items on the delegator's work list. When viewing a work list, delegates see their own work items as well as the delegator's work items.

Delegation is not transitive. A delegate can only see work items that the delegator has assigned directly. For example, If user A delegates work items to user B, and user B delegates work items to user C, user C can only see work items belonging to user B, and not any work items that may have been work items delegated to user B by user A.

More Information:

Delegation and Reserved Work Items (see page 334)

Delegation Well-Known Attribute

Delegation uses the following well-known attribute:

%DELEGATORS%

This well-known attribute stores the names of users who are delegating to the user with the attribute, as well as the time when the delegation was created.

How to Enable Delegation

You must have workflow approval delegation enabled before you can use a delegate work items to another user. By default, delegation is disabled.

To enable workflow approval delegation

1. Open the Management Console by entering the following URL in a browser:

   `http://hostname/iam/immanage`

   hostname

   Defines the fully qualified domain name of the server where CA Identity Manager is installed. For example, myserver.mycompany.com:port.

2. Click Environments, and select the name of the appropriate CA Identity Manager environment.
3. Click Advanced Settings, and then click Workflow Approval Delegation.
4. Select the Enabled check box, and then click Save.

More Information:

How to Delegate for Yourself (see page 336)
How to Delegate for Another User (see page 339)

How to Delegate for Yourself

You can delegate work items to another user during periods when you are “out of the office.” Delegators still retain full access to their work items during the delegation period.

To delegate work items for yourself

1. In the User Console, select Home, Out of Office Assistant.

   The Out of Office Assistant screen appears.

2. Click Add User.

   A select user screen appears.

3. Search for and select one or more users to act as delegate.

   The users are added to the delegate list.

4. Click Submit.

   The task is submitted and the delegation is saved.

Note: Users who are already delegates do not appear in the search results when adding a delegate.

More Information:

How to Enable Delegation (see page 336)

Time-Based Work Item Delegation

In previous releases, you could specify the start time, but not the end time for delegations. Newly created delegations have their dates for delegation set to true, with the Default start time set to now.

At modification time, start and end dates can be changed. The default end time is one week from start date.

To change the Start or End dates, do the following:

1. From the User Console's Home tab, select Out of Office Assistant.
2. Click the pencil icon next to the User ID whose delegation information want to change.

   The Edit Delegation Details screen appears.
3. Click on the Calendar next to Start Date to change the delegation start date.

   Note: An error message is displayed when the Delegation Start Date selected is before the current date.
4. If you want to select an end date, check the Has End Date checkbox.

   The End Date field is now available to set the end date.
5. Click on the Calendar next to End Date to set a date for the delegation to end.
6. Once the dates have been set, Click OK.

Alternately, you can do the same from the Delegate Work Items tab when Creating or Modifying a user.

Enable Time-Based Work Item Delegation

To enable time based work item delegation in an existing environment on upgrade, do the following:

From the Management Console

1. Navigate to the Environments page.
2. Drill down into the selected Environment, Advanced Settings, Work Item Delegation.
3. Uncheck Enabled check box.
4. Save the changes and restart the Environment.
5. Drill down into Advanced Settings, Work Item Delegation.
6. Check Enabled checkbox.
7. Save the changes and restart the Environment.

Note: This procedure is for existing environments only. Time-based workflow item delegation is enable for new environments.

Out of Office Assistant Screen

You use the following Out of Office Assistant screen to add and remove delegate for yourself:

The Out of Office Assistant screen displays a list of your current delegates. In addition to columns that identify the delegate, three additional columns are included in the list:

Start Date

Displays the date the delegation was created.

End Date

Displays the date the delegation is to end.

Has Delegates

Indicates whether the delegate has delegated work items to another user.

When you click the pencil icon next to the selected User ID, the Edit Delegation Details screen appears where you can change the Start Date and specify the End Date for the delegation.

How to Delegate for Another User

Administrators can delegate work items from one user (the delegator) to another. For example, a user may be out of the office unexpectedly, or an administrator may need to assign a large workload to multiple users.

Administrators can only delegate work items for users over whom they have scope. Similarly, they can only add or remove users they manage from the list of delegates.

To delegate work items for another user

1. In the User Console, select Users, Manage Work Items, Delegate Work Items.

   A select user screen appears.

2. Search for the user whose work items you want to delegate (the delegator), and click Select.

   A delegate work items screen appears.

3. Click Add User.

   A select user screen appears.

4. Search for and select one or more users to act as delegate.

   The users are added to the delegate list.

5. Click Submit.

   The task is submitted and the delegation is saved.

Note: Users who are already delegates do not appear in the search results when adding a delegate.

More Information:

How to Enable Delegation (see page 336)

How to Remove a Delegation

If a user logs into CA Identity Manager with delegations in place, CA Identity Manager displays the following reminder:

```
You have delegations in place. Please check that they are still required.
```

To remove a delegation for yourself

1. In the User Console, select Home, Out of Office Assistant.

   The Out of Office Assistant screen appears.

2. Click the minus sign (-) for delegates you want to remove.

   The delegates disappear from the list.

3. Click Submit.

   The task is submitted and the delegation is removed.

To remove a delegation for another user

1. In the User Console, select Users, Manage Work Items, Delegate Work Items.

   A user search screen appears.

2. Search for and select the user whose delegations you want to remove.

   The delegates list appears.

3. Click the minus sign (-) for delegates you want to remove.

   The delegates disappear from the list.

4. Click Submit.

   The task is submitted and the delegation is removed.

Note: You can only remove a delegate if you have scope over that user.

Reassigning Work Items

Reassignment allows users and administrators to change the assignees of a work item after it is created. An administrator can:

- View another user's work list
- Add and remove work item assignees
- Change the reserve status of work items

For example, an administrator can reassign a work item or release a reserved work item from a user who is not acting on it.

If a user has a work item reserved while it is reassigned, the user keeps it reserved. But if the user then releases that work item, he loses access to it.

If a delegate has a work item reserved while the delegation is withdrawn, the delegate retains access until the work item is completed or released.

More Information:

Reassignment and Reserved Work Items (see page 334)

The Approvers Tab

You perform reassignment on the Work Item Approvers tab, which displays a list of current work item approvers (or assignees). When you perform reassignment, you assign the open work item to all approvers in the list. Therefore, to reassign a work item to a new assignee, you must also remove the current assignee.

How to Reassign Work Items

Reassigning a work item from one user to another is a two-step process:

- Select a new approver.
- Remove the current approver.

Note: You must have scope over users to whom you want to reassign.

To reassign your own work item

1. Select Home, View My Work List.

   Your work list appears.

2. Select a work item to expand it.

3. Select the Approvers tab.

   The list of all current approvers appears, including the user whose work list you are managing.

4. Click Add Assignees.

   A select user screen appears.

5. Search for and select one or more users to whom you want to reassign.

   Note: For ALL and SUBSET approval modes, you can only reassign a work item to *one* user.

6. Click the minus sign button (-) to remove yourself as an assignee.

7. Click Perform Reassignment.

   The work item appears on the work lists of the reassigned users.

Note: An administrator can reassign, reserve, or release another user's work item, but cannot approve or reject another user's work item. Only the owner of the work item can do that.

To reassign another user's work item

1. Select Users, Manage Work Items, Manage User's Work Items.

   A select user screen appears.

2. Search for the user whose work items you want to reassign, and click Select.

   The Manage User's Work Items screen appears.

3. Select a work item to expand it.

4. Select the Approvers tab.

   The list of all current approvers appears, including the user whose work list you are managing.

5. Click Add Assignees.

   A select user screen appears.

6. Search for and select one or more users to whom you want to reassign.

7. Click the minus sign button (-) to remove the current assignee.

8. Click Perform Reassignment.

   The work item appears on the work lists of the reassigned users.

Bulk Operations on Work Items

With this release of CA Identity Manager, the following bulk operations can be performed on selected work items:

- Approve
- Reject
- Reserve
- Release

In the User Console, the Configure Work List tab has been enhanced to include a new Supports bulk workflow operations check box. When this check box is enabled, the user can bulk approve, reject, release, and reserve work items that they own or work items from any delegators. Administrators can only perform these bulk operations on work items using the Manage User's Work Items task.

Note: Bulk operations cannot be enabled for any View type tasks, such as View My Work List.

Configure Work List Tab for Bulk Operations

To configure the Work List tab to support bulk operations on work items, follow this procedure.

From the Roles and Task Tab in the User Console

1. Select either:
   - Roles and Tasks.
   - Tasks, Roles and Tasks.
2. Select Admin Tasks, Manage Admin Tasks.
3. Click Search.
4. Select Manage User's Work Items.
5. From the Tabs Tab, click the pencil icon next to Work List.

   The Configure Work List screen appears.
6. Select Support bulk workflow operations.
7. Save the changes and submit the task.

   Bulk operations on work items are now available.

Chapter 12: Email Notifications

This section contains the following topics:

Email Notifications in CA Identity Manager (see page 346)
How to Select an Email Notification Method (see page 347)
Configure SMTP Settings (see page 348)
How to Configure a Unique Administrator Email Address for Each Environment (see page 350)
How to Create Email Notification Policies (see page 351)
How to Use Email Templates (see page 359)

Email Notifications in CA Identity Manager

Email notifications inform CA Identity Manager users of tasks and events in the system. For example, CA Identity Manager can send an email to approvers when an event or task requires an approval.

CA Identity Manager provides the following methods for configuring email notifications:

- **Email Notification Policies**

  Email notification policies enable business administrators to create, view, modify, and delete email notifications by using tasks in the User Console. No coding is required to create email notifications.

  Administrators can define the content of an email, when it is sent, and who receives it. The content of the email, which is defined in an HTML editor, can contain dynamic information, such as the current date or event information, which CA Identity Manager populates when the email is sent. For example, you can configure an email notification that is sent to an approver when a new user is created. The email can contain the user's login information, date of hire, and manager.

  Note: Email notification policies are Policy Xpress policies (see page 459) that are created and managed by a separate set of tasks.

- **Email templates**

  In this method, email notifications are generated from email templates. CA Identity Manager provides default email templates that can used as installed, or that can be customized by system administrators. These administrators use an Email Template API to specify dynamic content, such as the list of recipients, and information about the event that triggers the email.

CA Identity Manager can generate email notifications when the following occurs:

- An event requiring approval or rejection by a workflow approver is pending

  Note: If you have a Workpoint approval process that has more than one approval activity, the email notification configured in the User Console tasks sends a notification for each activity. If you use the email templates for the same notification, only one email is sent to approvers (when the event reaches the pending state).

- An approver approves an event or task
- An approver rejects an event or task
- An event or task starts, fails, or completes
- A user is created or modified

To use CA Identity Manager email notifications, configure your SMTP settings (see page 348). If you are using the email template method, you also enable email notifications in CA Identity Manager.

How to Select an Email Notification Method

The following table summarizes the differences between email notification policies and the email templates:

Activity	Email Management Tasks	Email Templates
Configuring email notifications	Administrators use admin tasks in the User Console to create, modify, view, and delete email notifications.	Administrators modify default templates in the CA Identity Manager Administrative Tools.
Configuring when emails are sent	CA Identity Manager can generate email notifications when certain events or tasks occur. The email management tasks and the email templates support the same events and tasks, however, the email management tasks provide more granularity in some cases. Email notifications are supported for the following tasks and events: ■ An event requiring approval or rejection by a workflow approver is pending ■ **Note:** If you have a Workpoint approval process that has more than one approval activity, the email notification configured using the email management tasks sends a notification for each activity. If you use the email templates for the same notification, only one email is sent to approvers (when the event reaches the pending state). ■ An approver approves an event or task ■ An approver rejects an event or task ■ An event or task starts, fails, or completes ■ A user is created or modified	
Adding dynamic content to emails	Administrators add dynamic content to the body of an email message by selecting from a list of options in the Content tab of the Create Email or Modify Email tasks. CA Identity Manager automatically populates the dynamic content based on information in the event ot task that triggers the notification.	Administrators use the Email Template API to customize the default email templates, which are used to generate email notifications.

Activity	Email Management Tasks	Email Templates
Supporting existing email notifications	Email notifications that are configured using the email management tasks are based on Policy Xpress policies. If you upgraded from CA Identity Manager Option Pack 1 to CA Identity Manager 12.6.5, the email notifications that you configured in Policy Xpress will continue to work. However, you manage those email notifications using the email management tasks, instead of Policy Xpress.	Email notifications that you created using the email template method in previous versions of CA Identity Manager will continue to work in CA Identity Manager 12.6.5.

Configure SMTP Settings

Before enabling email notifications, configure the SMTP settings. See the following sections to configure SMTP settings for your application server.

Configure SMTP Settings on JBoss

1. In a text editor, open the mail service deployment descriptor as follows:

   Single node: *jboss_home*\server\default\deploy\mail-service.xml

   Cluster: *jboss_home*\server\all\deploy\mail-service.xml

2. Modify the mail.smtp.host property with the name of your SMTP server as follows:

   ```
   <-- Change to the SMTP gateway server -->
   <property name="mail.smtp.host" value="your_smtp_server "/>
   ```

   For example:

   ```
   <property name="mail.smtp.host" value="smtp.mailserver.company.com"/>
   ```

3. Save the mail-service.xml file.

4. In a text editor, open the following email properties file:

   Single node:
   jboss_home\server\default\deploy\iam_im.ear\config\com\netegrity\config\email.properties

   Cluster:*jboss_home*\server\all\deploy\iam_im.ear\config\com\netegrity\config\email.properties

5. To set the email return address that workflow generated email uses, locate the admin.email.address property and set the value to the appropriate email address. For example:
   `admin.email.address=admin@company.com`
6. If you are using the email template method, enable email notifications in the Management Console.

   You do not need to enable email notifications in the Management Console if you are using email notification policies.

Configure SMTP Settings on WebLogic

You configure email settings in the WebLogic Server Administration Console and in an email.properties file.

To configure email settings for WebLogic

1. In the WebLogic Server Administration Console, create a mail session with the following properties:
   - **mail.smtp.host** property: Set this value to your SMTP server. For example, mail.smtp.host=mymailserver.company.com
   - **mail.transport.protocol** property: Set this value to SMTP. For example, mail.transport.protocol=smtp
   - **JNDI Name**: nete/Mail
   - **Target**: the WebLogic server name
2. In a text editor, open the following email properties file for CA Identity Manager:

   weblogic_domain\applications\iam.ear\config\com\netegrity\config\email.properties
3. Set the email return address used by workflow generated emails by locating the admin.email.address property and setting the value to the appropriate email address. For example:
   `admin.email.address=admin@company.com`
4. Enable email notification in the Management Console.

   Note: You do not need to enable email notifications in the Management Console if you are using email notification policies.

Configure SMTP Settings on WebSphere

The imsSetup utility that you run after installing the CA Identity Manager components configures a new mail session object called mailMail.

For the email notification feature to work correctly, specify the server that WebSphere connects to when sending email in the Mail Transport Host field for the mailMail session.

The mailMail session is located in Resources, Mail Providers, Built-in Mail Provider, Mail Sessions, mailMail in the WebSphere Administrative Console.

Note: To view the mailMail object, change the Scope to Server in the Mail Session screen. If you do not change the scope to Server, the mailMail object is not displayed.

For more information on configuring a WebSphere mail provider, see the WebSphere documentation.

If you are using the email template method, enable email notification in the Management Console after you configure the SMTP settings.

Note: You do not need to enable email notifications in the Management Console if you are using email notification policies.

How to Configure a Unique Administrator Email Address for Each Environment

You can configure a unique administrator email address for each CA Identity Manager environment.

Follow these steps::

1. In the Management Console, click Environments.

   A list of CA Identity Manager environments is displayed.
2. Select a CA Identity Manager environment.
3. Go to Advanced Settings, E-mail.
4. In the Administrator Email address, specify an email address for that environment.
5. Click Save.
6. Click Restart environment.

   You can now segregate mails from different CA Identity Manager environments as you receive email notifications from a different email address for each CA Identity Manager environment.

How to Create Email Notification Policies

You can use the User Console to create email notification policies that send emails when certain actions take place. For example, you can create an email notification policy that sends an email to notify approvers when a new user is created.

Follow these steps:

1. Select System, Email, Create Email.
2. Select one of the following options:
   - Create a new object of type Managed Email
   - Create a copy of an object of type Managed Email

     Uses an existing email notification policy as a template for creating a policy.
3. Provide basic information about the email notification policy in the Profile tab.
4. Specify when CA Identity Manager sends the email in the When to Send tab.

   The When to Send tab provides several options to specify the actions that trigger email notifications.
5. Specify the recipients of the email in the Recipients tab.
6. Define the subject and content of the email in the Content tab.

   You can specify dynamic content, such as the date, task or event name, and user attributes in the email content.

More Information:

When to Send Tab (see page 353)
Recipients Tab (see page 354)
Content (see page 356)
Email Notification Profile Tab (see page 352)

Email Notification Profile Tab

The Profile tab in email management tasks allows you to specify basic information about an email notification policy. This tab includes the following fields that:

Email Name

Identifies the email notification policy in the User Console.

Note: The email name is not displayed when the email is sent. The name is only used to manage the email notification policy in the User Console.

Category

Groups email notification policies to simplify management.

Specify an existing category by selecting it from the drop-down list, or select the second option button and enter the name of a new category.

Description

Describes the email notification policy to administrators.

The description is not displayed when the email is sent.

Enabled

Specifies that CA Identity Manager will send the email when the conditions defined on the When to Send tab are met.

Custom Data

Creates a custom data element in Policy Xpress that can be used to configure custom recipients or custom content.

Custom data elements can also be used as parameters in other data elements.

Note: Data (see page 465) provides more information about data elements.

When you click Custom Data, CA Identity Manager opens a screen where you can add new data elements.

Entry Rules

Defines rules for when CA Identity Manager sends email notifications in cases where the default rules in the When to Send tab are not granular enough.

For example, the When to Send tab provides a default rule that sends email when any attribute of a user profile is modified. If you want CA Identity Manager to send an email only when a user's department changes, you can create a custom entry rule. (In this case, you create a custom data element that identifies when the department changes, and then you create an entry rule that uses the custom data element you created.)

Note: The section Entry Rules (see page 467) provides more information.

More information:

Data Elements (see page 465)
Entry Rules (see page 467)

When to Send Tab

CA Identity Manager provides several default options that determine when email is sent. Some of these options require additional information, such as a task or event name. For example, sending an email when a task starts requires selecting the task that triggers the email.

You can select one or more of the following When to Send options:

User Created

Sends an email when a user has been created. The email is sent when the CreateUserEvent reaches completion.

User Modified

Sends an email when a user has been modified. The email is sent when the ModifyUserEvent reaches completion.

Workflow Pending

Sends an email when a workflow process assigns an approver. When you select this option, specify the applicable workflow process. Email that is defined with this policy sends individual email to approvers at every step of the selected workflow process.

Workflow Pending Email

Sends an email when a workflow process reaches a specified activity. When you select this option, specify the applicable workflow process. Email that is defined with this policy sends individual email notification for each approval step.

Event Started

Sends an email when an event reaches the Before state. When you select this option, specify the event.

Note: If you specify Event Started, and the email fails to send, the event associated with the notification will not execute.

Event Ended

Sends an email when an event reaches the After state. When you select this option, specify the event.

Event Approved

Sends an email when an event reaches the Approved state. When you select this option, specify the event.

Event Rejected

Sends an email when an event reaches the Rejected state. When you select this option, specify the event.

Event Failed

Sends an email when an event fails. When you select this option, specify the event.

Task Submitted

Sends an email when the task starts processing. When you select this option, specify the task.

Task Complete

Sends an email when the task completes. When you select this option, specify the task.

Task Failed

Sends an email if the task fails. When you select this option, specify the task.

Recipients Tab

You can configure multiple recipients for the To, CC, or BCC fields of an email. The recipient list may be static, or it may depend on the type of action that triggers the email, and the users involved.

To specify recipients, select the Edit icon next to the To, CC, or BCC field in the Recipients tab. Then, select one of the following options, which allow you to configure the list of recipients:

Workflow Approvers

Sends the email to all approvers in the workflow process. This option is only applicable if the email is sent for a workflow pending event.

Manager

Sends the email to the manager of the user whom the task has been performed on.

Note: To use the Manager recipient option, configure the manager attribute for the environment. To configure the manager attribute, go to Environments, *EnvironmentName*, Advanced Settings, Miscellaneous in the Management Console. Set managerattribute to the name of the physical attribute that stores the unique name of a user's manager.

For relational databases, specify the attribute using the following format:

tablename.attribute

Group members

Sends the email to all members of a group. Selecting this option opens a drop-down list with available group names.

Role members

Sends the email to all members of an admin role. Selecting this option opens a drop-down list with available role names.

Static address

Sends the email to a selected email address. You can specify the email address in the additional text area available.

Note: Do not specify more than one address in the text area.

User

Sends the email to the user whom the task was performed on.

Initiator

Sends the email to the person who made the request.

Custom

Allows you to select a custom data element to define the recipients.

When you select the custom option, a drop-down list appears with the custom data elements that are available for use.

Note: The section Data (see page 465) provides more information about data elements.

Content

You can define the subject and body of an email using simple text, or add them with dynamic content that is calculated when the email is sent.

The subject line is a plain text field where you can write your message. This message is the subject of the email.

The body is displayed in an HTML editor. You can insert and format any text to form the email body.

To include dynamic content, you select options from a drop-down list. The editor adds dynamic content indicators, which resemble the following, where the cursor is located:

{*type*}

type represents one of the supported dynamic content types.

For example, when you select the Attribute dynamic content type and specify the FirstName attribute, the HTML editor displays the following in the Content tab:

{'Attribute: FirstName'}

Note: To add dynamic content to the subject line, use the drop-down list below the subject line. To add dynamic content in the email body, use the drop-down list below the content box.

When the email message is sent, CA Identity Manager replaces the dynamic content with the appropriate text. The text retains the formatting, such as bold characters, specified in the HTML editor.

Dynamic content types include the following:

Date

Specifies today's date in the format you specify.

Task

Specifies the task for which the email is sent.

Object Name

Specifies the name of the object in the event that triggers the email. If the event is a user event, this field is the user login name.

The object can be something other than a user. For example, it can be any managed object such as a group, admin role, and so on.

Attribute

Specifies the value of one of the user attributes. The user is the subject of the task. This option requires selecting the attribute from a drop-down list.

Manager Attribute

Specifies the value of one of the attributes of the user's manager. The user is the subject of the task. This option requires selecting the attribute from a drop down list.

Note: To use the Manager recipient option, configure the manager attribute for the environment. To configure the manager attribute, go to Environments, *EnvironmentName*, Advanced Settings, Miscellaneous in the Management Console. Set managerattribute to the name of the physical attribute that stores the unique name of a user's manager.

For relational databases, specify the attribute using the following format:

tablename.attribute

Custom

Allows you to select a custom data element to define the recipients.

When you select the custom option, a drop-down list appears with the custom data elements that are available for use.

Note: The section Data (see page 465) provides more information about data elements.

Modify Email Notification Policies

You modify an existing email notification policy to suit your business requirements.

To modify an email notification policy

1. Select System, Email, Create Email.

   CA Identity Manager displays a search screen.

2. Search for and select the email notification policy to modify.
3. Change the settings in the Profile, When to Send, Recipients, and Content tabs as needed.

Disable Email Notification Policies

You can enable or disable email notification policies using the Enabled check box on the Profile tab when you create or modify an email notification policy. When an email notification policy is disabled, the selected email is not active and no email is sent.

Note: Email notification policies are enabled by default.

Use Case: Sending a Welcome Email

When a new employee is hired, Forward, Inc, wants to send an email to that user welcoming them to the company. The email must provide important information to the new employee, such as links to the employee home page, and information about their manager and department.

To create the email, the Human Resources administrator uses the Create Email task in the User Console to configure the following settings:

- On the When to Send tab, select User Created.
- On the Recipients tab, complete the following steps:
  - Click the Edit icon next to the To field.

    Select User, then click the plus sign. Select the Manager using the same method, then click OK.
  - Click the Edit icon next to the CC field.

    Select Initiator, click the plus sign, and then click OK to send a copy of the email to the user who created the employee in CA Identity Manager.
- On the Content tab, complete the following steps:
  - In the Subject field, enter the following text: Welcome,

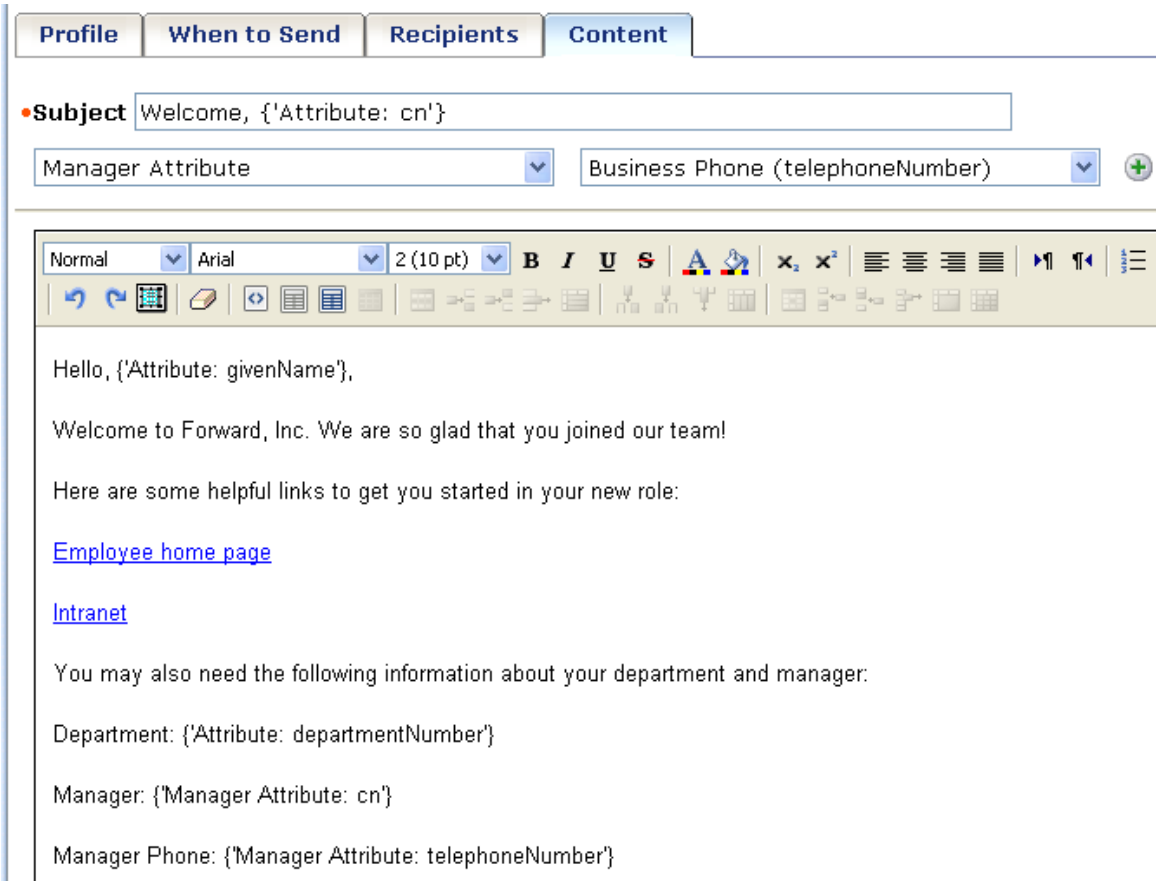
    With the cursor at the end of the text that you entered, select Attribute from the drop-down list. Then, select Full Name from the second drop-down list, then click the plus sign.

    The subject line resembles the following:

    Welcome, {'Attribute: eTFullName'}

    Note: The attribute name depends on the user store and attribute that you are using.
  - In the Content box, add any welcome text. Include links to the Employee portal and use the dynamic content options under the content box to display the user's department, manager, and manager's telephone number, as follows:

Equation 1: Screen shows the Content tab



How to Use Email Templates

CA Identity Manager includes default email templates that you can use to generate email messages. You can use the default templates as installed, or customize them to suit your business needs.

To use email templates

1. Configure SMTP settings to enable CA Identity Manager to send email notifications.
2. Enable email notification in the Management Console (see page 360).
3. Configure an event or task to send an email. (see page 360)
4. (Optional) Customize the default templates (see page 365), as needed.

Enable Email Notification

You can enable or disable email notification for CA Identity Manager environment. If you enable email notifications, CA Identity Manager sends email notifications for events and tasks you specify.

Note: To use the Forgotten Password feature, enable email notification.

Before you enable email notifications in CA Identity Manager, configure the SMTP settings (see page 348) for your application server.

To enable email notifications

1. In the Management Console, click Environments.

   A list of CA Identity Manager environments is displayed.
2. Click the appropriate CA Identity Manager environment.
3. Go to Advanced Settings, Email.
4. Select the Enabled check box.
5. Configure the events and tasks that trigger email (see page 360).
6. Click Save.
7. Restart the instance of the application server on which CA Identity Manager is installed.

Configure an Event or Task To Send Email

If email notifications are enabled, you can specify a list of events and tasks that trigger email notifications. For example, you may want email sent in the following circumstances:

- To a system administrator, at the completion of a Reset User Password task.
- To a new employee's manager, at the completion of a Create User task. In addition, when the AddToGroupEvent generated within the Create User task is approved, another email can be sent to all members of a group to which the new user is being added.

To specify events and tasks that trigger email notifications

1. In the Management Console, click Environments.

   A list of CA Identity Manager environments is displayed.
2. Click the appropriate CA Identity Manager environment.
3. Go to Advanced Settings, Email.

   The Email Properties screen opens.

4. Select the following Enable check boxes that apply:
   - Events E-mail Enabled

     Enables email notification for CA Identity Manager events
   - Tasks Email Enabled

     Enables email notification for CA Identity Manager tasks
5. Enter the location of the email templates that CA Identity Manager uses to create the email messages.

   The email templates are located in a subdirectory in the following location:

   iam_im.ear\custom\emailTemplates

   Note: When you create an email template file with a file name using a different language, the operating system session should be operating in a language that supports the character set.
6. Specify the events for which email notifications are sent as follows:
   - To add an event, select the event in the Event list box, and click Add.

     CA Identity Manager adds the event you selected to the list of events for which email notifications are sent.

     Note: If you select an event that is not associated with a workflow process, CA Identity Manager sends an email notification when the event completes.
   - To delete an event, select the event's check box, then click Delete.
7. Specify the tasks for which email notifications are sent as follows:
   - To add a task, search for the task by selecting a condition in the first field, and entering a task name in the second field. Click Search.

     You can enter a partial task name by using the wildcard (*) character. For example, to search for a Create task, enter Create*.

     Select one or more tasks from the search results. Click Add.

     Note: Task-level email notifications are not available for tasks that have the action type View or Self View. To see the action type of a task, go to Modify Admin Task, Select a Task, and check the action field in the task profile.
   - To delete a task, select the task's check box, then click Delete.

     Deleting a task removes the task from the Task table. It does not delete the task.
8. When you finish configuring the tasks and events that trigger email notifications, click Save.
9. Restart the application server on which CA Identity Manager is installed.

Email Content

Email notifications consists of a generic template plus task-specific details that are added to the email through the email API. For example, the following information can be inserted into an email for a Create User task:

- The name of the administrator who is executing the task
- The name of the new user
- The user's email address, department name, and other attribute data
- The organization where the user is being created
- Workflow approval status and approval time
- The task name and the names of the events in the task

Email Templates

Email notifications are generated from email templates. CA Identity Manager provides default email templates that you can use as installed, or that you can use to create your own email templates.

Each email template contains the following:

- **Delivery information**--A list of email recipients. CA Identity Manager automatically generates the list of recipients, based on users involved in the task. For example, an approval email is sent to all Approvers for the task.
- **Subject--**The text used in the message's subject line.
- **Content**--The message body. The body typically contains both static text and variables, which CA Identity Manager resolves based on the task or event that triggers the email.

The default email templates are located in an emailTemplates directory where the CA Identity Manager administrative tools are installed. The default installation location for the administrative tools is:

- For Windows--C:\Program Files\CA\IAM Suite\Identity Manager\tools\emailtemplates
- For UNIX--<home_directory>/CA/IAM Suite/Identity Manager/tools/emailtemplates

The emailTemplates directory contains five folders. Each folder is associated with a task or event state:

Directory	Contents
Approved	defaultEvent.tmpl--Informs recipients that an event has been approved
Completed	■ CertificationNonCertifiedActionCompletedNotification.tmpl--Informs the manager that a non-compliance action has been applied to an employee. ■ CertificationNonCertifiedActionPendingNotification.tmpl--Informs the manager that a non-compliance action will be applied to an employee. ■ CertificationRequiredFinalNotification.tmpl--Final reminder to a manager that the Certify User task must be completed for an employee. ■ CertificationRequiredNotification.tmpl--Informs the manager that a certification process has begun for an employee. The manager must complete a Certify User task for this employee. ■ CertificationRequiredReminderNotification.tmpl--Reminds the manager that the Certify User task must be completed for an employee. ■ Certify Employee.tmpl--Informs an administrator that the certification process for an employee is complete. ■ CreateProvisioningUserNotificationEvent.tmpl--Sends a temporary password to a user when that user's account is created in the provisioning directory. ■ defaultTask.tmpl--Informs recipients that CA Identity Manager has completed a task. ■ ForgottenPassword.tmpl--Sends a temporary password to users who have used the forgotten password feature. ■ ForgottenUserID.tmpl--Sends a user ID to users who have used the forgotten user ID feature. ■ Self Registration.tmpl--Informs a user that a self-registration task has completed successfully.
Invalid	■ AssignProvisioningRoleEvent.tmpl--Informs recipients that a request to add a user to a provisioning role failed ■ DefaultEvent.tmpl--Informs recipients that an event failed ■ DefaultTask.tmpl--Informs recipients that a CA Identity Manager task failed

Directory	Contents
Pending	■ defaultEvent.tmpl--Informs approvers that a work list item requires attention ■ ModifyUserEvent.tmpl--Same as the default template, but includes methods for retrieving the attributes of the User managed object
Rejected	defaultEvent.tmpl--Informs recipients that an event has been rejected

Use the CA Identity Manager templates and template directory structure that are installed in the *<im_admin_tools_dir>*\Identity Manager\tools\emailTemplates directory as a base for creating custom email templates.

Template Directories

Each template directory described in Email Templates (see page 362) is associated with a particular task or event state. For example, if an email is to be sent for an event that has been rejected in a workflow process, CA Identity Manager looks in a deployed rejected directory for the template to use. CA Identity Manager then generates the email from the appropriate email template in the directory.

Email Templates in a Directory

Each deployed template directory contains one or more email templates. When a task or event occurs for which email is enabled, CA Identity Manager searches the appropriate template directory for a template name that is the same as the name of the task or event. If such a template cannot be found, CA Identity Manager uses the default template in the directory. Default template names are listed in Email Templates (see page 362). For example, CA Identity Manager uses defaultEvent.tmpl in the Pending directory to inform approvers that they have a new work list item.

Sets of Template Directories

A set of template directories contains an approved, completed, pending, and rejected directory. You can deploy multiple sets of template directories and specify one set to be used for a given CA Identity Manager environment.

Email Template Deployment (see page 383) provides information on deploying sets of template directories.

For information on configuring email template directories so that CA Identity Manager uses the correct set for a given environment, see the *CA Identity Manager Configuration Guide*.

Create Email Templates

To create custom email messages

1. Open the template that you want to modify.

   For example, if you want to create an email message for a pending Create User event, open defaultEvent.tmpl in the Pending directory.

2. Save the template in the same directory with a new name. The name must match the name of the event to which the email applies, and have the extension .tmpl.

   For example, name the message for the pending Create User event as follows:

   CreateUserEvent.tmpl

   Note: When you create an email template file with a file name using a different language, the operating system session should be operating in a language that supports the character set.

3. Modify the message template as needed, as described in the next section, Custom Email Templates (see page 365).

Custom Email Templates

An email template is a dynamic file that supports both HTML and embedded server-side JavaScript. A template lets you insert variable values into static text, allowing case-specific messages to be generated from a single template.

The same template can be used any number of times to print out boilerplate static text (such as the phrase has been approved) along with variable text specific to a given context (such as the name of the event being approved).

For example, here is a template for reporting the approval of an event:

```
<!-- Define the E-mail Properties --->
<%
   _to = _util.getNotifiers("ADMIN");
   _cc = "" ;
   _bcc = "";
   _subject = _eventContextInformation.getEventName() + " approved";
%>
<!--- Start of Body --->
<html>
<body text="Navy">
```

```
Event: <b> <%=_eventContextInformation.getEventName()%> </b><br>
<%=_eventContextInformation.getPrimaryObjectTypeName()%>:
<b><%=_eventContextInformation.getPrimaryObjectName()%></b><br>
In <%=_eventContextInformation.getSecondaryObjectTypeName()%>:
<b><%=_eventContextInformation.getSecondaryObjectName()%></b><br>
Status: <b>Approved</b>
</body>
</html>
```

Note: The CA Identity Manager objects _util and _eventContextInformation used in the above example are described in Email Template API (see page 368).

If an approval is generated for the event CreateUserEvent, and user John Jones is created in organization HR, the body of the email notification generated from the approval template might look like this:

Event: **CreateUserEvent**
USER: **John Jones**
In ORGANIZATION: **HR**
Status: **Approved**

The following sections describe the syntax and CA Identity Manager objects that make dynamic email messages possible.

Template Elements

CA Identity Manager email templates support:

- Standard HTML tags.
- Server-side JavaScript.
- One or more implicit objects that CA Identity Manager makes available to an instance of the template--that is, to an email message.
- CA Identity Manager tags that let you embed JavaScript in the template, call the methods in the implicit CA Identity Manager objects, and insert variable values into the template's static text.

CA Identity Manager Tag Extensions

Email templates support the following tags:

<% %>

Embeds JavaScript into an email template.

<%= %>

Inserts a variable value into static text.

The tags are described in the following sections.

<% %>

This tag lets you embed JavaScript for in-line execution into an email template.

You can use any JavaScript object within the embedded JavaScript. You can also call CA Identity Manager implicit object methods within the embedded JavaScript.

For example, the following code modifies the body of the approval template shown in Custom Email Templates (see page 365). JavaScript is used to determine if a secondary object is involved in the event (such as an ORGANIZATION object when a USER primary object is added). If there is no secondary object, the text relating to the secondary object is omitted from the message:

```
Event: <b> <%=_eventContextInformation.getEventName()%> </b><br>
<%=_eventContextInformation.getPrimaryObjectTypeName()%>:
<b><%=_eventContextInformation.getPrimaryObjectName()%></b><br>
<%
var secondaryType =        _eventContextInformation.getSecondaryObjectTypeName();
if (secondaryType != "") {
   template.add("In " + secondaryType + ": ");
   template.add("<b> "+_eventContextInformation.getSecondary
                                    ObjectName()+" </b><br>");
   }
%>
Status: <b>Approved</b>
```

<%= %>

This tag lets you insert a variable value into static text. The value can be:

- A variable defined in some previously executed JavaScript in the template--for example:

  ```
  <%
  var secondaryType
  =      _eventContextInformation.getSecondaryObjectTypeName();
  ...           // More JavaScript processing
  %>
  ...           // More HTML
  The primary object was created in <%=secondaryType%>.
  ```

- A value returned from a method in a CA Identity Manager implicit object--for example:

  ```
  Event <%=_eventContextInformation.getEventName()%> is approved.
  ```

Email Template API

When a message is generated from a template, CA Identity Manager makes the implicit objects below available to the message. These objects let you insert instance-specific information into a message by calling methods in the Email Template API.

A template can call the methods in any of the following objects:

- _contentType. Specifies the contentType for the email.
- _priority. Specifies the priority for the email.
- _to. Adds recipients to the message's To field.
- _cc. Adds recipients to the message's cc (send copy to) field.
- _bcc. Adds recipients to the message's bcc (send blind copy to) field.
- _subject. Specifies the subject of the email.
- _encoding. Specifies the encoding for the email.
- _additionalHeaders. Allows you to specify extra email header attributes in the email template.
- template. Lets you add a string of text to a message from lines of JavaScript code.
- _util. A utility object.
- _eventContextInformation. Contains information about the event generated by the current task, such as event name and approval status.
- _taskContextInformation. Contains a collection of information about the current task, such as task name, organization name, and constituent events.

These objects are described in the following sections.

contentType

Specifies the contentType for the email.

If no contentType is specified through _contentType variable, the default contentType "text/html" applies.

Methods: None.

Example:

```
<% _contentType = "text/html"; %>
```

priority

Specifies the priority for the email. Specify 0 for no priority (default) and 1 for high priority.

Methods: None.

Example:

```
<% _priority = "1"; %>
```

to

Adds recipients to the message's To field.

The value of the _to variable is a JavaScript string. Multiple recipients are permitted, but the string must conform to JavaScript syntax, as shown in the following example.

Methods: None.

Example:

```
<%
_to =
_util.getNotifiers("USER") + ',' +
_util.getNotifiers("USER_MANAGER","ManagerLookup=managerattribute");
_cc = "" ;
_bcc = "" ;
_subject = "Your new password ";
%>
```

Note: When emails alert participants that a task is in a Pending state and under workflow control, the _to object is pre-populated with the addresses of the participants. You cannot use the _to object in a Pending template.

cc

Adds recipients to the message's cc (send copy to) field.

The value of the _to variable is a JavaScript string. Multiple recipients are permitted, but the string must conform to JavaScript syntax, as shown in the following example.

Methods: None.

Example:

```
<%
_cc =
_util.getNotifiers("USER") + ',' +
_util.getNotifiers("USER_MANAGER","ManagerLookup=managerattribute");
%>
```

bcc

Adds recipients to the message's bcc (send blind copy to) field.

Email addresses specified in this field do not appear in the email.

The value of the _to variable is a JavaScript string. Multiple recipients are permitted, but the string must conform to JavaScript syntax, as shown in the following example.

Methods: None.

Example:

```
<%
_bcc =
_util.getNotifiers("USER") + ',' +
_util.getNotifiers("USER_MANAGER","ManagerLookup=managerattribute");
%>
```

subject

Specifies the subject of the email.

Methods: None.

Example:

```
<% _subject=_eventContextInformation.getEventName()+" approved";%>
```

encoding

Specifies the encoding for the email.

If no encoding is specified either through _encoding or through the LANG variable, characters in the email may not be correctly displayed. Be sure to set _encoding or LANG for the appropriate locale.

Methods: None.

Example:

```
<% _encoding = "UTF-8"; %>
```

additionalHeaders

_additionalHeaders

Specifies extra email header attributes in the email template.

You must assign a HashMap() to this attribute. The names and values stored in the HashMap must be strings.

Example: Add custom header attributes

The following example shows you how to add two custom header attributes, “X-TCCCSWD” and “myheader”:

```
<!-- Define the E-mail Properties --->
<%
_to = "siteadmin@ca.com";
_cc = "" ;
_bcc = "" ;
_subject = _eventContextInformation.getEventName() +" completed";
var additionalHeaders = new java.util.HashMap();
additionalHeaders.put("header_a","1");
additionalHeaders.put("header_b","foo");
_additionalHeaders = additionalHeaders;
%>
```

template

Lets you add a string of text to a message from lines of JavaScript code (that is, lines within the <% %> tag). The string can contain HTML tags, static text, and/or variable values returned by methods in CA Identity Manager implicit objects.

Note: The template object is not preceded by the underscore (_) character.

Method:

- add(String)

  The argument must evaluate to a string, including any calls to methods in a CA Identity Manager implicit object. In the example below, see _eventContextInformation.getSecondaryObjectName().

Example:

```
<%
var secondaryType =        _eventContextInformation.getSecondaryObjectTypeName();
if (secondaryType != "") {
   template.add("In " + secondaryType + ": ");
   template.add("<b> "+_eventContextInformation.getSecondary
                                    ObjectName()+" </b><br>");
   }
%>
```

util

Utility object.

Method:

- getNotifiers(String [,String])

  Returns email IDs based on a notification rule.

  The first argument supports the following predefined notification rules, enclosed in quotes:

  - "ADMIN". Sends the email to the administrator who initiated the task.
  - "USER". Sends the email to the user in the current context.
  - "USER_MANAGER". Sends the email to the manager of the user in the current context.

  You can also reference a custom notification rule that you create with the Notification Rule API. For information, see the *Programming Guide for Java*.

  The second argument is optional. You can use it to pass one or more user-defined name/value pairs into a custom notification rule. Separate each name/value pair with a comma, in the following format:
  `"name1=value1,name2=value2,..."`

Examples:

```
<%
_to = _util.getNotifiers("ADMIN");
_cc = "";
%>
<%
_to = _util.getNotifiers("MYRULE","type=loan,district=3");
_cc = "";
%>
```

Notifying a User's Manager

You can use the USER_MANAGER notification rule to send email to any user's manager. CA Identity Manager uses this rule in the email templates supporting user entitlement certification.

Note: The USER_MANAGER Notification Rule only applies to events or tasks that create or manage a single user.

Because there are a number of different ways a user-to-manager relationship can be specified within a user directory, the default User Manager Notification Adapter resolves this relationship based on an attribute expression specified in the second parameter of the getNotifiers() method.

Example:

```
<%
_to = _util.getNotifiers("USER_MANAGER","ManagerLookup=managerattribute");
_cc = "";
%>
```

The User Manager Notification Adapter supports two look-up options:

- managerattribute **= <***Manager AttributeName***>**- where the User object maintains an attribute that indicates the DN or UserID of that user's manager
- commonattribute **= <***AttributeName***>** - where the user and the user's manager share a common attribute value, such as "department"

You configure these lookup options in the Miscellaneous Properties for an environment in the CA Identity Manager Management Console.

To configure the USER_MANAGER notification rule:

1. In the CA Identity Manager Management Console, select CA Identity Manager Environments. Then, select the environment for which you are configuring email notification.
2. Select Advanced Settings>Miscellaneous Properties.

3. In the Miscellaneous Properties page, complete the configuration steps for the lookup option that you want to use:
   - To use the managerattribute=<Manager AttributeName> lookup option:
     a. In the Property field, enter managerattribute.
     b. In the Value field, enter the attribute that stores the manager's DN or user ID.
     c. Click Add.
     d. Click Save.
   - To use the commonattribute=<AttributeName> lookup option:
     a. In the Property field, enter commonattribute.
     b. In the Value field, enter the attribute that the user and the user's manager have in common.
     c. Click Add.
     d. In the Property field, enter ismanagerfilter.
     e. In the Value field, enter a search expression using the following syntax:

        <attribute> <operator> <filter>

        For example, title EQUALS manager
     f. Click Add.
     g. Click Save.

You can also write a custom adapter and create your own rules for notifying a user's manager. See the *Programming Guide for Java*.

eventContextInformation

Contains information about the event generated by the current task, such as event name and approval status. This information is called *context* information for the event.

The _eventContextInformation object is created from the ExposedEventContextInformation class in package com.netegrity.imapi.

This object is available for email messages based on Approved, Pending, and Rejected templates. For information about these templates, see Email Templates (see page 362).

Methods: All the following methods return a String.

Method	Description
getAdminName()	Returns the name of the person who submitted the task that generated the event. Deprecated in CA Identity Manager 5.6. Use one of the following inherited methods: ■ getAdministrator() ■ getAdminFriendlyName()
getApprovalStatus()	Returns the approval status of the event. One of these values: APPROVAL_STATUS_APPROVED APPROVAL_STATUS_REJECTED
getApprovalTime()	Returns the time the event was approved.
getEventName()	Returns the name of the event. For a list of event names, see CA Identity Manager Events.
getOrgName()	Returns the friendly name of the organization where the task is being executed. Deprecated in CA Identity Manager 5.6. Use the inherited method getObjectOrganizationFriendlyName().
getPassword()	If the primary objects is type USER, returns the user's password.
getPrimaryObjectTypeName()	Returns the type of primary object. Primary object types returned: ACCESSROLE ACCESSTASK ADMINROLE ADMINTASK GROUP ORGANIZATION USER

Method	Description
getPrimaryObjectName()	Returns the name of the primary object affected by the event. A *primary object* is the object directly affected by the event. A *secondary object* is the object that the primary object is bound to, if any. For example: ■ The primary object type for CreateUserEvent is USER. The secondary object is the object where the user is created--that is, ORGANIZATION. ■ The primary object type for CreateAdminRoleEvent is ADMINROLE. This object is not bound to other objects, so no secondary object exists. With a primary object of type USER, getPrimaryObjectName() might return John Jones.
getSecondaryObjectTypeName()	If a secondary object was affected by the event, returns the object type. Secondary object types returned: ACCESSROLE ACCESSTASK ADMINROLE ADMINTASK GROUP ORGANIZATION USER
getSecondaryObjectName()	If a secondary object was affected by the event, returns the object name. See getPrimaryObjectName() for information about primary and secondary objects. With a secondary object of type ORGANIZATION, the method getSecondaryObjectName() might return HR.

Note: The methods in _eventContextInformation are provided through the interface ExposedEventContextInformation. Since ExposedEventContextInformation inherits methods in the core CA Identity Manager API, _eventContextInformation can also call these methods from an email template, along with the methods in the above table. For more information about these inherited methods, see Additional Methods (see page 380).

Example--Email notification about a Pending event:

```
<%
_cc = "" ;
_bcc = "";
_subject = _eventContextInformation.getEventName() +
                                                " Approval Request";
%>
<!--- Start of Body --->
<html>
<body text="Navy">

The following item has been added to your work list for approval:
<br><br><br>
Event: <b><%=_eventContextInformation.getEventName()%></b> <br>
<%=_eventContextInformation.getPrimaryObjectTypeName()%>:
<b><%=_eventContextInformation.getPrimaryObjectName()%></b><br>
In <%=_eventContextInformation.getSecondaryObjectTypeName()%>:
<b><%=_eventContextInformation.getSecondaryObjectName()%></b><br>
</body>
</html>
```

Possible email body:

From: lsmith@security.com [mailto:lsmith@security.com]
To: vimperioso@security.com
Subject: CreateUserEvent Approval Request

The following item has been added to your work list for approval:

Event: **CreateUserEvent**
USER: **Richard Ferrigamo**
In ORGANIZATION: **Mortgages & Loans**

Note: The value of the From field is derived from the email.properties file. To change the value, edit the following file:
<*iam_im.ear*>\config\com\netegrity\config\email.properties

where <*iam_im.ear*> is the installed location of CA Identity Manager in the application server domain--for example:

For WebLogic:
<*WebLogic_home*>\user_projects\<domain>\applications\iam_im.ear

For JBoss:
<*Identity Manager_home*>\jboss-3.2.2\server\default\deploy\iam_im.ear

For WebSphere:
<*im_admin_tools_dir* >\WebSphere-ear\iam_im.ear

To add additional information about the user affected by the event to the email in the previous example, add text that resembles the following:

```
<% user = _eventContextInformation.getEvent().getUser(); %>
<b>User information:</b><br>
Last Name: <b><%=user.getAttribute("%LAST_NAME%")%></b><br>
First Name: <b><%=user.getAttribute("%FIRST_NAME%")%></b><br>
Full Name: <b><%=user.getAttribute("%FULL_NAME%")%></b><br>
Email: <b><%=user.getAttribute("%EMAIL%")%></b><br>
Organization Membership: <b><%=user.getAttribute("%ORG_MEMBERSHIP%")%></b><br>
```

Possible email body:

From: lsmith@security.com [mailto:lsmith@security.com]
To: vimperioso@security.com
Subject: CreateUserEvent Approval Request

The following item has been added to your work list for approval:

Event: **CreateUserEvent**
USER: **Richard Ferrigamo**
In ORGANIZATION: **Mortgages & Loans**
User information:
Last Name: Ferrigamo
First Name: Richard
Full Name: Richard Ferrigamo
Email: rferrigamo@mybank.org
Organization Membership: **Mortgages & Loans**

taskContextInformation

Contains a collection of information about the current task, such as task name, organization name, and constituent events. This information is called *context* information for the task.

This object is available for email messages based on Completed templates. For information about this template, see Email Templates (see page 362).

Methods: All the methods below return a String except for the method getExposedEventContexts(), which returns a Java Vector.

Method	Description
getAdminName()	Returns the name of the person submitting the task. Deprecated in CA Identity Manager 5.6. Use one of the following inherited methods: ■ getAdministrator() ■ getAdminFriendlyName()
getExposedEventContexts()	Returns a Java Vector of all events associated with the task. Each object in the Vector is an event context object. You can use the methods listed in _eventContextInformation to retrieve context information for a given event object. The return object is a standard Java Vector object. You can use any of the Vector object's methods--for example, get() and size()--to manage the elements in the Vector.
getOrgName()	Returns the name of the organization where the task is being executed. Deprecated in CA Identity Manager 5.6. Use the inherited method getObjectOrganizationFriendlyName().
getTaskName()	Returns the name of the task being executed. Deprecated in CA Identity Manager 5.6. Use one of the following inherited methods: ■ getAdminTask() ■ getTaskFriendlyName()

Note: The methods in _taskContextInformation are provided through the interface ExposedTaskContextInformation. Since ExposedTaskContextInformation inherits methods in the core CA Identity Manager API, _taskContextInformation can also call these methods from an email template, along with the methods in the above table. For more information about these inherited methods, see Additional Methods (see page 380).

Example--Body of an email notification template for a password change:

```
<%
var imsEventContexts
=              _taskContextInformation.getExposedEventContexts();
if(imsEventContexts != null)
   {
   for(var i=0;i<imsEventContexts.size();i++)
      {
      var eventContext = imsEventContexts.get(i);
      template.add("Hi "+
eventContext.getPrimaryObjectName()
           + ",");
      template.add("<br>Your new password is: <b>"+
                              eventContext.getPassword());</br>
      template.add("<hr>");
      }
   }
%>
```

Possible email body:

Hi Victor Imperioso,
Your new password is: LFH7F1226

Additional Methods

The methods in _taskContextInformation and _eventContextInformation are provided through the ExposedTaskContextInformation and ExposedEventContextInformation, respectively.

These objects inherit methods in the core CA Identity Manager API. Consequently, the inherited methods are also available to _taskContextInformation and _eventContextInformation.

The following methods inherited from the TaskInfo object are particularly useful to an email template:

- getAdministrator(). Retrieves a User object for the administrator who is executing the current task.
- getAdminTask(). Retrieves an AdminTask object for the current task.

These retrieved objects allow you to insert administrator-specific and task-specific information into an email. For example:

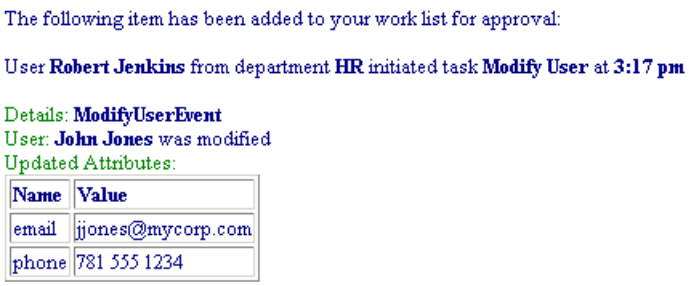
```
<!-- Define the E-mail Properties --->

<%
   _cc = "" ;
   _bcc = "" ;
   _subject = _eventContextInformation.getEventName() +
                                                 " Approval Request";
%>
<!--- Start of Body --->
<html>
<body text="Navy">

The following item has been added to your work list for approval:<br>
<br>
User <b><%= _eventContextInformation.getAdministrator().
               getAttribute(Packages.com.netegrity.llsdk6.imsapi.
                managedobject.User.PROPERTY_FRIENDLY_NAME)%> </b>
               from department <b><%= _eventContextInformation.
               getAdministrator().getOrg(null).getFriendlyName()
               %></b> initiated task <b><%= _eventContextInformation.
               getAdminTask().getFriendlyName() %></b>at
<b><%=                _eventContextInformation.getSessionCreateTime() %></b>
<br><br>
<font color="green">Details: </font><b><%=_eventContextInformation.
                                          getEventName()%></b><br>
<font color="green"><%=_eventContextInformation.
                               getPrimaryObjectTypeName()%>:</font>
<b><%=_eventContextInformation.getPrimaryObjectName()%></b>
                                                        was modified
<br>
<font color="green">Updated Attributes:</font>
<table border="1">
<tr>
  <td><b>Name</b></td>
  <td><b>Value</b></td>
</tr>
```

```
<%
   var event = _eventContextInformation.getEvent();
   if(event instanceof Packages.com.netegrity.imapi.UserEvent) {
      var user = event.getUser();
      var attributes = user.getAttributes().keys();
      while(attributes.hasMoreElements()) {
         var attr = attributes.nextElement();
         var value = user.getAttribute(attr);
         if(user.hasAttributeChanged(attr)) {
            template.add("<tr><td>" + attr +"</td>");
            template.add("<td>" + value +"</td></tr>");
         }
      }
   }
%>
</table>
<br>
</body>
</html>
```

Possible email body:



For more information about the inherited methods that are available to the Email Template API, see the objects ExposedTaskContextInformation and ExposedEventContextInformation objects in the CA Identity Manager Javadoc.

Java Standard Output Stream

An email message can also make calls to the Java standard output stream from inside the JavaScript tag (<% %>). For example, the following call sends the message Done to the server console:

```
<%
...       // JavaScript processing
out.println("Done.");
%>
```

Javadoc Reference

For information about the ExposedTaskContextInformation and ExposedEventContextInformation objects, including the methods they inherit from the core CA Identity Manager API, see the CA Identity Manager Javadoc.

The Javadoc pages are integrated with an HTML version of the Programming Guide for Java, which is available in the CA Identity Manager Bookshelf.

Email Template Deployment

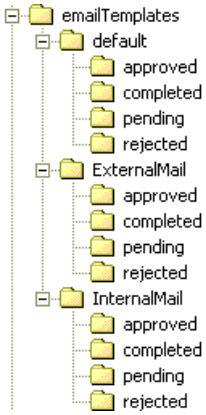
When CA Identity Manager is about to send email, it searches for templates from which to generate the email in the following root location within your application server:
iam_im.ear\custom\emailTemplates

The email templates deployed in this root are contained in template sets that have the same directory structure--that is, there is an approved, completed, pending, and rejected directory in each set.

Template Sets

You can deploy several sets of email templates under emailTemplates. For example, during installation, the following set of email templates is created under iam_im.ear\custom\emailTemplates:
default\approved
default\completed
default\pending
default\rejected

The default email template set contains the installed templates that are described in Email Templates (see page 362). You can add custom templates within the default set. You can also deploy other sets of email templates in directory structures that you define at the same level as the default set. For example, iam_im.ear\custom might contain the following deployed email templates:



Note: For information about how CA Identity Manager chooses a particular email template within a template set, see Template Directories (see page 364).

How to Specify a Template Set for an Environment

When you configure email for a CA Identity Manager environment, you specify the email template set that you want to use for that environment. For information about configuring email for a CA Identity Manager environment, see the *CA Identity Manager Configuration Guide*.

Template Names

The directories in a custom template set should contain default templates with the same name as those that were installed in the default template set. The default names are listed in Email Templates (see page 362). CA Identity Manager uses the default templates when it can find no other template with a name that matches the task or event being executed.

Optionally, you can add additional templates to one or more directories in a template set if you want an email to be generated from a particular template. To do so:

- Assign the template the same name as the task or event for which the email will be generated.
- Place the template in the directory associated with the task or event state for which the email will be generated.

For example, if you want emails to be generated from a particular template when a CreateUserEvent is rejected, place a template named CreateUserEvent.tmpl in the rejected directory of the environment's template set.

Chapter 13: Reporting

This section contains the following topics:

Configuration Overview (see page 387)
The Report Process (see page 389)
How to Run a Snapshot Report (see page 390)
How to Run a Non-Snapshot Report (see page 406)
Set Reporting Options (see page 411)
How to Create and Run a Custom Snapshot Report (see page 412)
Troubleshooting (see page 424)

Configuration Overview

Within CA Identity Manager, you can run two different types of reports:

Snapshot Reports

Include data from the Snapshot Database, which contains information from the CA Identity Manager object store and the CA Identity Manager user store. An example of a Snapshot Report is the User Profile report. You define the data that is added to the Snapshot Database using Snapshot Definitions that specify the information to include.

Non-Snapshot Reports

Include data from other data sources, such as the Audit Database. For example, CA Identity Manager includes default audit reports. (These reports have the prefix "Audit - " in their name in the User Console). By default, CA Identity Manager only includes Audit reports, but you can create your own custom reports that include data from any data source, such as the Workflow or Task Persistence databases.

Each report within CA Identity Manager requires initial configuration before you can run it. The configuration steps depend on the type of report that you want to run.

The following steps summarize the procedures that this chapter contains.

For Snapshot Reports

1. Create a snapshot definition file to define the data that is added to the snapshot database.
2. Capture snapshot data for the report.
3. Modify the Report Task in the User Console and perform the following actions:
   a. Associate a snapshot definition with the task.
   b. Add the rptParamConn connection object to the task.

4. Request the report using one of the following methods:
   - Run the report immediately
   - Schedule the report
5. View the report in the User Console.

For Non-Snapshot Reports:

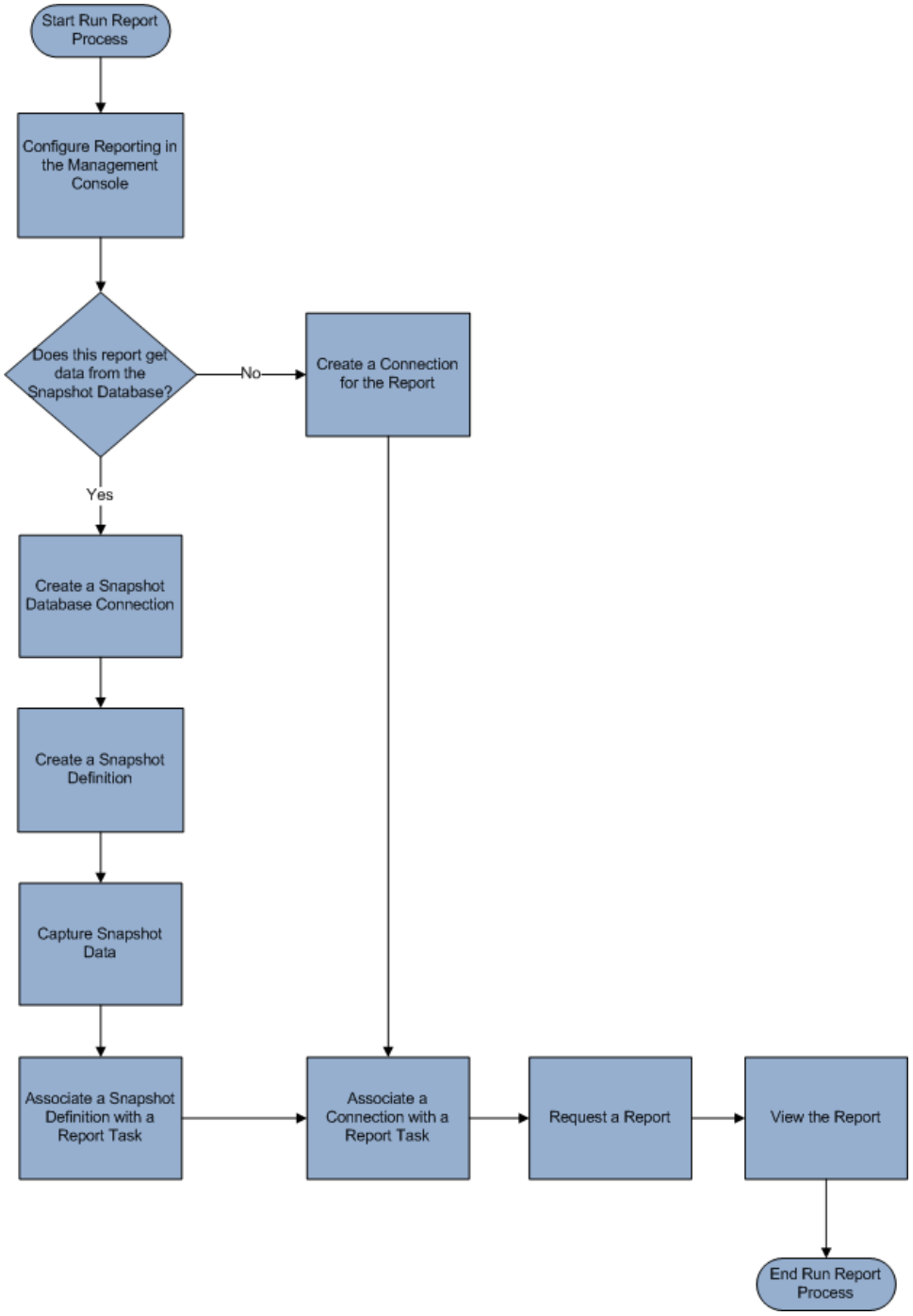
1. Create a connection object with the data source information for the report.
2. Modify the Report Task in CA Identity Manager and add the connection object to the task.
3. Request the report using one of the following methods:
   - Run the report immediately
   - Schedule the report
4. View the report in the User Console.

Once the initial configuration for your report is complete, you can then request a report within CA Identity Manager. You can run a report immediately, or you can schedule a report to run at a later time. You can also create a recurring schedule for your report within CA Identity Manager.

Lastly, you can view the report within the User Console, or you can export the report to various formats.

The Report Process

The following graphic details the process required to run and view reports:



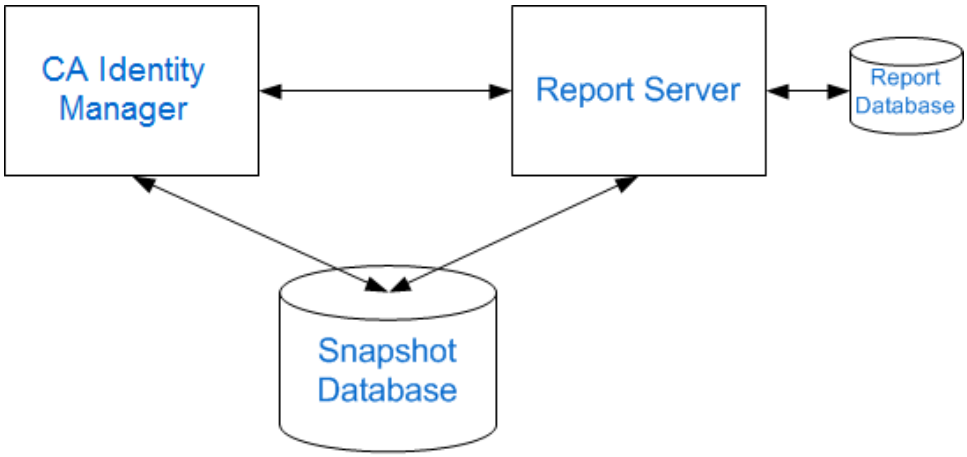
How to Run a Snapshot Report

CA Identity Manager reports enable you to see the current state of a CA Identity Manager environment. You can use this information to ensure compliance with internal business policies or external regulations.

You generate CA Identity Manager reports from management data which describes the relationship between objects in CA Identity Manager environment. Examples of management data include the following:

- Profile attributes of the users
- List of roles that contain a certain task
- The members of a role or group
- The rules that comprise a role

In CA Identity Manager, the reporting setup requires the following three major components:



Note: The Snapshot Database in this illustration graphic could also be the Audit Database or Workflow Database.

Report Server

Also known as CA Business Intelligence, this server generates reports, communicating directly with CA Identity Manager and the Snapshot Database.

Report Database

The database where the CA Report Server (Business Objects) stores its own data.

CA Identity Manager

CA Identity Manager allows you to export CA Identity Manager object data to the Report Database.

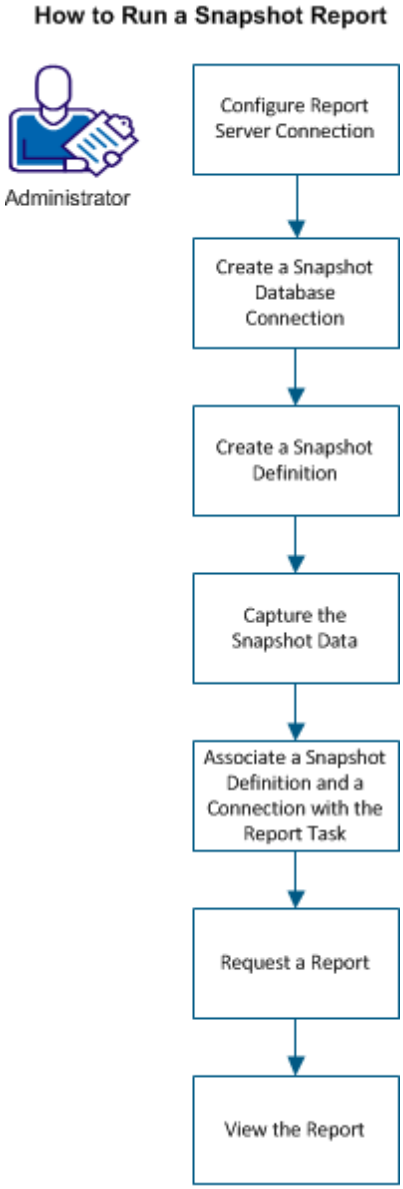
Snapshot Database

A separate database containing the snapshot data of objects in CA Identity Manager

Important! The Report Server uses Business Objects Enterprise. If you already have a Report Server in your environment and want to use it with CA Identity Manager, the minimum version required by CA Identity Manager is CA Business Intelligence 3.2 SP5.

A snapshot report include data from the Snapshot Database, which contains information from the CA Identity Manager object store and the user store. An example of a snapshot report is the User Profile report. You define the snapshot data that is added to the Snapshot Database and using snapshot definitions, specify the information to include.

The following graphic illustrates the process for running a snapshot report:



To run the snapshot report, perform the following steps:

1. Configure the Report Server connection (see page 407).
2. Create a snapshot database connection.
3. Create a Snapshot Definition.
4. Capture the snapshot data.
5. Associate a snapshot definition and a connection with the report task.
6. Request a report.
7. View the report (see page 410).

Configure the Report Server Connection

Configure the connection between CA Identity Manager and the Report Server.

Note: We recommend that all systems involved in reporting be set to the same time zone and time.

To configure reporting

1. In the User Console, click Tasks, System, Reporting, Report Server Connection.
2. Enter the Report Server settings. Note the following:
   - Host Name and Port—hostname and the HTTP URL port number of the system where the Report Server is installed.
   - Reports folder name—location of the default CA Identity Manager reports.
   - User ID—user created for the Report Server.
   - Password—password for the user created in the Report Server.
   - Secure Connection—select the checkbox to enable Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) connection between CA Identity Manager and Report Server.

     Note: Before you select the Secure Connection checkbox, verify that you have installed the certificate from the BOServer. For more information about how to configure SSL, see the Chapter "Report Server Installation" in the *Installation Guide*.
   - Web Server—Set to Non-IIS for Tomcat
3. Click Test Connection to verify the connection.
4. Click Submit.

The reporting connection is established.

Create a Snapshot Database Connection

CA Identity Manager needs to know where to export snapshot data to. Create a database connection from CA Identity Manager to the Snapshot Database.

To create a snapshot database connection

1. In the User Console, click Tasks, Reports, Snapshot Tasks, Manage Snapshot Database Connection, Create Snapshot Database Connection.
2. Create a new snapshot database connection by completing all the necessary fields.
3. Click Submit.

   A new Snapshot Database connection is created.

Create a Snapshot Definition

A snapshot reflects the state of objects in CA Identity Manager at a given time. You use this snapshot data to build a report. To capture CA Identity Manager object data, you create a snapshot definition that exports the data to the Snapshot Database. Using the snapshot definition, you define the rules to load users, endpoints, admin roles, provisioning roles, groups, and organizations.

Follow these steps:

1. In the User Console, go to Tasks, Reports, Snapshot Tasks, Manage Snapshot Definition, Create Snapshot Definition.
2. Select Create or Copy an object of type Snapshot Type.
3. Click Ok.
4. Under the Profile tab, complete the following fields to create a snapshot definition profile:

   Snapshot Definition Name

   Identifies the unique name that is given for the snapshot definition.

   Snapshot Definition Description

   Displays any additional information that you want to describe the snapshot.

   Enabled

   Specifies that CA Identity Manager creates a snapshot that is based on the current snapshot definition at the scheduled time.

   Note: If this option is not selected, the snapshot definition is not captured at the scheduled time. Also, the snapshot definition is not listed in the Capture Snapshot Data screen.

   Number of snapshots retained

   Specifies the number of successful snapshots retained in the Snapshot Database.

   Note: If you do not specify a value for this field, CA Identity Manager stores unlimited snapshots.
5. On the Snapshot Policies tab, select the objects that are related to the policies to export.
6. On the Role Settings tab, select one or more role components and available attributes for the snapshot to export.

   Note: In the Snapshot Policies tab, if you select Access Role, Admin Role, or Provisioning Role object, select the attributes in the Role Settings tab.
7. On the User Attributes Details tab, select one or more user attributes for the snapshot to export.

Note: In the Snapshot Policies tab, if you select only the User object, by default, all user attributes related data are exported.

8. On the Endpoint Account Attributes tab, select one or more account attributes for an endpoint type.

   Note: For a selected endpoint type, by default, all data related to endpoint account attributes is exported. To capture data related to a specific attribute, select the appropriate attribute. For more information about selecting attributes that are necessary to export for an endpoint type, see the Default Reports section in the *Configuration Guide*.

9. (Optional) Select Export Orphan Accounts check box to include endpoint accounts with no global user in the Provisioning Server.

   Note: To export report data for non-standard, non-standard-trend and orphan account reports, select exceptionAccount attribute and Export Orphan Accounts check boxes.

10. Click Submit.

    CA Identity Manager is configured to create snapshots of the objects mentioned in the snapshot definition.

Now that you have created a snapshot definition, you can capture snapshot data immediately or can schedule the snapshot data export at a later time. The topic Capture Snapshot Data provides more information.

More information:

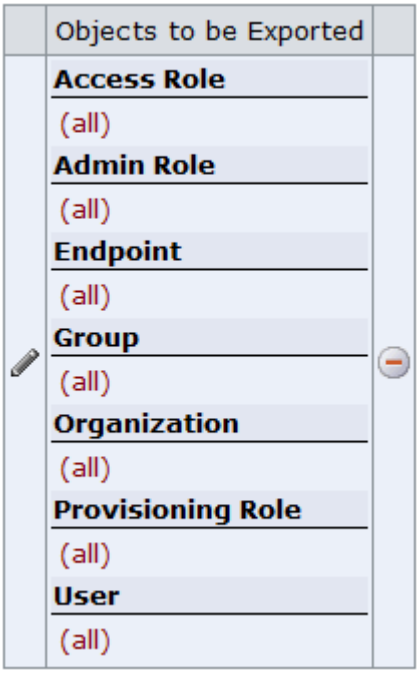
Recurrence Tab (see page 398)

Example: Creating a Snapshot Definition for a User Entitlement Data

The following example illustrates the process to create a snapshot definition for a user entitlement report:

1. In the User Console, go to Tasks, Reports, Snapshot Tasks, Manage Snapshot Definition, Create Snapshot Definition.
2. Select Create a new object of type Snapshot Type.
3. Enter the Snapshot definition name, description, and the number of snapshots retained.
4. In the Snapshot Policy Definition Tab, click Add.

   From the drop-down, select the user and select All. Similarly, add Endpoint, Provisioning Role, Admin Role, Access Role, Organization, and Group as shown in the following screen:



5. In the Role Setting Tab, select all the user role checkboxes.
6. In the User Attributes Tab, select the required attributes from the Available Values list and move them to the Current Values list.
7. Click Submit.

Manage Snapshots

CA Identity Manager lets you view, modify and delete your snapshot definitions. When you view or modify a snapshot definition, the Profile and Maintenance tabs are shown. The Maintenance tab will only appear after a snapshot has been captured once. From the Maintenance tab, you can delete your snapshots (even if the status of the snapshot is failed).

To view, modify, or delete a snapshot definition, go to Reports, Snapshot Tasks, Manage Snapshot Definition and click on the task you want to execute.

Note: If a snapshot definition is being used to export data to the Snapshot Database, you cannot delete the snapshot definition. When you delete a snapshot definition that is being used, the export of the data to the Snapshot Database will stop, but the snapshot definition will still be available.

Capture Snapshot Data

If you want to capture snapshot data immediately or schedule the snapshot data export at a later time or on a recurring schedule, run the Capture Snapshot Data task. This task exports the data immediately (defined by the snapshot definition) to the Snapshot Database.

Important! Exporting snapshot data can take a long time if you have a large amount of data to export. We recommend you schedule your snapshots when exporting numerous data.

To capture snapshot data

1. In the User Console, go to Tasks, Reports, Snapshot Tasks, Capture Snapshot Data.
2. Select Execute now to run the data export immediately, or select Schedule new job (see page 398) to run the data export at a later time or on a recurring schedule.
3. Click Next.
4. Choose a snapshot definition.
5. Click Submit.

   Snapshot data is exported to the Snapshot Database.

Note: If the Capture Snapshot Data task seems to be taking a long time, you can check the progress of the task by going to the System tab and clicking View Submitted Tasks.

Recurrence Tab

Use this tab to schedule your job. The fields in this tab are as follows:

Execute now

Runs the job immediately.

Schedule new job

Schedules a new job.

Modify existing job

Specifies that you want to modify a job that already exists.

Note: This field appears only if a job has already been scheduled for this task.

Job Name

Specifies the name of the job you want to create or modify.

Time Zone

Specifies the server time zone.

Note: If your time zone is different from the server's time zone, a drop-down box is displayed so you can select either your time zone or the server's time zone when scheduling a new job. You cannot change the time zone when modifying an existing job.

Daily schedule

Specifies that the job runs every certain number of days.

Every (number of days)

Defines how many days between job runs.

Weekly schedule

Specifies that the job runs on a specific day or days and time during a week.

Day of Week

Specifies the day or days of the week the job runs.

Monthly schedule

Specifies a day of week or day of month that the job runs on a monthly basis.

Yearly schedule

Specifies a day of week or day of month that the job runs on a yearly basis.

Advanced schedule

Specifies additional scheduling information.

Cron Expression

For information about filling out this field, see the following:

http://quartz-scheduler.org/api/2.1.0/org/quartz/CronExpression.html

Execution Time

Specifies the time of day, in 24-hour format, that the job is run. For example, 14:15.

Associate a Snapshot Definition with a Report Task

Assign a snapshot definition to a report task so CA Identity Manager knows which snapshot definition to use when running the report. Also, information for CA Identity Manager reports can come from multiple sources, and each report should be associated with a specific data source, depending on the information you want to view in the report.

To associate a snapshot definition and connection with a report task

1. In the User Console, go to Tasks, Roles and Tasks, Admin Tasks, Modify Admin Task.
2. Search for the report task you want to associate a snapshot definition with.
3. Go to the Tabs tab and click on the Edit button next to the Associate Snapshot Definitions tab.
4. Click Add.
5. Search for the snapshot definition to associate with the report task and click Select.

   When associating a snapshot definition with a report task, note the following:

   - A report can be associated with one or more snapshot definitions.
   - A snapshot definition can be associated with more than one report.
   - Multiple snapshots associated with a single report task must not use the same recurrence time.
6. Click Ok.
7. Go to the Search tab and click Browse to locate the search screens.
8. Edit the search screen for the report task and choose rptParamConn under Connection Object for the Report.
9. Click Ok.
10. Click Select.
11. Click Submit.

Synchronize Endpoint Accounts with Account Templates

This task synchronizes an endpoint account after modification of an associated account template. For example, perhaps an Active Directory account has no groups, but the associated account template is defined to include groups.

Follow these steps:

1. Log in to the User Console.
2. Select Tasks, Endpoints, Manage Endpoints, Check Endpoint Account Synchronization.
3. Select an endpoint.

   A screen appears showing accounts on that endpoint, associated account templates, and which attributes are not synchronized.
4. Click Synchronize to make the attributes for those accounts match what is defined in the account template.

   Changes that you make to account templates affect existing accounts as follows:

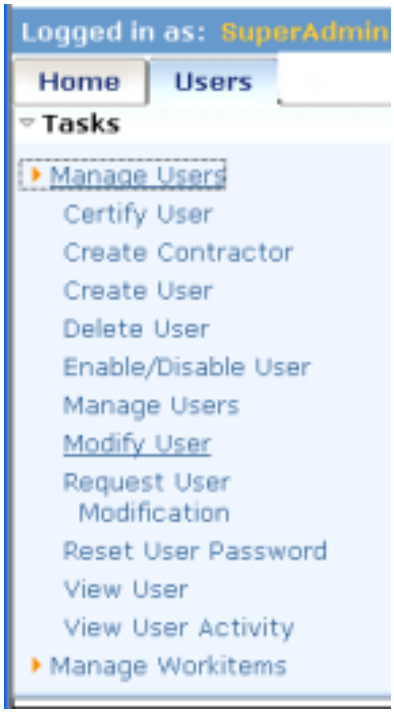
   - If you change the value of a capability attribute, the corresponding account attribute is updated to be synchronized with the account template attribute value. See the description of weak and strong synchronization.
   - Certain account attributes are designated by the connector as not being updated on account template changes. Examples include certain attributes that the endpoint type allows to be set only during account creation, and the Password attribute.

A Sample Admin Task

When you create an admin task, you define the content and layout of screens in the task, including:

- The name of the task
- The category where the task appears
- The tabs and fields to use in the task, and field display properties
- The fields an administrator can use in a search query, and the fields displayed in the search results

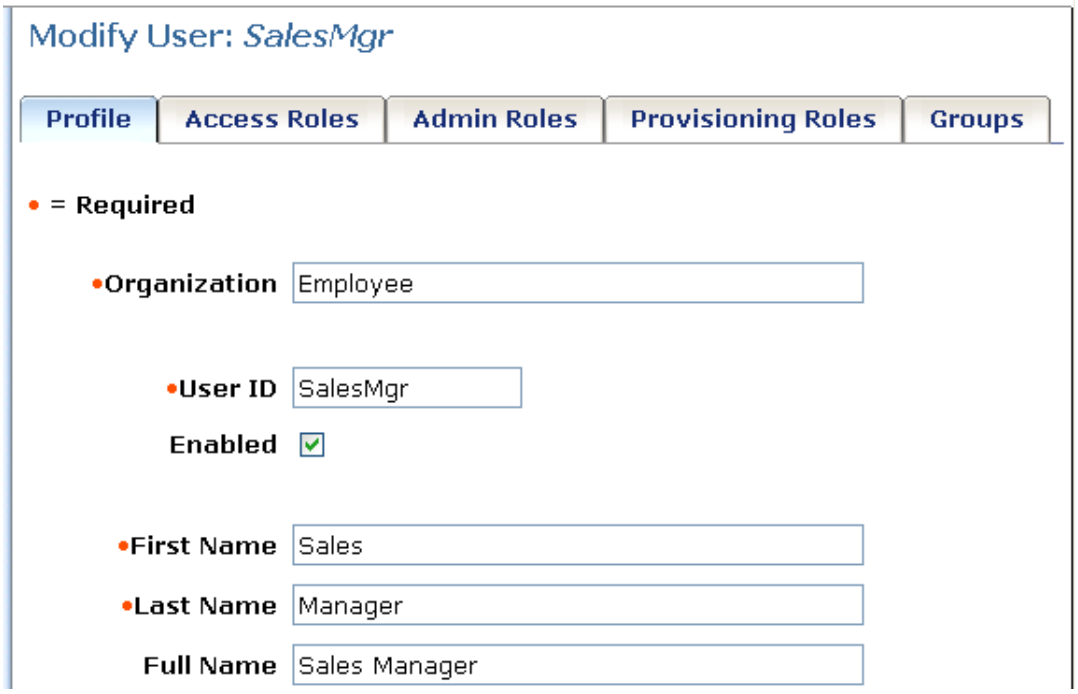
To understand the elements of a task, consider the Modify User task. In this case, Users is the category, Manage Users is a subcategory, and Modify User is the task. You create the category and task names when you create a task.



When you choose Modify User, a search screen appears. A *search screen* provides options for finding the object to view or modify. Each option is called a *filter*, which is a limit to the objects found by the search.

After you fill in the search screen, a screen with tabs appears. For example, the following figure shows the tabs for the Modify User task. The Profile tab appears first and shows user attributes; the other tabs show role and group privileges for the user.

For the task you create, you decide which tabs to include and determine their order and content.

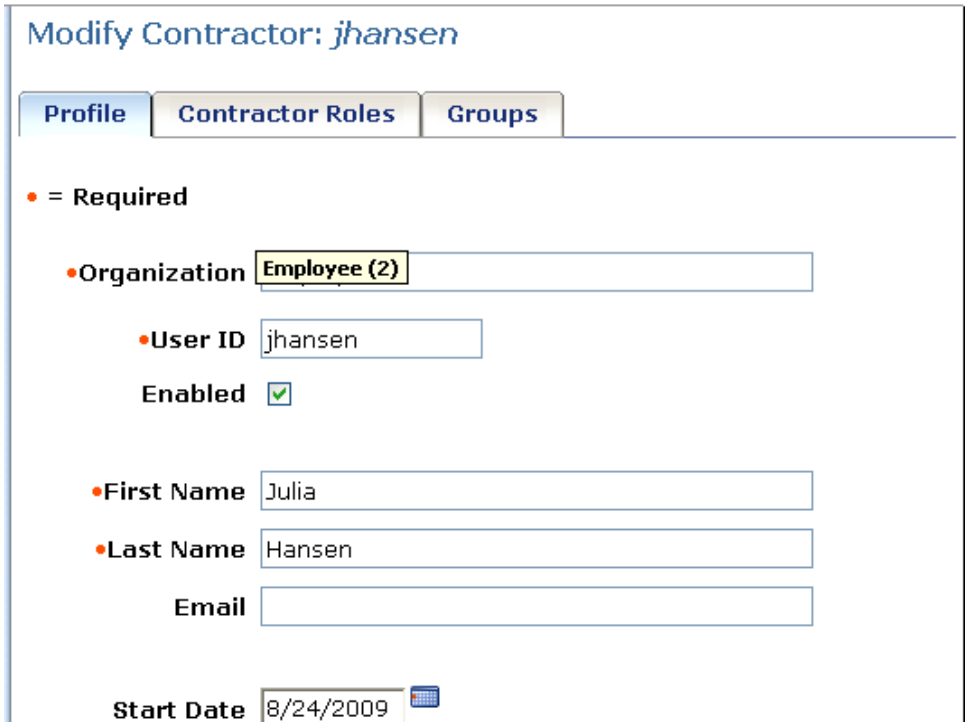


For example, using the Modify User task as a template, you could create a Modify Contractor task, which has changes to:

- The fields on the Profile tab
- The tabs to include in the task and their content
- The category under which the task appears

  You might create this task under a new category, Contractor.

The Modify Contractor task includes some of the fields on the Profile tab in the Modify User task plus other fields, such as the start date of the contract and the contractor's company. Administrators can search for a contractor by searching on the contractor's name, company, and start date.



The new task also includes a Contractor Roles tab where you add roles for contractors.

Request a Report

To view the report, request a report to a user with report administration privileges. Approval is required because some reports may require a long time or significant system resources to run. If your report request requires an approval, the system sends you an email alert.

Follow these steps:

1. Log in to the User Console with report tasks user privileges.
2. Select Tasks, Reports, Reporting Tasks, and Request a Report.

   A list of reports appears.
3. Select the report that you want to request.

   A parameters screen appears.

Provide any parameter information required.

Note: If you are running a snapshot report and no snapshots are available for this report, you must first capture a snapshot.

- Some reports show system status at a specific point in time. When you request this type of report, you select a point in time for which you want to see report data. This point in time is named a *snapshot*.

  Note: The snapshot dates and times you can choose are predetermined. Typically, your system administrator, or another user with report administration privileges, configures snapshots. If no snapshots are available for the report you want to request, contact a system administrator.

- Some reports show activity over a time period. Titles for these reports usually begin with the word *Audit*. When you request this type of report, you specify a time period for which you want to see report data. For example, you can run the Audit-Reset Password report for the past 30 days.

4. Click Schedule Report, and select a schedule for your report.

   Now

   Specifies that the report runs immediately.

   Once

   Specifies that the report runs once, during a specific time period. Select the start date, end date, start time, and end time when you want to generate the report.

   Note: Consider selecting this option if the report you are requesting requires a large amount of data. To conserve system resources, choose a time when there is less system activity.

5. Click Submit.

   The report request is submitted. Depending on your environment configuration, the request runs immediately, or it runs after approval by an administrator.

   Typically, a system administrator or another user with report administration privileges must approve a report request before the system completes it. Approval is required because some reports can require a long time or significant system resources to run. If your report request requires approval, the system sends you an email alert.

View the Report

Depending on your environment configuration, a report will be available to view when an administrator approves the request for that report. If your report request is pending approval, the system sends you an email alert. The report that you want to view does not appear in the search list until it is approved.

Note: In order to view reports in CA Identity Manager using the View My Reports task, enable third-party session cookies in your browser.

Follow these steps:

1. In the User Console, go to Tasks, Reports, Reporting Tasks, and click View My Reports.
2. Search for the generated report that you want to view.

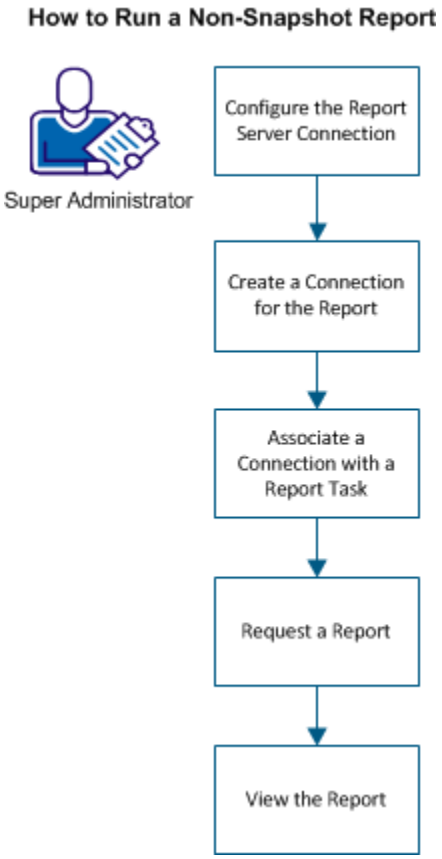
   Both recurrence generated reports and on-demand report instances are displayed.

   Note: If the status of the report is Pending/Recurring, the report is not generated and may take time to complete.
3. Select the report that you want to view.
4. (Optional) Click Export this report (top left corner) to export the report to the following formats:
   - Crystal Report
   - PDF
   - Microsoft Excel (97-2003)
   - Microsoft Excel (97-2003) Data-Only
   - Microsoft Excel (97-2003) - Editable
   - Rich Text Format (RTF)
   - Seperated Values (CSV)
   - XML

How to Run a Non-Snapshot Report

A non-snapshot report includes data from other data sources, such as the Audit, Workflow, or Task Persistence databases. CA Identity Manager includes default audit reports with prefix "Audit-" to their name, in the user console. By default, CA Identity Manager includes only Audit reports, but you can create your own custom reports that can include data from any data source.

This scenario describes how a Super Administrator configures a report database connection and run a non-snapshot report.



The following diagram illustrates the process running a snapshot report:

To run the non-snapshot report, perform the following steps:

1. Configure the report server connection. (see page 407)
2. Create a connection for the report.
3. Associate a connection with the report task.
4. Request a Report.
5. View the Report. (see page 410)

Configure the Report Server Connection

To collect data from the report server, you must configure the connection to the Report Server. Before you begin the procedure, gather the following information about the reporting server:

Name	Description
Host Name	The host name of the machine where the report server is installed
Port	The port name of the machine where the Report Server is installed
Reports folder name	The location of the default CA Identity Manager reports.
User ID	Specifies the user created for the Report Server.
Password	Specifies the password for the user created in the Report Server.
Secure Connection	Specifies the security connection for the report server. Select the checkbox to enable Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) connection between CA Identity Manager and Report Server. **Note**: Before you select the Secure Connection checkbox, verify that you have installed the certificate from the BOServer. For more information about how to configure SSL, see the Chapter "Report Server Installation" in the *Installation Guide*.
Web Server	Specifies the web server. Set to Non-IIS for Tomcat.

Note: We recommend that all systems involved in reporting be set to the same time zone and time.

Follow these steps:

1. In the User Console, click System, Reporting, Report Server Connection.
2. Enter the Report Server settings.
3. Click Test Connection to verify the connection.
4. Click Submit.

The reporting connection is established.

Create a Connection for the Report

Information for CA Identity Manager reports can come from multiple sources. To specify connection details to additional data source for the report, create a JDBC Connection within CA Identity Manager.

Follow these steps:

1. In the User Console, go to Tasks, System, JDBC Connection Management, Create JDBC Connection.
2. Create a new connection object, or choose a connection object based on a specific JNDI data source.
3. Complete all the necessary fields, and click Submit.

   A new JDBC Connection is created.

Important! We recommend that you do *not* use the CA Identity Manager object store database for generating reports.

Associate a Connection with a Report Task

Information for CA Identity Manager reports is captured from multiple sources and each report must associate with a specific data source, depending on the information you want to view in the report.

To associate a connection with a report task

1. In the User Console, go to Tasks, Roles and Tasks, Admin Tasks, Modify Admin Task.
2. Search for the report task you want to associate a connection with.
3. Go to the Search tab and click Browse to locate the search screens.
4. Edit the search screen for the report task and choose a connection under Connection Object for the Report.
5. Click Ok.
6. Click Select.
7. Click Submit.

Request a Report

To view the report, request a report to a user with report administration privileges. Approval is required because some reports may require a long time or significant system resources to run. If your report request requires an approval, the system sends you an email alert.

Follow these steps:

1. Log in to the User Console with report tasks user privileges.
2. Select Tasks, Reports, Reporting Tasks, and Request a Report.

   A list of reports appears.
3. Select the report that you want to request.

   A parameters screen appears.

   Provide any parameter information required.

   Note: If you are running a snapshot report and no snapshots are available for this report, you must first capture a snapshot.

   - Some reports show system status at a specific point in time. When you request this type of report, you select a point in time for which you want to see report data. This point in time is named a *snapshot*.

     Note: The snapshot dates and times you can choose are predetermined. Typically, your system administrator, or another user with report administration privileges, configures snapshots. If no snapshots are available for the report you want to request, contact a system administrator.
   - Some reports show activity over a time period. Titles for these reports usually begin with the word *Audit*. When you request this type of report, you specify a time period for which you want to see report data. For example, you can run the Audit-Reset Password report for the past 30 days.
4. Click Schedule Report, and select a schedule for your report.

   Now

   Specifies that the report runs immediately.

   Once

   Specifies that the report runs once, during a specific time period. Select the start date, end date, start time, and end time when you want to generate the report.

   Note: Consider selecting this option if the report you are requesting requires a large amount of data. To conserve system resources, choose a time when there is less system activity.

5. Click Submit.

   The report request is submitted. Depending on your environment configuration, the request runs immediately, or it runs after approval by an administrator.

   Typically, a system administrator or another user with report administration privileges must approve a report request before the system completes it. Approval is required because some reports can require a long time or significant system resources to run. If your report request requires approval, the system sends you an email alert.

View the Report

Depending on your environment configuration, a report will be available to view when an administrator approves the request for that report. If your report request is pending approval, the system sends you an email alert. The report that you want to view does not appear in the search list until it is approved.

Note: In order to view reports in CA Identity Manager using the View My Reports task, enable third-party session cookies in your browser.

Follow these steps:

1. In the User Console, go to Reports, Reporting Tasks, and click View My Reports.
2. Search for the generated report that you want to view.

   Both recurrence generated reports and on-demand report instances are displayed.

   Note: If the status of the report is Pending/Recurring, the report is not generated and may take time to complete.
3. Select the report that you want to view.
4. (Optional) Click Export this report (top left corner) to export the report to the following formats:
   - Crystal Report
   - PDF
   - Microsoft Excel (97-2003)
   - Microsoft Excel (97-2003) Data-Only
   - Microsoft Excel (97-2003) - Editable
   - Rich Text Format (RTF)
   - Seperated Values (CSV)
   - XML

Set Reporting Options

Configure the number of report instances a user can generate for a specific report.

To modify the reporting options

1. Select Tasks, Reports, Reporting Tasks, Set Reporting Options.

   CA Identity Manager connects to the IAM Report Server and retrieves a list of all the reports.

2. Choose a report, and click Modify.

   The report's attributes pane appears.

3. Edit the following fields:

   Name

   Specifies the display name for the selected report.

   Number of Instances

   Specifies the number of allowed instances that can be generated by a user for this report.

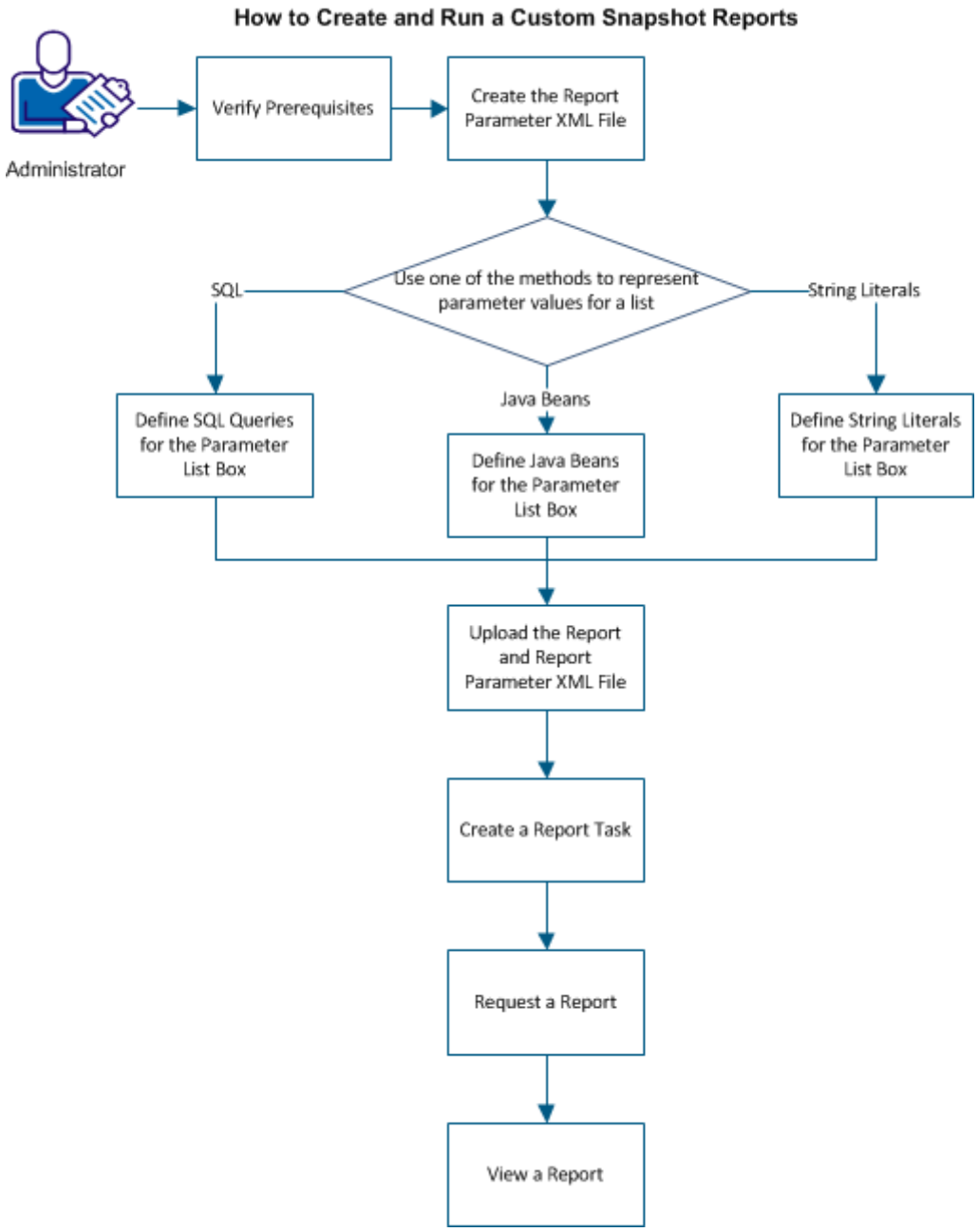
4. Click Ok.

   The reporting attributes are changed.

How to Create and Run a Custom Snapshot Report

CA Identity Manager allows you to create and customize reports to suit your business needs. CA Identity Manager provides a Report Parameter XML file which includes all the parameters related to reporting attributes. According to your business needs, you can choose the required attributes in order to populate report data from the snapshot data source.

The following graphic illustrates the process to create and run a custom snapshot report:



As a system administrator, complete the following steps:

1. Verify prerequisites (see page 414)
2. Create the Report Parameter XML file (see page 414)
3. Use one of the following methods to represent parameter values for a list:
   - Define SQL Queries for the Parameter List Box (see page 417)
   - Define Java Beans for the Parameter List Box (see page 418)

- Define String Literals for the Parameter List Box (see page 418)

4. Upload the Report and Report Parameter XML file (see page 418)
5. Create the report task
6. Request a report
7. View a report (see page 410)

Create a Report in Crystal Reports

In order to use custom reports in CA Identity Manager, create a report (RPT file) in Crystal Reports Developer. For more information on how to create a report in Crystal Reports, refer to your Crystal Reports documentation.

Note: To reference the CA Identity Manager schema in order to create custom reports, the CA Identity Manager database schema is in the following location:

```
C:\Program Files\CA\Identity Manager\IAM Suite\Identity Manager\db\objectstore
```

Create the Report Parameter XML File

A parameter is one of the fields in a report that can be used to filter reports. You can generate a report by filtering the data using parameters. To allow the customization of the report search screen, each report (RPT file) is associated with a Report Parameter XML file. In CA Identity Manager, you can create report tasks and create search screen so that a user can enter or select required data during the generation of a report.

Note: You only need a report parameter XML file if the report queries attributes on the object.

The Report Parameter XML file must have the same name as the report (RPT file) with a .xml extension. For example, if you upload a report named test1.rpt into the Report Server, your XML file should be named test1.xml.

The Report Parameter XML file has the following elements:

<product>

Identifies the product for which the parameters are used. You can create different parameters for multiple products using the same parameter XML file.

<screen>

Defines the parameters that displayed on a screen. You can use the screen element to bind the parameters to a specific screen. The screen ID is alphanumeric and unique, and is used to identify the screens and their parameters.

<parameters>

Specifies the collection of parameters for a screen.

<param>

Defines the parameter element that passes along specified data to the report. The following attributes are used in the <param> element:

id

Defines which parameter in the report to associate with.

Note: The id must have the same name as the parameter in the Crystal Report.

name

This field is not currently used by CA Identity Manager. Set this attribute to the same value as id.

displaytext

Specifies the user-friendly text to be displayed in the screen for the parameter.

type

Defines the type of parameter. The screen display changes based on this attribute. The parameter types supported are as follows:

- **Text Box**

  Example: <param id="param1" displaytext="First Name" name="param1" type="string"/>

- **Date and Time**

  Example: <param id="dateVal" displaytext="Date" name="dateVal" type="date_str"/>

  <param id="timeVal" displaytext="Time" name="timeVal" type="time_str"/>

  <param id="datetimeVal" displaytext="Date & Time" name="datetimeVal" type="date_time_str"/>

- **Drop-down List**

  Example: <param id="lastname1" displaytext="Name" name="lastname1" type="dropdown" default="key1%1FMy Value1%1Ekey2%1FMy Value2" selected_value="My Value2"/>

- **List Box**

  Example: <param id="lstlastname1" displaytext="Name" name="lstlastname1" type="listbox" rows="10" default="key1%1FSuper%1Ekey2%1Fsql2kSuser01%1E key1F%Super"/>

- **Radio Box**

  Example: <param id="optionslist" displaytext="Option 1" name="optionslist" type="radiobox" value="option1"/>

  <param id="optionslist" displaytext="Option 2" name="optionslist" type="radiobox" value="option2"/>

  <param id="optionslist" displaytext="Option 3" name="optionslist" type="radiobox" value="option3"/>

- **Check Box**

  Example: <param id="enabled" displaytext="Enabled" name="enabled" type="checkbox"/>

row

Defines how many rows are visible in a list box.

Default: 5

default

Defines the default value displayed on the screen for a given parameter. This attribute can be used with the string, list box, and drop-down list types.

Define SQL Queries for the Parameter List Box

You can define SQL queries as part of a list box or drop-down box in the Report Parameter XML file. When you associate a parameter to the report and create a report task, the parameter is displayed in the list box or drop-down box to the user. To use SQL in the drop-down box or list box parameter, provide a valid SQL statement in the sql attribute.

Example:

```
<param id="lstlastname2" displaytext="Name" name="lstlastname2" type="sqlstr"
multiselect="true" sql="select lastname, lastname from tblusers where firstname like
'S%/>
```

In the previous example, all the last names of users with a first name that starts with *S* are provided to the report.

However, the condition of the first name that starts with *S* is a static one. This query is not flexible enough for a user to load the value-based on the parameter value entered in one of the previous screens that was used in the same report parameter group. In order to use the previous value that was entered in another screen, the SQL statement can be augmented with *##<parameter id>##*.

For example, if you have a parameter with the id=User, which was of type String:

```
<param id="User" displaytext="First Name" name="firstname" type="string"/>
```

If you want to use the input value for that parameter in SQL, the SQL statement could be as follows:

```
<param id="lstlastname2" displaytext="Name" name="lstlastname2" type="sqlstr"
multiselect="true" sql="select lastname, lastname from tblusers where firstname like
'##User##'/>
```

CA Identity Manager replaces ##User## with the value entered for the parameter with the id=User.

Note: The parameter value to be substituted cannot be in the same screen as the SQL parameter. For example, if the *lstlastname2* is in screen 3, the User parameter should be in one of the previous screens.

Define Java Beans for the Parameter List Box

If using SQL is not ideal, you can use java beans to calculate values and provide the list of <key, value> pairs to CA Identity Manager. The java beans should be in the classpath of CA Identity Manager.

Example:

```
<param id="lastname2" displaytext="Name using Javabean" name="lastname2"
type="dropdown" class="com.ca.ims.reporting.unittests.TestDataCollector"/>
```

In the previous example, the TestDataCollector retrieves the values in its own way and sends the data for the drop-down list to the report. The <key, value> pairs are separated by %1F.

Be sure the java bean is in the iam_im.ear\custom directory.

Note: For more information about implementing java beans, see your Business Objects documentation.

Define String Literals for the Parameter List Box

The simplest way of representing the parameter values for a list or drop-down box is by using string literals. The key value is delimited by %1F and each <key, value> pair is separated by %1E.

Example:

```
<param id="lastname1" displaytext="Name" name="lastname" type="dropdown"
default="key1%1FMy Value1%1Ekey2%1FMy Value2" selected_value="My Value2"/>
```

Upload the Report and Report Parameter XML File

After you create the report (RPT) and the corresponding Report Parameter XML file, upload both files to the Report Server (Business Objects).

Follow these steps:

1. Log in to the Business Objects Central Management Console.
2. Click Folders.
3. Select the IM Reports folder.
4. Create an Object Package.
5. In the new object package, browse to add the Crystal Report.

6. Browse for the new report (RPT) you created.

   Note: Ensure that the IM Reports folder is selected as the folder to save the report in.

7. Click OK.

   Crystal Report file is added.

8. In the new object package, Add a new Local Document and browse for the new Report Parameter XML file.

9. Select the File Type as *Text*.

10. Click OK.

The Report and the Report parameter xml file is now uploaded. In order to verify, go to the IM Reports folder and verify that both the new files are available.

Create the Report Task

Report tasks are used to create, manage, view, and delete the templates for the reports that are generated in the User Console.

Follow these steps:

1. In the User Console, go to Tasks, Roles and Tasks, Admin Tasks, Create Admin Task.
2. Select Create a new admin task and click OK.
3. In the Profile tab, complete the following fields:

   Name

   Defines the name of the report. Each report task name must be unique.

   Tag

   Defines a unique identifier for the task. It is used in a URL, a web service, or properties files. It must consist of letters, numbers, and/or underscores, beginning with a letter or underscore.

   Category

   Specifies the category to which the current task belongs.

   Note: Select the Reports category.

   Category 2

   Specifies the sub-category to which the current task belongs. Enter any string in this field.

   Primary Object

   Specifies the object on which the task operates.

   Note: Select Report Instance as the primary object.

   Action

   Specifies the action that is performed on the primary object.

   Note: Select Create as the action.
4. To create a new search screen for the report task, perform the following steps:
   a. In the Search tab, click Browse to locate the search screens.

      The list of available search screens is displayed.

   b. Click New.

      The Create Screen pane appears.

   c. Select Report Template Selection Screen from the list, and click OK.

      CA Identity Manager connects to the Report Server and displays all the reports.

   d. Complete the following fields:

Name

Defines the name of the report. Each report task name should be unique.

Tag

Acts as a unique identifier within a task. It can contain ASCII characters (a-z, A-Z), numbers (0-9), or underscore characters, beginning with a letter or underscore.

Title

Defines the title of the new search screen. The title must be unique.

Report Template

Identifies the report to associate with the search screen.

Note: Choose one of the reports you added to the Report Server.

Connection Object for the Report

Defines the connection details of the data source to be used for the report.

5. Click Ok.

   The new search screen is now created for reports.

6. In creating a Tabs tab for the report task, perform the following steps:

   a. Click Tabs.

      The tabs that are visible to the user are displayed.

   b. Select the Standard Tab Controller.

   c. If your report uses a snapshot definition, perform the following steps:

      a. From Which tabs should appear in this task?, select Associate Snapshot Definitions.

         The Associate Snapshot Definitions tab is added to the list of tabs.

      b. Click to edit the Associate Snapshot Definitions tab.

      c. Click Add to associate the report task with a snapshot definition.

         A list of available snapshot definitions appear.

      d. Select a Snapshot Definition and click OK.

         The report task is associated with a snapshot definition.

   d. Click Submit.

      The report task is created.

   e. Assign the new report task to an Admin role.

      The CA Identity Manager Admin role users can use the new report task.

The report task is now ready to be used by the Admin.

Note: A report (RPT file) can only be associated with *one* report task.

Request a Report

To view the report, request a report to a user with report administration privileges. Typically, a system administrator or another user with report administration privileges must approve a report request before the system completes it. Approval is required because some reports may require a long time or significant system resources to run. If your report request requires an approval, the system sends you an email alert.

Follow these steps:

1. Log in to the User Console as a user who has access to the report tasks.
2. From the navigation menu, select Tasks, Reports, Reporting Tasks, Request a Report.

   A list of reports appears.
3. Select the report that you want to request.

   A parameters screen appears.
4. Provide any parameter information required.

   Note: If you are running a snapshot report and no snapshots are available for this report, you must first capture a snapshot.

   - Some reports show system status at a specific point in time. When you request this type of report, you select a point in time for which you want to see report data. This point in time is named a *snapshot*.

     Note: The snapshot dates and times you can choose are predetermined. Typically, your system administrator, or another user with report administration privileges, configures snapshots. If no snapshots are available for the report you want to request, contact a system administrator.
   - Some reports show activity over a time period. Titles for these reports usually begin with the word *Audit*. When you request this type of report, you specify a time period for which you want to see report data. For example, you can run the Audit-Reset Password report for the past 30 days.
5. Click Schedule Report, and select a schedule for your report.

   Now

   Specifies that the report runs immediately.

   Once

   Specifies that the report runs once, during a specific time period. Select the start date, end date, start time, and end time when you want to generate the report.

   Note: Consider selecting this option if the report you are requesting requires a large amount of data. To conserve system resources, choose a time when there is less system activity.
6. Click Submit.

The report request is submitted. Depending on your environment configuration, the request runs immediately, or it runs after approval by an administrator.

View the Report

Depending on your environment configuration, a report will be available to view when an administrator approves the request for that report. If your report request is pending approval, the system sends you an email alert. The report that you want to view does not appear in the search list until it is approved.

Note: In order to view reports in CA Identity Manager using the View My Reports task, enable third-party session cookies in your browser.

Follow these steps:

1. In the User Console, go to Tasks, Reports, Reporting Tasks, and click View My Reports.
2. Search for the generated report that you want to view.

   Both recurrence generated reports and on-demand report instances are displayed.

   Note: If the status of the report is Pending/Recurring, the report is not generated and may take time to complete.
3. Select the report that you want to view.
4. (Optional) Click Export this report (top left corner) to export the report to the following formats:
   - Crystal Report
   - PDF
   - Microsoft Excel (97-2003)
   - Microsoft Excel (97-2003) Data-Only
   - Microsoft Excel (97-2003) - Editable
   - Rich Text Format (RTF)
   - Seperated Values (CSV)
   - XML

Troubleshooting

The following section details troubleshooting topics around reporting.

Viewing a Report Redirects To the Infoview Login Page

When viewing a report in CA Identity Manager, you may be re-directed to the Business Objects Infoview login page.

View the report if redirected

1. Be sure that you are using the fully-qualified domain name of the CA Report Server (Business Objects).
2. Right-click on the Infoview login web page and select View Source.
3. Find the URL for the report.
4. Copy and paste the URL into a new browser window.
5. If you do not see the report, use an HTTP trace tool to provide more information.
6. If you do see the report, try the following to fix the browser settings:
   - Accept third-party cookies.
   - Allow session cookies.
   - Remove High security settings.

Generating User Accounts for over 20,000 Records

If over 20,000 records exist, some extra steps are necessary to generate user accounts report.

To generate a user accounts report for over 20,000 records

1. Open the Business Objects Central Management console.
2. Click Servers and select *servername*.pageserver.
3. Select Unlimited records for the entry Database Records To Read When Previewing Or Refreshing a Report.
4. Using a Crystal Reports designer, open the user accounts report.
5. Using Database, Set Datasource Location, set the database location to your snapshot database.
6. Save this change.
7. Using Database, Datasource Expert, right-click Command on the right side window.

   It shows the SQL syntax on the left side and the Parameter List.
8. Enter the parameter name as you find it in the Parameters Fields in the report template.

9. Change the query in the left side and add that parameter in the query.

   For example, if you have reportid parameter, the query will be:

   ```
   Select *  from endPointAttributes, endpointview, imreport6
   where endPointAttributes.imr_endpointid = endpointview.imr_endpointid and
   endPointAttributes.imr_reportid = endpointview.imr_reportid
    endpointview.imr_reportid = imreport6.imr_reportid and imreport6.imr_reportid
   = {?reportid}
   ```

10. Save the report.

Chapter 14: Identity Policies

This section contains the following topics:

Identity Policies (see page 427)
Preventative Identity Policies (see page 448)
Combining Identity Policies and Preventative Identity Policies (see page 457)

Identity Policies

An Identity policy is a set of business changes that occur when a user meets a certain condition or rule. You can use identity policy sets to:

- Automate certain identity management tasks, such as assigning roles and group membership, allocating resources, or modifying user profile attributes.
- Enforce segregation of duties. For example, you can create an identity policy set that prohibits members of the Check Signer role from having the Check Approver role, and restricts anyone in the company from writing a check over $10,000.
- Enforce compliance. For example, you can audit users who have a certain title and make more than $100,000.

  Identity policies that enforce compliance are called *compliance policies*.

The business changes associated with an identity policy include:

- Assigning or revoking roles, including provisioning roles (if you are using a provisioning directory only)
- Assigning or revoking group membership
- Updating attributes in a user profile

For example, a company may create an identity policy which states that all Vice Presidents belong to the Country Club Member group and have the role Salary Approver. When a user's title changes to Vice President and that user is synchronized with the identity policy, CA Identity Manager adds the user to the appropriate group and role. When a Vice President is promoted to CEO, she no longer meets the condition in the Vice President identity policy so the changes applied by that policy are revoked, and new changes based on the CEO policy are applied.

The change actions that occur based on an identity policy contain events which can be placed under workflow-control and audited. In the previous example, the Salary Approver role grants significant privileges to its members. To protect the Salary Approver role, the company can create a workflow process that requires a set of approvals before the role is assigned, and they can configure CA Identity Manager to audit the role assignment.

To simplify identity policy management, Identity policies are grouped in an identity policy set. For example, the Vice President and CEO policies may be part of the Executive Privileges identity policy set.

Note: CA Identity Manager includes an additional type of identity policy, called a *preventative identity policy* (see page 448). These policies, which execute before a task is submitted, allow an administrator to check for policy violations before assigning privileges or changing profile attributes. If a violation exists, the administrator can clear the violation before submitting the task.

Identity Policy Set Planning Worksheet

An identity policy set contains one or more identity policies. Before you create an identity policy set, use the following worksheet to plan each identity policy in the set.

Question	Your Response
What name do you want to give the identity policy?	
Which users does the identity policy apply to?	
When an identity policy is applied to a user, what actions should CA Identity Manager perform?	
When an identity policy that once applied to a user no longer applies, what actions should CA Identity Manager perform?	
Should CA Identity Manager apply the changes in an identity policy multiple times or only the first time a user meets the conditions in the policy?	

After you complete this worksheet for each identity policy in a policy set, verify that the policies do not conflict with other policies. For example, make sure that a policy does not grant a privilege that another policy revokes.

Create an Identity Policy Set

To create an identity policy set, you must have the System Manager role, or a role that includes the Create Identity Policy Set task.

To create an identity policy set, complete the following steps:

1. Define the Profile for the Identity Policy Set (see page 429)
2. Create a Policy Set Member Rule (see page 430)
3. Create an Identity Policy (see page 430)
4. Specify Owners for the Identity Policy Set (see page 439)

Note: To use policies for CA Identity Manager environment, enable identity policies in the CA Identity Manager Management Console. See the *Configuration Guide* for more information.

Define the Profile for the Identity Policy Set

The Profile tab allows you to define basic properties for an identity policy set.

To define an identity policy set profile

1. Select Policies, Manage Identity Policies, Create Identity Policy Set from the User Console.

   You must be logged in to CA Identity Manager as a user with privileges to manage identity policies. The default System Manager role includes these privileges.
2. Choose to create a new identity policy set or create a copy of an existing identity policy set.
3. Enter a name for the identity policy set.
4. Enter a category for the identity policy set.

   The category groups identity policy sets with similar purposes for reporting. The Category field is required.
5. Optionally, enter a description for the identity policy set.
6. If you do not want to make the identity policy set available for use, clear the Enabled check box.
7. When you have completed the Profile tab, select the Policies tab to create the identity policies for the identity policy set.

More information:

Create an Identity Policy (see page 430)
Create a Policy Set Member Rule (see page 430)

Create a Policy Set Member Rule

You can create a member rule for a policy set, so that the policy set applies only to certain users. The rule is evaluated before evaluating identity policies in the set, which can save significant time. For example, if a member rule limits the identity policy evaluation to 10 percent of users, it saves 90 percent of the evaluation time.

To create a Policy Set Member Rule

1. Select the Policies tab.
2. Click the Edit symbol under Policy Set Member Rule.
3. Enter a rule to apply the policy to only certain users.
4. Click OK.

More Information:

Create an Identity Policy (see page 430)

Create an Identity Policy

After you define the profile and member rule for the Identity Policy Set, you can define the identity policies in that policy set.

Note: In large implementations, it may take significant time to evaluate identity policy rules. To reduce the evaluation time for rules that include user-attributes, you can enable the in-memory evaluation option. For more information, see the *Configuration Guide*.

To create an identity policy

1. Select the Policies tab.
2. Click Add.
3. Enter a name for the identity policy.
4. Select the Apply Once check box if you want to apply the policy only when a user first meets the policy.
5. Select the Compliance check box to flag this policy as a compliance policy.

   If this check box is selected:

   - CA Identity Manager can generate reports for users that are not synchronized with compliance policies.
   - The Compliance Violation action is visible in the Action on Apply/Remove Policy list box.
6. Identify the users to which the policy applies in the Policy Condition section.

7. In the Action on Apply Policy section, define the actions that CA Identity Manager takes when the identity policy is applied to a user.
8. In the Action on Remove Policy section, define the actions that CA Identity Manager takes when a user no longer meets the conditions for the identity policy.
9. Click OK.

Note: Before you can use the identity policy set that you created, enable identity policies in the Management Console. See the *Configuration Guide* for more information.

The Apply Once Setting

CA Identity Manager applies an identity policy differently, based on the Apply Once setting.

Enabling the Apply Once Setting

If the Apply Once setting is enabled, CA Identity Manager applies the changes associated with the identity policy when a user *first* meets the condition defined in the policy. The change actions associated with the policy occur only once. Therefore, CA Identity Manager does not apply policy updates to users, if the policy was previously applied.

When a user no longer meets the condition defined in the policy, CA Identity Manager executes the policy's remove actions.

The Apply Once setting is typically used when provisioning resources. For example, you may have a policy that assigns a cell phone to managers. When a user first becomes a manager, that user is assigned a cell phone. CA Identity Manager only issues the cell phone once, not each time the policy is evaluated. If the cell phone policy is updated to include a newer cell phone model, CA Identity Manager does not issue new cell phones to existing managers.

Note: Resource provisioning is available when CA Identity Manager integrates with a Provisioning Server.

Disabling the Apply Once Setting

If the Apply Once setting is not enabled, the change actions associated with the identity policy are applied each time an identity policy is evaluated. This means that CA Identity Manager applies change actions for every user who meets the condition in the policy, regardless of whether the change actions were applied previously.

Typically, you disable the Apply Once setting in an identity policy that enforces compliance. For example, you can create an identity policy that restricts managers' spending authority to $5,000. If CA Identity Manager encounters a manager whose spending authority is set to $10,000, it resets the spending authority to $5,000. Each time a manager is synchronized with the identity policy, CA Identity Manager checks to make sure the spending authority is set correctly.

If a manual change that conflicts with a change action is made to a user profile, CA Identity Manager overwrites the change when the user is synchronized with the policy.

In the previous example, if someone manually increases a manager's spending authority to $10,000, CA Identity Manager resets the spending authority to $5,000 when the manager is synchronized with the policy.

The following table summarizes the effects of enabling or disabling the Apply Once setting.

If Apply Once is...	Then...
Enabled	■ Change Actions associated with the identity policy are applied only once ■ Manual changes made after the identity policy is applied are preserved ■ Updates are not applied to users who meet the condition in an identity policy, if CA Identity Manager applied the policy previously ■ When a user no longer meets the condition in an identity policy, CA Identity Manager executes the remove actions
Disabled	■ Change actions associated with the identity policy are applied every time a user is synchronized with the policy ■ Manual changes are overwritten when the identity policy is applied ■ Updates to the policy are applied when a user is synchronized ■ When a user no longer meets the condition in an identity policy, CA Identity Manager executes the remove actions

Policy Conditions

Policy conditions are the rules that determine the set of users to which an identity policy applies.

The following table describes the available options.

Syntax	Condition	Example
(all)	The identity policy applies to all users.	

Syntax	Condition	Example
where <user-filter>	The user must match one or more attribute values.	Users where title=manager and locality=east
in <org-rule>	The user must belong to named organizations. **Note:** When you select this option, CA Identity Manager displays a new list box where you can select the following options: ■ organization <organization> [and lower]-- Use an organization search screen to select an organization and, optionally, include the organization's child organizations. ■ Organizations where <org-filter> [and lower]--Specify a filter that selects one or more organizations.	Users in organization sales and lower
where <user-filter> and who are in <org-rule>	The user must match specific user attributes and belong to a specific organization.	title=manager and organization=Sales*
who are members of <group-member-rule>	The user must belong to a group which meets a condition specified by attributes on the group. **Note:** When you select this option, CA Identity Manager displays a new list box where you can select the following options: ■ group <group>--Use a group search screen to select a group. ■ group where <group-filter>--Specify a filter that selects one or more groups.	Users who are members of groups where owner=CIO

Syntax	Condition	Example
who are members of <role-rule>	The user must be a member of a role. The role can be an: ■ access role ■ admin role ■ provisioning role **Note:** To use provisioning roles, CA Identity Manager must integrate with a Provisioning Server. See the *Installation Guide* for more information.	Users who are members of the Help Desk role
who are administrators of <role-rule>	The user must an administrator for a role. The role can be an: ■ access role ■ admin role ■ provisioning role **Note:** To use provisioning roles, CA Identity Manager must integrate with a Provisioning Server. See the *Installation Guide* for more information.	Users who are administrators of the Sales Manager role
who are owners of <role-rule>	The user must be an owner for a role. The role can be an: ■ access role ■ admin role ■ provisioning role **Note:** To use provisioning roles, CA Identity Manager must integrate with a Provisioning Server. See the *Installation Guide* for more information.	Users who are owners of the User Manager role
returned by the query <LDAP-query>	The user must meet a condition based on an LDAP query.	User who meet the conditions of an LDAP query. For example: (departmentNumber= Accounts)

Syntax	Condition	Example
in <administrative-union-constraint>	The user must meet at least one of the conditions in a list of conditions. You can include the following types of filters in an administrative union constraint: ■ Member of access/admin/provisioning role ■ Administrator of access/admin/provisioning role ■ owner of access/admin/provisioning role ■ member of a group	Users who are a member of the Certify Manager role, *or* who are an owner of the Certify Manager role.
in <administrative-intersection-constraint>	The user must all of the conditions in a list of conditions. You can include the following types of filters in an administrative union constraint: ■ Member of access/admin/provisioning role ■ Administrator of access/admin/provisioning role ■ owner of access/admin/provisioning role ■ member of a group	Users who are members of the Contract Initiator role *and* the Contract Approver role.

Actions on Apply/Remove Policies

You can define change actions that CA Identity Manager performs when it evaluates the identity policy. The actions include:

Actions on Apply Policy

A set of actions that CA Identity Manager performs when a user meets the conditions in the policy conditions.

Actions on Remove Policy

A set of actions that CA Identity Manager performs when a user no longer meets the conditions in the policy conditions.

The actions that CA Identity Manager can perform when identity policies are applied or removed are the same. See the following table for more information.

Change Action	Description
Add to group <group-name> [...]	Adds users to a group. When you select this option, CA Identity Manager presents a screen where you can search for the group you want.
Add to <group-name> in user's organization	Adds users to a local group. When you select this option, CA Identity Manager presents a text box where you can enter the name of the group that you want.
Set <single-value-user-attribute> to value	Sets the value of an attribute in a user profile. If there is an existing value, CA Identity Manager overwrites it with the value specified in the change action.
Add <value> to <multi-value-user-attribute>	Adds a value to a multi-value user attribute. This option does not overwrite existing values.
Make member of access role	Assigns users to an access role.
Make administrator of access role	Make users administrators of an access role
Make member of admin role	Makes users members of an admin role
Make administrator of admin role	Makes users administrators of an admin role
Make member of provisioning role	Makes users members of a provisioning role, which creates associated endpoint accounts. **Note:** To use provisioning roles, CA Identity Manager must integrate with a Provisioning Server. See the *Installation Guide* for your application server.

Change Action	Description
Make administrator of provisioning role	Makes users administrators of a provisioning role. **Note:** To use provisioning roles, CA Identity Manager must integrate with a Provisioning Server. See the *Installation Guide* for your application server.
Remove from group <group-name> [...]	Removes users from a group. When you select this option, CA Identity Manager presents a screen where you can search for the group you want.
Remove from <group-name> in user's organization	Removes users from a local group. When you select this option, CA Identity Manager presents a text box where you can enter the name of the group that you want.
Remove <value> from <multi-value-user-attribute>	Removes a value from a multi-value user attribute.
Remove member from access role	Revokes an access role.
Remove administrator from access role	Revokes administrator privileges for a specific access role
Remove member from admin role	Revokes an admin role.
Remove administrator from admin role	Revokes administrator privileges for a specific admin role
Remove member from provisioning role	Revokes a provisioning role.
Remove administrator from provisioning role	Revokes administrator privileges for a specific provisioning role.
Send audit message	Sends a message that you create to the audit database. This message may appear in a report that you create.

Change Action	Description
Compliance violation	Sends a message that you create to the audit database. If you create a compliance report, the message appears each time the identity policy is applied/removed from a user. See the *Configuration Guide* for more information about auditing. **Note:** You must enable the Compliance check box on the Profile tab for the Identity Policy Set to use the Compliance Violation option.
Accept (Action on Apply Policies only)	Allows the task to submit when there is a preventative identity policy violation. When you select this action, you provide a message that CA Identity Manager writes in the audit database and displays in View Submitted Tasks when a violation occurs.
Reject (Action on Apply Policies only)	Prevents a task from submitting when an identity policy violation occurs. This action is used with preventative identity policies to prevent users from receiving privileges that may result in a conflict of interest or fraud. When you select this action, you also provide a message that CA Identity Manager displays when a violation occurs. The message is stored in the audit database and displayed in the User Console.
Warning (Action on Apply Policies only)	Triggers a workflow process when a preventive identity policy violation occurs, if you associate that violation with a workflow approval policy. CA Identity Manager allows the task to submit regardless of whether workflow is configured. **Note:** For information about associating a workflow process with a preventative identity policy, see Workflow and Preventative Identity Policies. (see page 453) When you select this action, you also provide a message that CA Identity Manager displays when a violation occurs. The message is stored in the audit database and displayed in View Submitted Tasks.

More information:

Preventative Identity Policies (see page 448)
Workflow and Preventative Identity Policies (see page 453)

Specify Owners for the Identity Policy Set

On the Owners tab, you define rules about who can be an owner of the identity policy set. An identity policy set owner can modify the basic information about the policy set, and can add, change, or remove identity policies in the set.

Follow these steps:

1. Select the Owners tab.
2. Click Add and define owner rules.
3. Click Submit.

Manage an Identity Policy Set

CA Identity Manager includes the following tasks for managing an identity policy set:

- View Identity Policy Set
- Modify Identity Policy Set
- Delete Identity Policy Set

By default, when an administrator uses one of these tasks, CA Identity Manager displays a list of all identity policy sets for which that administrator is an owner. The administrator can then choose the policy set he needs from the list.

In a CA Identity Manager environment that includes many identity policy sets, you may want to customize the View, Modify, and Delete Identity Policy Set tasks to allow administrators to search for an identity policy set, instead of displaying them in a list.

To customize these tasks:

1. In the User Console, select Roles and Tasks, Admin Roles, Modify Admin Task.

   The Modify Admin Task screen opens.
2. Search for and select the task that you want to customize.
3. On the Scope tab, select All Identity Policy Sets.

   When you select this option, CA Identity Manager uses the Default Identity Policy Set Search screen definition.
4. Click Submit.

How Users and Identity Policies Are Synchronized

When using identity policies, it is important to understand how CA Identity Manager evaluates and applies the policies to users. Without a thorough understanding of the user synchronization process, you may configure identity policy sets that yield unexpected results.

The following procedure describes how CA Identity Manager evaluates and applies identity policies:

1. The user synchronization process begins:
   - **Automatically**—You can configure CA Identity Managertasks to automatically trigger user synchronization
   - **Manually**—Use the Synchronize User task in the User Console to synchronize a user.
2. CA Identity Manager determines the set of identity policies that apply to a user.
3. CA Identity Manager compares the set of identity policies that apply to a user with the list of policies that have already been applied to that user.

   Note: The list of policies that have been applied to a user is stored in the %IDENTITY_POLICY% well-known attribute in the user profile. For information on configuring this attribute, see the *Configuration Guide*.
   - If an identity policy is on the list of applicable policies, *and* the policy has *not* been applied to the user previously, then CA Identity Manager adds the policy to an allocation list.
   - If an identity policy is on the list of applicable policies, the policy has been previously applied to the user, and the Apply Once setting for the policy is disabled, CA Identity Manager adds the policy to a reallocation list.
   - An identity policy is not on the list of applicable policies, and the policy has been applied to the user, the user no longer matches the policy condition. CA Identity Manager adds these policies to a deallocation list.
4. After CA Identity Manager evaluates all of the policies for a user, it applies policies in the following order:
   a. Identity policies from the deallocation list
   b. Identity policies from the allocation list
   c. Identity policies from the reallocation list

5. After the identity policies have been applied, CA Identity Manager reevaluates the policies to see if any additional changes are needed based on changes that occurred in the first synchronization process (steps 2-4).

   This is to ensure that changes made by applying identity policies did not trigger other identity policies.

6. CA Identity Manager continues to reevaluate and apply identity policies until the user is synchronized with all applicable policies, or until CA Identity Manager reaches the maximum recursion level, which is defined in the Management Console.

   For example, an identity policy may change a user's department when the user is assigned a role. The new department triggers another identity policy. However, if the recursion level is set to 1, the subsequent change is not made until the user is synchronized again.

   For more information about setting the recursion level, see the Management Console Online Help.

Configure Automatic User Synchronization

CA Identity Manager can automatically synchronize user accounts with identity policies at different points during a task's lifecycle.

A CA Identity Manager task generates *events*, detectable activities that occur during task processing. For example, the default Create User task generates the CreateUserEvent, AddUserToGroupEvent, and the AssignAccessRoleEvent. You can configure CA Identity Manager to synchronize users after a task completes, or when each event completes.

Note: The section Synchronize Users with Identity Policies (see page 440) provides more information on the user synchronization process.

To configure a task to trigger user synchronization

1. Log in to CA Identity Manager as a user who can modify admin tasks.
2. Select Roles and Tasks, Admin Tasks, Modify Admin Task.

   CA Identity Manager displays a search screen.

3. Search for and select the admin task that will trigger user synchronization.

4. Select one of the following options in the User Synchronization field on the Profile tab for the task:

   - **Off**—This task will not trigger user synchronization.
   - **On Task Completion**—CA Identity Manager starts the user synchronization process after all of the events have completed. This setting is the default synchronization option for the Create User, Modify User, and Delete User tasks. The default setting for all other tasks is Off.

     Note: If you select the On Task Completion option for a task that includes multiple events, CA Identity Manager does not synchronize users until all of the events in the task complete. If one or more of those events require workflow approval, this may take several days. To prevent CA Identity Manager from waiting to apply identity policies until all events complete, select the On Every Event option.
   - **On Every Event**—CA Identity Manager starts the user synchronization process when each event in a task completes.

     For tasks with a primary and secondary event for the same user, setting user synchronization to On Every Event may result in more evaluations for which policies apply to a user than if the On Task Completion option is selected.

Synchronize Users Manually

You may want to manually synchronize a user with an identity policy set to ensure that a user account has the right privileges, or complies with a compliance policy.

You can manually synchronize a user by using the Synchronize User task in the CA Identity Manager User Console.

Note: For the Synchronize User task to work properly, the User Synchronization option must be set to Off, and the Account Synchronization option must be set to On Task Completion or On Every Event. For better performance, choose the On Task Completion option. These options are set in the Profile tab for the Synchronize User task.

The Synchronize User task includes the following tabs:

- **Currently Matched Policies**—Displays a list of identity policies that CA Identity Manager will apply to the user when the Synchronize User task is submitted.

  Note: The Currently Matched Policies tab displays only the identity policies that apply to the user at the time you access the Synchronize User task. When the user is synchronized with those policies, changes may occur that trigger other identity policies. To prevent CA Identity Manager from applying the new policies until you have reviewed them, set the recursion level for identity policy sets to 1 in the CA Identity Manager Management Console. After submitting the Synchronize User task, access it again to review the policies.

- **Policies Already Applied**—Displays a list of identity policies that have already been applied to the user.
- **Synchronization Summary**—Displays all of the identity policies that apply to the user and the change actions for those policies.

To synchronize a user account

1. Log in to CA Identity Manager as a user who can use the Synchronize User task. (By default, users with the System Manager role can use this task.)
2. Select Policies, Synchronize User.

   The Synchronize User task opens.
3. Select the Synchronization Summary tab.
4. Review the policies and associated actions that CA Identity Manager will apply to the user, then click Submit.

Verify User Synchronization

To verify that the appropriate changes take place when a user is synchronized with identity policies, check the Policies Already Applied tab in the Synchronize User task.

1. Log in to CA Identity Manager as a user who can use the Synchronize User task. (By default, users with the System Manager role can use this task.)
2. Select Policies, Synchronize User.

   The Synchronize User task opens.
3. Select the Policies Already Applied tab.
4. Review the policies and associated actions that CA Identity Manager applied to the user.

Identity Policy Sets in a CA Identity Manager Environment

The following sections describe different ways to use identity policies:

- Example: Automatically Populating User Attributes (see page 444)
- Example: Allocating Resources and Entitlements (see page 445)
- Example: Enforcing Compliance (see page 446)
- Example: Enforcing Segregation of Duties (see page 447)

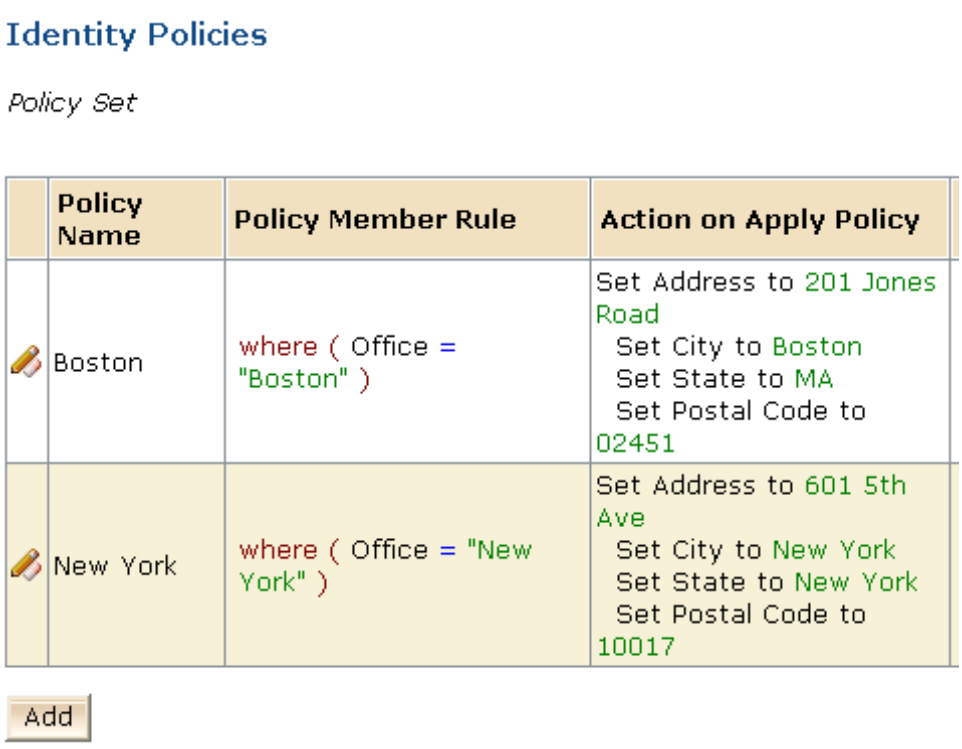
Example: Automatically Populating User Attributes

You can use an identity policy set to automatically assign user attribute values based on another attribute value or user entitlement. For example, you can create an identity policy set that automatically fills in a user's mailing address based on the user's home office.

To configure an identity policy set for employee addresses, create an identity policy with the following settings for each office location:

Setting	Value
Policy Condition	office = <office_location>
Action on Apply Policy	set Street Address = <some street_address> set City = <some city> Set State/Province = <some state or province> Set Postal Code = <some postal code>

The following figure shows sample policies in the Employee Addresses identity policy set.



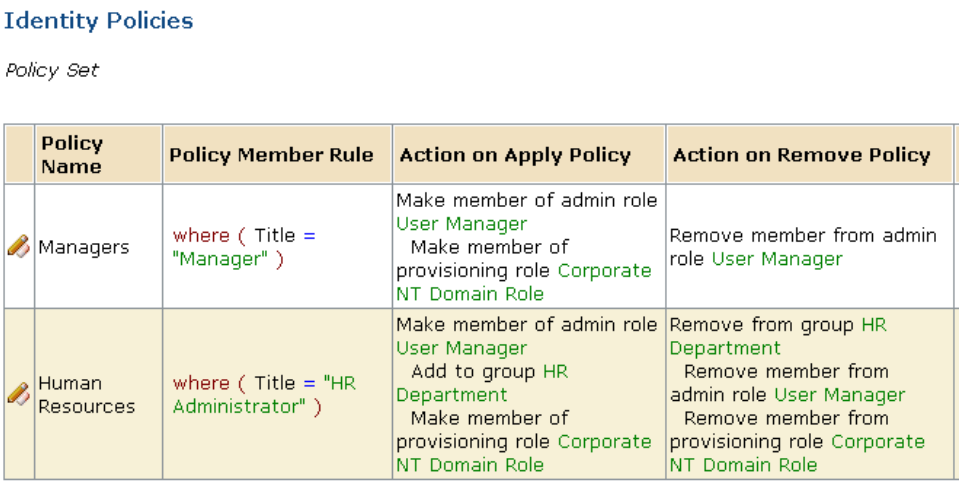
Example: Allocating Resources and Entitlements

Identity policies can automatically assign resources, such as domain accounts, or grant entitlements, such as making a user a member of a role, when users meet the policy condition. For example, you can create a set of identity policies that assign resources and roles based on a user's title.

To create an identity policy set for allocating resources and roles, create an identity policy with the following settings for each of the titles in your organization:

Setting	Value
Policy Condition	title = <some_title>
Action on Apply Policy	Any actions that allocate resources or entitlements to users who meet the policy condition, for example: ■ make member of <some_group> ■ make member of admin role <some_admin_role> ■ make member of provisioning role <some_provisioning role>
Action on Remove Policy	Any actions that remove resources or entitlements when a user no longer meets the policy condition. For example, if CA Identity Manager made the user a member of a role when the identity policy was applied, you may want to configure CA Identity Manager to revoke the role when the user no longer meets the policy condition.

The following figure illustrates sample policies in the Employee Resources identity policy set:



Identity Policies

Policy Set

	Policy Name	Policy Member Rule	Action on Apply Policy	Action on Remove Policy
	Managers	where (Title = "Manager")	Make member of admin role User Manager Make member of provisioning role Corporate NT Domain Role	Remove member from admin role User Manager
	Human Resources	where (Title = "HR Administrator")	Make member of admin role User Manager Add to group HR Department Make member of provisioning role Corporate NT Domain Role	Remove from group HR Department Remove member from admin role User Manager Remove member from provisioning role Corporate NT Domain Role

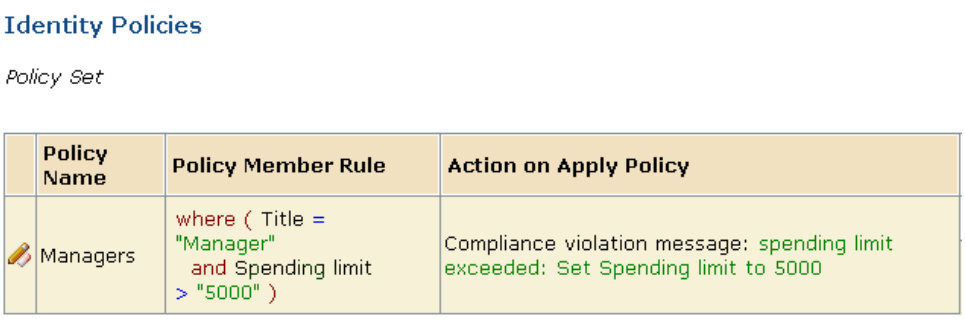
Example: Enforcing Compliance

You can configure identity policies to define conditions that must or must not exist, and to take certain actions based on the evaluation of those conditions. For example, you can define a compliance policy that states that managers must have a spending limit of $5,000. If a manager has a spending limit of $10,000, CA Identity Manager can reset the manager's spending limit, and record a compliance violation for auditing purposes.

To create a compliance policy set for enforcing spending limits, create an identity policy with the following settings:

Setting	Value
Apply Once	Not enabled
Compliance	Enabled
Policy Condition	Any conditions that define compliance or a compliance violation--for example: title=<some_title> AND Spending Limit > <some spending limit>
Action on Apply Policy	The actions that CA Identity Manager should take when the policy condition applies--for example: ■ Compliance violation message: Spending limit exceeded ■ Set spending limit to <some_value>

The following figure shows the sample compliance policy described in this example.



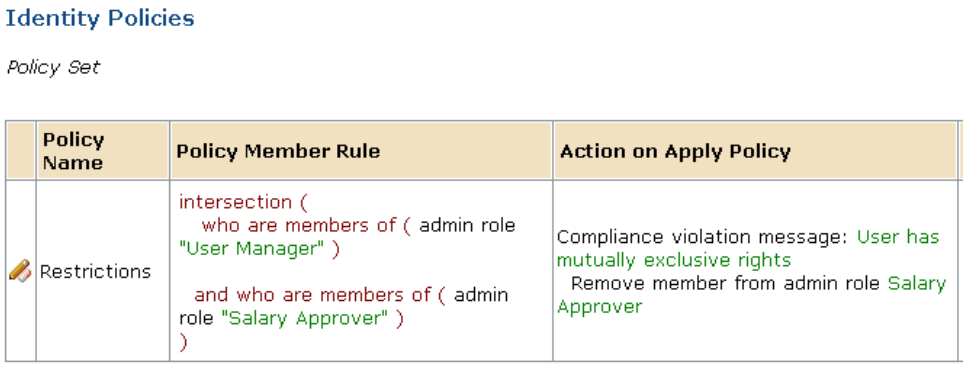
Example: Enforcing Segregation of Duties

Identity policies can define roles that are mutually exclusive and cannot be granted to the same user concurrently. For example, you can prevent a user manager who can grant raises from also being a salary approver.

To create an identity policy set that enforces segregation of duties, create an identity policy with the following settings:

Setting	Value
Apply Once	Not enabled
Compliance	Enabled
Policy Condition	Use the "in <administrative-intersection-constraint>" option to define a set of conditions that violate a business policy. If a user meets all of the conditions, CA Identity Manager takes the actions in the Action on Apply Policy field. For example, set the policy condition as follows: intersection (who are members of <some_role>) and who are members of <some_other_role>)
Action on Apply Policy	The actions that CA Identity Manager should take when the policy condition applies--for example: ■ Compliance violation message: User has mutually exclusive roles ■ Remove member from <some_role>

The following figure illustrates the identity policy in this example.



Identity Policies

Policy Set

	Policy Name	Policy Member Rule	Action on Apply Policy
	Restrictions	intersection (who are members of (admin role "User Manager") and who are members of (admin role "Salary Approver"))	Compliance violation message: User has mutually exclusive rights Remove member from admin role Salary Approver

Preventative Identity Policies

A *preventative identity policy* is a type of identity policy that prevents users from receiving privileges that may result in a conflict of interest or fraud. These policies support a company's Segregation of Duties (SOD) requirements.

Preventative identity policies, which execute before a task is submitted, allow an administrator to check for policy violations before assigning privileges or changing profile attributes. If a violation exists, the administrator can clear the violation before submitting the task.

For example, a company can create a preventative identity policy that prohibits users who have the User Manager role from also having the User Approver role. If an administrator uses the Modify User task to give a User Manager the User Approver role, CA Identity Manager displays a message about the violation. The administrator can change the role assignments to clear the violation before submitting the task.

You can create preventative identity policies for the following changes:

- **Role membership**

  Prevents users from having certain roles at the same time.

  For example, users cannot have the User Manager and User Approver roles at the same time.

- **Role administrators**

  Prevents users from being administrators of certain roles if they are administrators of other roles.

  For example, users cannot be administrators for the User Manager and User Approver roles at the same time.

- **User attributes**

  Prevents users from having certain profile attributes at the same time.

  For example, users cannot have the title Senior Account and belong to the IT department.

- **Organization attributes**

  Prevents user profiles from being created in a certain organization.

  For example, administrators cannot create employee profiles in the Suppliers organization.

- **Group attributes**

  Prevents users from being members in certain groups.

  For example, users cannot be members of the Project Team group and the Accounting Group.

More information:

Actions for Preventative Identity Policy Violations (see page 449)

Actions for Preventative Identity Policy Violations

When a preventative identity policy applies to a business change, CA performs certain actions to address the violation.

When you specify one of these actions in an identity policy, you specify a message that describes the violation. This message is recorded in the audit database. Depending on the type of action, the message may also be displayed to users in the User Console and recorded in View Submitted Tasks.

You can configure the following actions for a preventative identity policy:

Accept

CA Identity Manager displays a message in View Submitted Tasks that describes the violation, but allows the task to be submitted.

Reject

CA Identity Manager displays a message in the User Console and prohibits the task from submitting.

Warning

CA Identity Manager displays a message in the User Console and in View Submitted Tasks. This action can optionally trigger a workflow process that requires an approval from an appropriate user before CA Identity Manager executes the task.

To trigger a workflow process, you associate the preventative identity policy with a policy-based workflow process (see page 455) in tasks that may cause the violation.

For example, if the violation occurs when a user receives certain roles at the same time, configure the workflow process for all tasks that assign those roles to users.

Note: When you configure the policy-based workflow process for the task, the approval rule must reference the name of the preventative identity policy.

How Preventative Identity Policies Work

The following sample process illustrates how preventative identity policies work:

1. An identity policy administrator creates a preventative identity policy that prohibits users who have the title Senior Accountant from being in the IT department.

   When defining this identity policy, the administrator specifies that CA Identity Manager should reject any changes that violate this policy.

2. An HR administrator uses the Create User task to create a user profile for a new Senior Accountant. The HR administrator correctly selects the user's title, but accidentally selects the IT department.

3. The HR administrator completes the remaining fields in the Create User task and clicks Submit.

4. CA Identity Manager detects that the task involves changes that are defined in an identity policy and evaluates the changes for violations.

5. CA Identity Manager detects the violation, displays a message to the HR administrator, and prevents the task from submitting.

   CA Identity Manager also records the message in the audit database.

6. The HR administrator views the details of the violation in the message and changes the user's department to Finance. Then, the administrator resubmits the task.

7. CA Identity Manager evaluates the proposed changes against all applicable identity policies, and then allows the Create User task to submit.

Important Notes about Preventative Identity Policies

Before you implement preventative identity policies, note the following:

- Preventative identity policies only prevent violations that would occur because of proposed changes in the current task. They do not prevent existing violations.

  For example, a company creates a preventative identity policy that prohibits users from having the User Manager and User Approver roles at the same time. An administrator assigns the Group Manager role to a user who already has the User Manager and User Approver roles. CA Identity Manager allows the new assignment to succeed because that change does not directly cause a violation of the policy.

- If multiple preventative identity policies apply to a set of proposed changes, CA Identity Manager applies policies with Reject actions first.

- Do not specify dynamic groups in preventative identity policy conditions. (Policy conditions determine the set of users that the preventative identity policy applies to.)

  For example, a company has a dynamic group that includes all users who have the title Manager. That company also creates a preventative identity policy that prohibits members of the Managers group from having the Contractors role.

  An administrator changes the title of a user who has the Contractors role to Manager. This change will make the user a member of the Managers group *after* the task submits successfully. However, the user's title is not Manager at the time that CA Identity Manager evaluates the policy, so no violation is detected.

- The role owner filter and the LDAP query filter are not supported in policy conditions for preventative identity policies.

Create a Preventative Identity Policy

Before you create a preventative identity policy, you create an identity policy set, which logically groups a set of identity policies.

Note: See Important Notes about Preventative Identity Policies (see page 451) before you begin.

To create a preventative identity policy set

1. Open Policies, Create Identity Policy Set in the User Console.

   Create a new identity policy set or use an existing identity policy set as a template.

2. Define the profile for the identity policy set (see page 429) on the Profile tab.

3. Create a policy set member rule (see page 430) on the Policies tab.

4. Create a preventative identity policy as follows:

   a. Click Add.

b. Enter a name for the identity policy.

Note: The Apply Once and Compliance settings do not apply to preventative identity policies.

c. Identify the users to which the policy applies in the Policy Condition section.

Note: The role owner filter and the LDAP query filter are not supported for preventative identity policies.

d. In the Action on Apply Policy field, define the actions that CA Identity Manager takes when CA Identity Manager detects a policy violation:

Accept

CA Identity Manager displays a message in View Submitted Tasks that describes the violation, but allows the task to be submitted.

Reject

CA Identity Manager displays a message in the User Console and prohibits the task from submitting.

Warning

CA Identity Manager displays a message in the User Console and in View Submitted Tasks. This action can optionally trigger a workflow process (see page 453).

When you select one of these actions, CA Identity Manager displays a text box where you can specify the message that appears when a violation occurs.

e. Specify the message in the text box.

Note: If you are localizing the User Console, you can specify a resource key instead of text in the message field. See the *User Console Design Guide* for more information about resource keys.

f. Add additional actions if necessary and click OK.

5. Specify owners for the Identity Policy set (see page 439).

Note: Before you use the identity policy set that you created, make sure that identity policies are enabled in the Management Console. See the *Configuration Guide* for more information.

Use Case: Preventing Users from Having Conflicting Roles

Forward, Inc. wants to prevent its employees from having the User Manager role and the User Approver role at the same time. Employees who have both of these roles can modify user attributes, such as salary, and approve them inappropriately.

To prevent this situation, Forward, Inc. creates a preventative identity policy that applies to users who have the User Manager and User Approver Roles. If an administrator attempts to give these roles to a user, CA Identity Manager rejects the task submission and displays a message that explains the violation.

You configure a preventative identity policy to support this use case as follows:

- Create an identity policy set for the policy that you want to create.
- Create a preventative identity policy with the following settings:
  - Policy Condition:

  - Action on Apply Policy:
    - Reject with message: User cannot be a member of User Approver and User Manager roles

Workflow and Preventative Identity Policies

When a preventative identity policy is configured to issue a warning, you can define a task level policy-based workflow process, which is associated with the identity policy, for tasks that may trigger a violation. For example, if an identity policy prohibits Senior Accountants from being members of the IT department, you define a task level policy-based workflow process on the Create User and Modify User tasks.

All work items that are generated as a result of task level policy-based workflow must be approved before CA Identity Manager executes the task. Approvers see a work list item when they log into the User Console. When the approver clicks the work list item, an approval task, which includes the warning message that describes the violation, appears. The approver can choose to approve or reject the task, based on the violation.

Policy-based workflow processes are associated with preventative identity policies by the policy name.

More information:

Policy-Based Workflow (see page 307)

Identity Policy Violations in Approval Tasks

When a preventative identity policy is associated with a workflow process for a task, CA Identity Manager generates a work list item for the appropriate approvers. These approvers use an Approval task to approve or reject the change that triggered the policy violation.

The default Approval task includes a section that lists identity policy violations. There may be more than one violation if the proposed changes trigger multiple preventative identity policies.

Each violation can have of the following status:

- **Pending Evaluation**

  CA Identity Manager has not started evaluating the approval rules for the task yet. This is the initial state.

- **Awaiting Approval**

  CA Identity Manager located a match for the identity policy defined in the approval rules and triggered the associated workflow process.

- **Approved**

  An approver approved the proposed changes. CA Identity Manager makes the changes that triggered the preventative identity policy violations.

- **Rejected**

  An approver rejected the proposed change. The task is rejected.

- **No Workflow Configured**

  There is no workflow process configured for this violation. The task executes without any approval required.

How to Configure Workflow for Preventative Identity Policies

You configure workflow for preventative identity policies in the admin tasks that include changes that may trigger an identity policy violation.

For example, if the preventative identity policy prohibits users from having certain admin roles at the same time, configure tasks that assign admin roles to support workflow for preventative identity policies.

Note: Before you configure workflow, create a preventative identity policy with the following settings:

- A unique policy name

  The policy name must be unique across all identity policy sets because workflow processes are associated with preventative identity policies by the policy name.

  If multiple preventative identity policies have the same name, multiple workflow processes may apply.

- Warning in the Action on Apply Policy field

  Warning is the only action that can trigger a workflow process.

After you configure the preventative identity policy, determine the tasks that may trigger the policy violation. Then, create a workflow approval policy (see page 455) for those tasks.

Create a Workflow Approval Policy for Preventative Identity Policies

You can configure a task level policy-based workflow process for an admin task. This workflow process includes one or more approval policies that can associate a preventative identity policy with a workflow. CA Identity Manager executes the workflow when a violation of the associated preventative identity policy occurs.

Note: For more information about task level policy-based workflow processes, see Policy-Based Workflow (see page 307).

To create a workflow approval policy for preventative identity policies

1. Modify the admin tasks that allow changes that might trigger a violation of a preventative identity policy.

   For example, if an identity policy violation occurs because a user has the User Manager and User Approver roles, modify the admin tasks that allow administrators to assign roles, such as Create User, Modify User, and Modify Admin Role Members/Administrators.

2. Click the edit icon next to the Workflow Process field on the Profile tab for the task to add a workflow process.

   CA Identity Manager displays the Task Level Workflow Configuration screen.

3. Select Policy Based, then click Add.
4. In the Approval Rule section, select the Identity Policy Violation object.
5. In the Identity Policy field select a filter that determines which identity policies trigger the workflow associated with the approval policy.

   In the filter, include the identity policy name, *not* the identity policy set name.
6. Configure the Rule Evaluation, Policy Order, and Policy Description fields as needed.
7. Select a workflow process, then click OK.

   When you select a workflow process, CA Identity Manager displays additional fields.
8. Specify approval tasks and approvers as needed.

   CA Identity Manager associates the workflow process with the preventative identity policy.

Use Case: Approving Titles

Forward, Inc has a company policy that states that all managers must be full-time employees. However, Forward, Inc has recently hired many contractors for special projects. To run these special projects efficiently, some of the contractors will be given the Manager title. Forward, Inc wants to require approvals from the Human Resources Director before allowing administrators to assign the Manager title to a contractor.

To automate the approval process in these situations, Forward, Inc creates a preventative identity policy, named Manager Titles for Contractors, that detects when a user title is Manager and user organization is Contractor. Forward, Inc also configures a policy-based approval process on the Modify User task. This approval process is triggered when the Manager Titles for Contractors policy is violated.

When an administrator changes a contractor's title to Manager, CA Identity Manager displays a warning message, and sends a work item to the Human Resources Director for approval. CA Identity Manager does not change the contractor's title until the work item is approved.

To configure support for this use case, you complete the following in CA Identity Manager:

- Create a preventative identity policy called Manager Titles for Contractors with the following settings:
  - Policy Condition: Users where (Title = "Manager" and Organization = "Contractor")
  - Action on Apply Policy: Warning with message "Managers must be full-time employees"
- Modify the Modify User task to include a workflow process with the following settings:
  - Workflow Process: Policy Based
  - Approval Rule Object: Identity Policy Violation
  - Identity Policy: where (Name = "Manager Title for Contractors")
  - Workflow Process: SingleStepApproval

Combining Identity Policies and Preventative Identity Policies

You can combine identity policies and preventative identity policies to address Segregation of Duties (SOD) requirements. In this case, identity policies address existing SOD violations and preventative identity policies prohibit new violations.

To support this use case, you configure an identity policy set with two types of actions:

- Actions that occur during user synchronization

  These actions result in changes to user attributes, group and role members, administrators, or owners. For example, an action of this type may remove a user from a role when a violation is detected.

  These actions differ from preventative actions in that they are not applied when a task is submitted. They are applied only during user synchronization (see page 440).

- Preventative actions

  These actions determine what CA Identity Manager does when a preventative identity policy violation occurs *before* a task is submitted. CA Identity Manager can allow the task to submit, issue a warning and trigger a workflow process, or prevent the task from submitting.

  In each of these cases, the violation is recorded in the audit database.

Consider a company that wants to prevent users from having the HR Administrator and Salary Approver roles at the same time. That company creates an identity policy with two Action on Apply Policy actions:

- Remove the user from role Salary Approver

  This action occurs when CA Identity Manager synchronizes users with identity policies.

  In this case, this company configured user synchronization for the Modify User task. When an administrator modifies a user, CA Identity Manager evaluates all applicable identity policies and applies the actions. In this example, CA Identity Manager removes users who have the HR Administrator role and the Salary Approver Role from the Salary Approver role.

- Reject the task

  This preventative action prohibits administrators from assigning these two roles to a person by not allowing the administrator to submit the task.

Note: When you configure an identity policy with both of these types of actions, verify that the actions do not conflict. For example, you can configure an identity policy that prevents users from having the Manager and Contractor roles. In the policy, you specify two actions:

- A warning that triggers a workflow process, which requires an approval before assigning the roles, and
- An action that removes a user from the Manager role

An approver approves the role assignment for the Manager and Contractor roles, but the second action removes the user from the Manager role when user synchronization occurs.

Chapter 15: Policy Xpress

This section contains the following topics:

Policy Xpress Overview (see page 459)
How to Create a Policy (see page 459)

Policy Xpress Overview

Policy Xpress allows you to create complex business logic (policies) in CA Identity Manager without the need to develop custom code. However, the concepts involved in creating Policy Xpress policies are complex and require careful thought and planning. An administrator using CA Identity Manager portal screens can configure a policy within Policy Xpress to implement even the most sophisticated business logic required. As business policies change, an administrator can modify the policies using configuration screens within CA Identity Manager without requiring a developer to make underlying code changes, or more importantly—with proper change management procedures—without restarting the CA Identity Manager services.

Note: For more detailed information on Policy Xpress, see the Policy Xpress Wiki.

How to Create a Policy

To create a policy with Policy Xpress, define the following basic elements of a policy.

Profile

Defines the policy type and priority, and allows for grouping similar policies for easy management.

Events

Define when a policy runs.

Note: Be sure to set the Events parameter carefully. Business logic must run at specific times to prevent data corruption and to increase performance. For example, setting a user as enabled should occur when the user is created. Running this logic at all times may cause user accounts that should be disabled to become enabled again. Another example is giving the user a provisioning role that grants access to a certain system. This role should only be assigned to the user after a different role has been assigned and approved. Policy Xpress allows for the activation of its business logic during event and Business Logic Task Handler processing, much like custom adapters. Therefore, unlike identity policies, the logic can be triggered at any time, and not only at the beginning of a task.

Data (Data Elements)

Specify the data used by the policy. Every type of business logic requires some data to work with. That data can be used to make decisions or it can be used to construct more complex data. Policy Xpress provides many individual components to gather data. These components are referred to as *Data Elements*. An example of a data element is a user's attribute value. For example, Policy Xpress can gather the user's first name and store it as a data element for later use.

Entry Rules

Define the requirements that must be met before execution. Defining entry rules allows you to specify when Policy Xpress evaluates policies, which can simplify policies and improve performance. An example of an entry rule is to run a 'Set Full Name' policy *only* if the first name or the last name has changed.

Action Rules

Define the action taken based on the information gathered. For example, based on a user's department name, Policy Xpress can assign a user to different roles or specify different account values.

Actions

Specify the action to perform. At the end of the process, Policy Xpress performs the actions needed by the business logic. Policy Xpress works by having an action rule attached to multiple actions, so when the rule is met, the actions are performed. Actions can include assigning attribute values to a user or an account, executing a command line, running a SQL command, or generating a new event.

Profile

The profile tab for a Policy Xpress policy contains fields that manage policies and refine policy capabilities.

Note: A policy only applies to the environment it is created in. For example, if you create a policy while logged into the neteauto environment, the policy runs only for the neteauto environment.

Provide the following profile information when creating a policy:

Policy Name

Defines a unique friendly name for the policy.

Policy Type

Defines the listeners (see page 462) that trigger the policy. Each policy type has a different configuration.

Note: You cannot change this field once the policy is saved.

Category

Defines a group of related policies. This field allows you to group policies for easy management.

Description

Specifies a description of the policy.

Priority

If there are multiple policies that run at a single event, this field specifies when the policy runs. Policies are executed based on their priority. The lower the number, the higher the priority (priority 1 runs first, 10 runs second, 50 runs third, and so on). Setting priority is useful for policies which have a dependency on one another, or breaking a complex policy into two simple ones, that run one after the other.
For example, there are three policies which run if there is a specific value in the database. Instead of having each of the policies verify the value in the database, you can create a policy that runs before the other three policies and checks the value. If the new policy matches the required value, Policy Xpress can set a variable. The other three policies only run if that variable is set, which prevents redundant access to the database.

Enabled

Specifies if the policy is active in CA Identity Manager. You can clear this check box if you want to disable a policy without deleting it.

Run Once

Specifies if the policy runs only once. Some policies may need to run every time they meet criteria, and others may need to run only once. This value determines if action rules that have already executed in the past should execute again.

For example, adding an SAP role to a user based on department is an action that should only occur the first time the user matches that department. Alternately, a policy that sets the user's salary level based on title would *not* be set to run once, to make sure that no unauthorized changes take place.

Note: The Run Once option applies to an object, it does not apply globally.

Listeners

Policy Xpress policies are triggered by something that happens in the system. To implement this functionality, listeners that integrate with the system notify Policy Xpress when an event happens, and provide details about the event that occurred.

The following listeners are available:

Event

Listens for every event in the system and all the states associated with the event (before, approved, rejected, and so on). This listener also reports the name of the event to Policy Xpress. The following states are available for the Event listener:

- Before
- Rejected
- Approved
- After
- Failed

UI

Listens for different tasks running in the system during the synchronized state, meaning while a user still has the user interface for the task open. The following states are available for the UI listener:

- Start—when the task starts
- Set subject—when the primary object is found
- Validate On Change (see page 463)—when an attribute set with the Validate on Change flag changes
- Validate On Submit—when clicking the submit button
- Submission—when the task is submitted

Workflow

Listens for workflow processes that have found approvers. This listener is useful for performing logic based on approvers, such as sending an email to the approver.

Submitted task

Listens for submitted tasks not running in the background. This listener is similar to the Event listener, however, it considers the task as a whole, instead of the task's events. The following states are available for the Submitted task listener:

- Task started
- Task completed
- Task failed

Reverse Sync

Listens for notifications in the system that relate to CA Identity Manager's Explore functionality.

On-Screen Attribute Validation

In addition to the defined triggers (policy types), Policy Xpress can also listen to validation on attributes. This allows you to create policies that can run when an on-screen attribute that has been flagged as “validate on change” is updated.

This functionality can be used for creating dependant drop-down lists. For example, if there are two drop-down lists on the screen, Policy Xpress runs when the first drop-down option is selected, then sets the values for the second drop-down list based on the option selected in the first. An unlimited number of drop-down lists and other screen refreshes can be done. This differs from Select Box Data by allowing the drop-down options to be populated using any logic, rather than importing an XML file of static options.

Another use is populating other attributes based on the value of one attribute. For example, when an administrator selects a department, Policy Xpress can automatically populate other attributes, such as a department manager, a department number, and a HR Dept Code. This replaces the need to write logical attribute handler custom code.

To configure validation with a Policy Xpress policy

1. In the User Console, modify a task's profile screen and select the field you want to listen for.
2. Access the field's properties and select Yes in the drop-down list for Validate on Change.
3. In Policy Xpress, create a policy of type 'UI (see page 462)' .
4. Under the Run at Events tab, select the State 'Validate on Change' and the task you modified in Step 1.

Use Case: Checking for Offensive Names

When a new user is created, you may want to check if the username is offensive. The following process outlines how to check for offensive names using a Policy Xpress policy.

1. Be sure that the appropriate fields in the Create User task's profile screen are set to Validate on Change = Yes.
2. In Policy Xpress, create a policy of type 'UI'.
3. Under the Run at Events tab, select the State 'Validate on Change' and the Create User task.
4. Create the following data elements to check the first name:
   - Get the first name attribute (Attributes, User attribute, Get)
   - Parse the first name to all lower case letters (General, String parser, To lower)
   - Check the first name against offensive words in a database table (Data sources, SQL query data).
5. Create similar data elements as in Step 4 to check the last name.
6. Create an action rule as follows:
   - Condition—first name is not equal to "" (this occurs if the query returns a message that the name is offensive)
   - Action—message that displays (Messages, On screen message) indicating the offensive name.

   This rule will force the user to change the name before submitting the Create User task again.
7. Create a similar action rule as in Step 6 for the last name.

Events

Depending on the policy type selected on the profile tab, you can configure activation times to establish when the policy is evaluated. For example, a policy of type Event can be set for evaluation Before a CreateUserEvent. A policy of type Task can be set for evaluation at Set Subject for DisableUserEvent.

To configure an activation time, select the following fields:

State

Specifies the time frame or action related to the event that activates the policy. For example, a policy can be set to run "Before" an event occurs.

Event Name

Specifies the event that activates the policy, such as a CreateUserEvent.

A policy can have more than one activation time. Every time a specified activation time (a state and an event) occurs in the system, Policy Xpress searches for all policies with that activation time, and evaluates each policy based on its order.

Note: If a policy matches an activation time that occurs in the system, it does not mean that the policy is automatically run. Rules criteria evaluated later in the process determine if the policy is completed.

Data Elements

Data elements are used for creating policy data. A policy can contain multiple data elements that represent the information used by the policy.

Policy Xpress uses flexible plug-ins for gathering the data element information. Each plug-in can perform a small, dedicated task. However, several plug-ins can be used together to build more complex policies. An example of a data element plug-in is a user attribute element. The goal of the element is to gather information about a certain attribute which is a part of the user's profile.

Data elements are calculated when they are called, meaning either a rule is using the data element, or another element needing calculation is using the data element as a parameter.
For example, an SQL query data element can retrieve a value from a table, but it needs the user's department to build the query. In this case, the department data element must run before the SQL query data element, and then the value can be used as a parameter (see page 467).

The following fields define a data element:

Name

Defines a friendly name that describes the data element. Some data elements are complex (such as getting variables or retrieving information from the database). Be sure to select a meaningful name to simplify data element management.

Category

Provides a grouping of data elements. This field sorts the data elements and makes selection easier.

Type

Specifies the data element type, each with its own dedicated use. This field is based on the category selected.

Function

Defines possible variations of the same data. Most data elements only support the Get function.

For example, the user attribute data element has the following functions:

- Get—returns the values of the attribute
- is multi valued—returns true if the value is multi-valued
- is logical—returns true if the value is logical

Function Description

Provides a prepopulated description of the function. Each function selected provides a different description to help in understanding its use and what the expected values are.

Parameters

Defines the parameters passed to the data element. Data elements are dynamic and can do different things based on the parameters. A user attribute data element returns different results based on the attribute selected. The sub type option also defines the number of parameters, their names, and the optional values when available.

You can add additional parameters if necessary. The SQL query example accepts two required parameters, the data source and the query itself. The query can use the "?" to be replaced with values (much like a prepared statement). Adding additional parameters allows you to set those values.

Note: When viewing data elements in Policy Xpress, there is a column titled 'In Use'. A checkmark in this column means that the data element is used by a rule, an action parameter, or as a parameter to other data elements.

Use Dynamic Values in Data or Action Elements

Dynamic values are the result of calculated data elements, and their values are only decided at run time. These values can then be used as parameters of other data elements (that are subsequently calculated, based on priority).

To use a dynamic value as a parameter for a data element

1. In the Policy Data tab, locate the parameter you want to set a dynamic value in.
2. In the empty text field, enter any regular text or select the dynamic value from the right drop-down list.
3. Click OK.

Variables

Policy Xpress has variables that are set with actions and saved as data elements (Variables category). Variables are shared across all policies that run at the same time, so a variable that has been set can be used by other policies of lower priority.

For example, a variable can contain a value calculated once by a policy, and then shared across other policies that no longer need to recalculate the value. The initial policy sets a value to the variable, and policies that run later read that value by using a data element that has the variable name as a parameter.

A variable can also be a trigger for other policies. In this case, the policies only run if the policy before them has run.

Entry Rules

Entry Rules define the conditions for when a policy should run. These conditions use the values gathered by the data elements in the policy.

There can be multiple entry rules in a policy, and an entry rule can have multiple conditions. At least one entry rule must be matched, meaning *all* conditions in that entry rule must be met for a policy to move on to the action rules.

The following fields define an entry rule:

Name

Provides a friendly name for the entry rule.

Description

Defines the meaning of the entry rule.

Conditions

Specifies the criteria to match.

Note: Conditions in an entry rule always have an AND operator between them.

More Information:

Conditions (see page 468)

Conditions

A condition is used in entry and action rules and is comprised of the following components:

- Policy Data
- Operator
- Value

For example, you want to create a condition that checks if a user's department was changed. First, define a Department Changed data element, then, in the condition, select the Department Changed data element, set the operator to Equals, and set the value to True.

More Information:

Entry Rules (see page 467)
Action Rules (see page 468)

Action Rules

Action rules are similar to entry rules in structure, but differ in functionality. Action rules define when action should be taken. For example, if you want a policy to perform an action when a user's department has changed to Sales, create an action rule that defines when 'Department = Sales'.

Also, instead of having to match one entry rule, several action rules may be matched. The single action rule with the highest priority (0 being the highest) is the *only* one used.

Action rules also contain one or more actions, and the actions are divided into Add Actions and Remove Actions.

The following fields define an action rule:

Name

Provides a friendly name for the action rule. This name must be unique.

Description

Defines the meaning of the action rule.

Conditions

Specifies the criteria to match.

Priority

Defines which action rule executes, in the case of several action rules matching. This field is useful for defining default actions. For example, if you have multiple rules, each for a department name, it is possible to set a default by adding an additional rule with no conditions but a lower priority (such as 10 if all others are 5). If none of the department rules are matched, then the default is used.

Add Actions

Defines a list of actions taken when the rule is matched. For example, you can configure a rule that states if the user's department matches the one configured in the condition, add a specific Active Directory group. Action rules behave differently, based on the Run Once setting. If the policy is set to run once, the associated actions are performed the first time the rule matches. The actions are not performed again for each subsequent rule match. In the example above, the Active Directory group is added to the user only once. If Run Once is not set, then the actions run again as long as the rule is matched. This field is important for enforcing values.

Remove Actions

Defines a list of actions to perform when the rule no longer matches. For example, the previous example added an Active Directory group to the user, based on the department. If the department changes, then the remove action removes the Active Directory group.

More Information:

Conditions (see page 468)

Actions

Actions perform the business logic after all the decision-making is done. An action works in a similar way to data elements except at the end. When it runs, it performs a task instead of returning a value.

Note: Actions are run in the order they appear in the User Console.

The following fields define an action:

Action Name

Defines the purpose of the action.

Category

Provides a grouping of actions. This field sorts the actions and makes selection easier.

Type and Function

Defines the type and function of the action taken.

Note: For more information about Type and Function, see Data.

Function Description

Provides a prepopulated description of the function. Each function selected provides a different description to help in understanding its use and what the expected values are.

Parameters

Defines the parameters passed to the action.

Flow Control

By default, policies are sorted by priority and then evaluated one by one. While this flow almost always applies, you can change the flow, if necessary.

This flow-changing functionality is represented by an action that can be attached to any action rule. Flow-changing functions are located under the System category of the action.

Important! Use caution when changing process flows. Using these actions may result in an infinite loop. For example, if you set 'Redo the current policy' on an action rule with no conditions, the rule will always be true, and the policy will always restart and never exit.

The following four flow-changing functions can be used:

Stop processing

Causes all policies after the current policy to be ignored, and causes Policy Xpress to exit.
Note: Only Policy Xpress exits. If you want to force CA Identity Manager to stop also, you can use the Exception type action plug-in.

Restart all policies

Stops processing the rest of the policies and goes back to the start of the list. This option is useful in cases where the action of one policy causes another policy, which ran before it and did not execute, to now meet the entry criteria. That policy is now reevaluated.

Redo the current policy

Causes a policy to run again. This option is useful for iteration. For example, creating a unique username requires a policy to run over and over again until it finds a unique name.

Go to a specific policy

This action requires selecting an existing policy. If that policy is running at the same time as the current policy (can be before or after) then Policy Xpress jumps to the selected policy. If the new policy is of lower priority, all policies between the current policy and the selected policy are ignored. If the new policy priority is higher, the process goes back.

Note: Because the action may cause Policy Xpress to skip certain policies, use this action type with caution.

Set Objects Associated with Accounts

When creating an Add Action to set an object that is associated with an account, such as Member Of, a specific relationship format is used to represent the object. The following two types of formats can represent the object in CA Identity Manager:

- To represent simple relationships between the object and the account, for example, Active Directory Groups:
  `NativeGroup=Administrators,Container=Builtin,EndPoint=LocalAD,Namespace=ActiveDirectory,Domain=im,Server=Server`
- To represent binding relationships between the object and the account, for example, SAP Roles:
  `{"validFromDate":"2009\/12\/01","roleName":"SAPRole=SAP_AUDITOR_ADMIN,EndPoint=sap endpoint,Namespace=SAP R3,Domain=im,Server=Server","validToDate":"2009\/12\/31"}`

  A binding relationship differs from a simple relationship in that the association between the object and the account has additional data on it. In the previous example, the parameters validFromDate and validToDate only contain data related to the association between the account and the SAP role. The validFromDate and validToDate data does not exist on the account, or the role object.

To discern the format for the relationship, create a data element that Gets the value of the object. The value returned is the format you use in the Add Action to set that object.

Example: Active Directory Groups

1. Create a Policy Xpress policy with the following settings:
   - Policy Type: Event
   - Events: After – Modify User
2. In the Action Rule, configure the following Add Action:
   - Category: Attributes
   - Type: Set Account Data
   - Function: Set
   - Endpoint Type: Active Directory
   - Endpoint: *endpoint_name*
   - Account Name: *account*
   - Attribute: Member Of (groupMembership)
   - Value: NativeGroup=Administrators,Container=Builtin,Endpoint=*endpoint_name*,Namespace=ActiveDirectory,Domain=im,Server=Server

Advanced

Policy Xpress allows for many configuration variations and also interacts with external components. Due to this flexibility, errors may occur that are not necessarily bugs, such as an incorrectly configured data source, a missing value returned from a dynamic data element, or an endpoint which is not responding.

Usually when an error occurs, the system will stop the calculation of policies for the current step. However, you can change the default error response, based on the error category. For example, if you have a policy that is non-critical, you can define that the processing should continue in the event of an error.

The Advanced tab allows you to change the default error responses if necessary.

Note: We recommend that these error responses be left to their defaults, but for advanced use cases, these settings can be changed per policy. For example, if you have a policy that is non-critical, you can define that processing should continue even if the policy failed.

The following error categories can be configured on the tab:

- Validation—caused by providing incorrect information to a plug-in. This type of error is reported before the action is attempted.
- Environment—caused by problems in the environment, such as a failing database server for the SQL plug-in.
- Allowed—a non-critical error. The default behavior for this error type is to continue processing the request, such as when sending an email fails.

For each of the previous errors, the following options can be set:

- Fail event—stops the current action. This is the default for most error types.
- Fail policy—stops the current policy and all actions associated with it. The rest of the policies continue.
- Ignore—logs any failure but does not stop the actions or policies.

Chapter 16: CA Identity Manager Mobile App

The CA Identity Manager mobile app leverages your existing CA Identity Manager infrastructure to allow users to complete the following tasks in a mobile device, such as a smart phone or tablet:

- Reset a forgotten password
- Change a password
- Respond to approval requests, by either accepting or rejecting them. Use the User Console to either Reserve or Release a request.
- View user information

  This feature allows users to view information about other users in the organization. For example, work item approvers can view basic information about a user's manager, such as name and address, before making an approval decision. If more information is needed, the approver can click a link to see the complete profile.

This section contains the following topics:

The CA Identity Manager Mobile Application Architecture (see page 476)
How the Implementation Process Works (see page 480)
How the Application Configuration Works (see page 481)
How the User Registration Works (see page 481)
How to Configure CA Identity Manager to Support the Mobile App (see page 482)
Configure a Mobile App (see page 491)
Configuring Additional Properties (see page 494)
Download the Mobile App (see page 495)
Troubleshooting the Mobile App (see page 496)

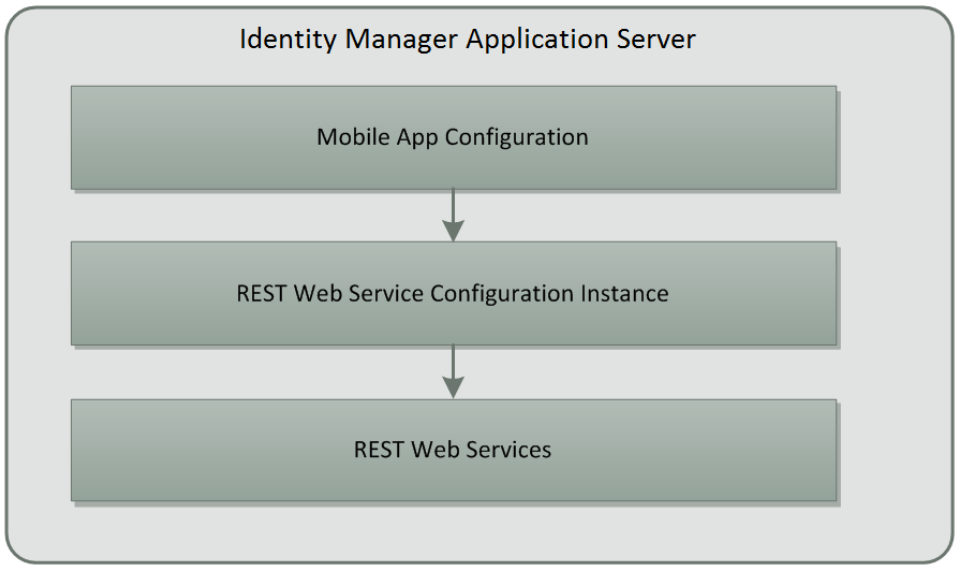
The CA Identity Manager Mobile Application Architecture

The CA Identity Manager Mobile Application architecture is designed to provide a set of CA Identity Manager capabilities for various mobile devices, such as Smart phones and Tablets. The capabilities selected for the Mobile Application are based on critical business need and those whose user interaction are appropriate for smaller devices.

The architecture is centered on the use of a Configuration component specific for the Application and RESTful Web Services that expose the CA Identity Manager server capabilities. The CA Identity Manager Server supports the ability to manage a given environment's Mobile Application configuration and the configuration of the REST web services used by the application.

Note: The REST Web Services are particular to the CA Identity Manager Mobile Application, and are not intended to be public APIs, unlike the SOAP-based Task Execution Web Services (TEWS).

The REST Web Services can support multiple configurations per CA Identity Manager Environment (IME), where each configuration is typically associated with a particular REST client, such as the Mobile Application. The high level architecture and relationship between the Mobile Application Configuration and Web Service Configuration is shown below.



The REST Web Services configuration requires a specific set of options selected in order for the Mobile Application to function. A Web Service configuration must be defined via the Web Service Configuration Task prior to creating the Mobile Application Configuration, also available via an Administrative Task.

Mobile Application Web Service Configuration Details

A REST Web Service configuration consists of the following elements:

- A profile defining a unique configuration name, identifier and an enabled flag
- A security configuration defining the use of SSL, payload encryption and an encryption key.
- The set of Managed Object types and the operations and attributes supported for each type via REST.
- Supported Self Service operations such as reset password and the set of User self-service attributes allowed.
- The member policy for which users are authorized to invoke the configured REST operations.

The table below shows the Web service Configuration details and the setting required for the Mobile Application.

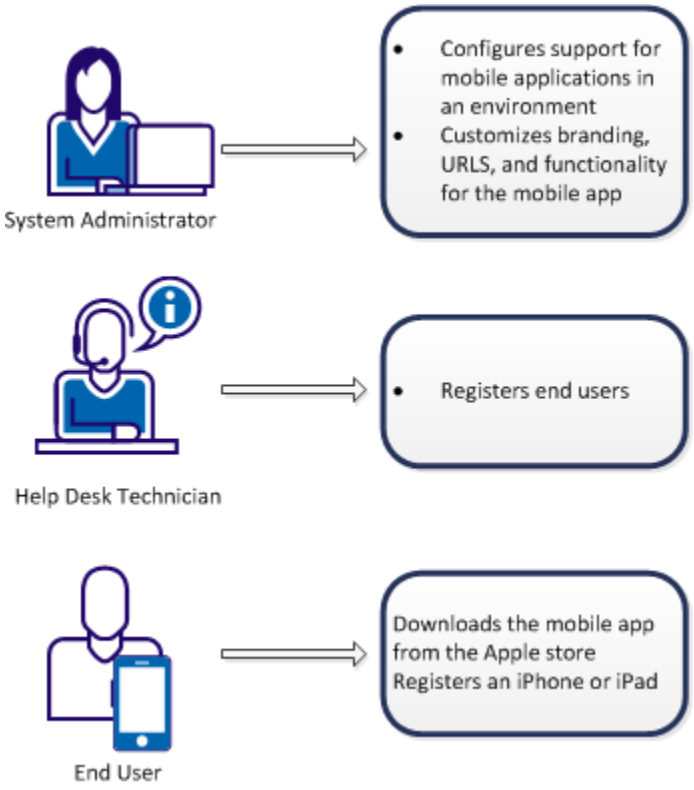
Configuration Section	Item	Description	Mobile App Setting
Profile	name	The name of the configuration	Deployment choice
	identifier	The unique identifier that a given client must set in the "Configuration-Id" http header of each CA Identity Manager Server request.	Deployment choice. The Mobile App Configuration Service returns the identifier that must be used in all subsequent REST requests.
	Enabled	Enables/disables the configuration	True
Security	Require Secure Communication	https required or not	Deployment choice. Value downloaded by Mobile App Configuration Service.

	Enable Encryption	Used to encrypt payload for non-SSL. Requires client-side crypto library, encryption key knowledge and explicit client-side encrypt/decrypt support	Not used. Leave unchecked.
	Configuration secret	The shared secret required as part of the REST client to server trust model.	Must be specified. Deployments should generate the secret when defining the configuration instance.
Object Types	Object type	The object types that are exposed as REST resources.	The User object type
	Methods and Attributes	The resource methods (CRUD) supported for a selected object type and the set of attributes allowed for those methods.	The User object type with View Access to the following attributes as represented in the deployment specific User Schema: ■ Business Phone ■ Department ■ Email ■ First Name ■ Last Name ■ Manager ■ Office ■ Title

Self-Administration	Member Rule	A rule indicating which users can perform self-administration.	Should match the Member rule on the Mobile App Configuration. Set of attributes for modification should be empty.
	Enable Password Reset	Enables users to reset their own password	Enable
	Attributes	The set of attributes user can manage by themselves	Empty list
Members	Members	Defines rules for which users are authorized to invoke the REST operations defined for this configuration	A member rule that matches the set of Mobile App Users

How the Implementation Process Works

Three types of users are involved in setting up mobile apps. The following graphic illustrates these user types and the tasks they perform.



To enable an end user to use the mobile app with CA Identity Manager, the following activities occur:

1. A system administrator configures support for the mobile app in an environment.

   The configuration involves the following activities:

   - Configures activation and reset code attributes
   - Adding tasks, Policy Xpress policies and an email template for registering mobile users
   - Creating a web services definition
   - Modifying the registration email.

   The system administrator also configures the branding, URLs, and functionality that mobile users can access.

2. An administrator, such as a Help Desk Technician, registers applicable end users in the User Console.

   The registration process triggers an activation code for each end user, and automatically sends an email with the code and registration instructions to the end user.

3. The end user downloads the mobile app from the Apple store and registers a device, such as a smart phone or a tablet, using the instructions and code they received in the email.

   The end user can then use the mobile app to access CA Identity Manager functionality.

   Note: If the option Password Must Change is selected during user creation, mobile app users cannot complete activation.

How the Application Configuration Works

The Mobile Application retrieves its configuration from the CA Identity Manager Server Configuration APIs. When the Mobile Application is first installed and has no configuration downloaded, it will prompt the User for user name and password and use these credentials to download the defined configuration from the link provided in the User Registration email.

After the initial configuration download, each time the application is started is compares its configuration version with the latest version available on the CA Identity Manager Server. The configuration version check API is used to detect if a later version is available.

How the User Registration Works

Each User desiring Mobile Application access must request access within CA Identity Manager. If approved for access the User is updated with an Activation Code that indicates access has been granted. The Mobile App Configuration Member policy and the underlying Web Services Member policy should meet whatever criteria defined for Mobile Users requesting access. At a minimum the %ACTCODE% value of 'Registered' or a value greater than '0' needs to be defined.

If a User's mobile access is removed the CA Identity Manager Server will reset the Activation attributes and prevent user access to the Mobile Application.

How to Configure CA Identity Manager to Support the Mobile App

The mobile app communicates with CA Identity Manager (using REST web services) to manage passwords and approvals. To enable this communication, a system administrator completes the following steps:

1. Configure required attributes (see page 483).
2. Import Admin tasks. (see page 486)
3. Create a web service (see page 487).
4. Modify the registration email (see page 489).
5. Optionally, configure SiteMinder support for the Mobile App.

Configure Required Attributes

The CA Identity Manager user store must include the following well-known attributes to enable user registration and access through the mobile app:

- %ACTCODE% — Identifies the attribute that stores a randomly generated activation number. After the user is registered, this attribute contains the word Registered.
- %ACTCODEVAL% — Identifies the attribute that stores the activation code that the client sets during registration time. CA Identity Manager compares this value with the value of %ACTCODE%.
- %CURRENT_AUTH_QUESTIONS% — Identifies the attribute that temporarily stores the challenge question values. This value gets cleared after the user answers correctly.
- %MOBILE_PIN% — Identifies the attribute that stores the personal identification number or string value, which provides the alphanumeric password shared between a user and a system that can be used to authenticate the user to the system.
- %PWRESETCODE% — Identifies the attribute that stores an encrypted code, which provides single-factor authentication during a password reset

You map these well-known attributes to available user store attributes in the directory configuration file (directory.xml). If there are no available attributes, extend the user store schema. For more information about extending the schema, see the documentation for your user store.

Include the following data classifications in the attribute descriptions:

<DataClassification name="sensitive"/>

Replaces the reset code value with wildcard characters in task screens, audit records, and system logs.

Important! Do not include the sensitive data classification in the %ACTCODE% attribute definition. If you include the sensitive attribute, the mobile app does not work correctly.

<DataClassification name=" AttributeLevelEncrypt "/>

Encrypts and decrypts the reset code value as it is written and read from the user store using the defined encryption key.

<DataClassification name=" ignore_on_copy "/>

Causes CA Identity Manager to ignore an attribute when an administrator creates a copy of an object in the User Console.

Note: Refer to the end of this topic for samples of these well-known attributes.

Follow these steps:

1. Log in to the Management Console.

2. Select Directories, then click the directory that contains mobile users.
3. Export the directory.
4. Add or modify an attribute description to include the %ACTCODE% well-known attribute.

   You can map any available attribute to the %ACTCODE% well-known attribute.
5. Repeat step 4 to define the %ACTCODEVAL% well-known attribute. Include the following data classifications:
   ```
   <DataClassification name="sensitive"/>
   <DataClassification name="ignore_on_copy"/>
   <DataClassification name=" AttributeLevelEncrypt"/>
   ```
6. Add an attribute description for the %CURRENT_AUTH_QUESTIONS% well-known attribute.Include the following data classifications:
   ```
   <DataClassification name="ignore_on_copy"/>
   ```
7. Add an attribute description for the %MOBILE_PIN% well-known attribute. Include the following data classifications:
   ```
   <DataClassification name="sensitive"/>
   <DataClassification name="ignore_on_copy"/>
   <DataClassification name=" AttributeLevelEncrypt"/>
   ```
8. Add an attribute description for the %PWRESETCODE% well-known attribute. Include the following data classifications:
   ```
   <DataClassification name="sensitive"/>
   <DataClassification name="ignore_on_copy"/>
   <DataClassification name=" AttributeLevelEncrypt"/>
   ```
9. Save the directory.xml file.
10. Load the saved directory.xml file by clicking Update in the Directory Properties page in the Management Console.

Samples

Note: You can map any available attribute to these well-known attributes.

%ACTCODE%

```
<ImsManagedObjectAttr
physicalname="attribute_name"
displayname="your_attribute_display_name"
description="your_attribute_description"
valuetype="String"
required="false"
multivalued="false"
wellknown="%ACTCODE%"
maxlength="0"
hidden="true"
system="true">
```

```
    <DataClassification name="ignore_on_copy"/>
    <DataClassification name=" AttributeLevelEncrypt"/>
    </ImsManagedObjectAttr>
```

%ACTCODEVAL%

```
ImsManagedObjectAttr
physicalname="attribute_name"
displayname="your_attribute_display_name"
description="your_attribute_description"
valuetype="String"
required="false"
multivalued="false"
wellknown="%ACTCODEVAL%"
maxlength="0"
hidden="true"
system="true">
    <DataClassification name="ignore_on_copy"/>
    <DataClassification name=" AttributeLevelEncrypt"/>
    </ImsManagedObjectAttr>
```

%CURRENT_AUTH_QUESTIONS%

```
<ImsManagedObjectAttr
physicalname="attribute_name"
displayname="your_attribute_display_name"
description="your_attribute_description"
valuetype="String"
required="false"
multivalued="false"
wellknown="%CURRENT_AUTH_QUESTIONS%"
maxlength="0"
hidden="true"
system="true">
    <DataClassification name="ignore_on_copy"/>
```

%MOBILE_PIN%

```
<ImsManagedObjectAttr
physicalname="attribute_name"
displayname="your_attribute_display_name"
description="your_attribute_description"
valuetype="String"
required="false"
multivalued="false"
wellknown="%MOBILE_PIN%"
```

```
maxlength="0"
hidden="true"
system="true">
   <DataClassification name="ignore_on_copy"/>
   <DataClassification name=" AttributeLevelEncrypt"/>
   </ImsManagedObjectAttr>
```

%PWRESETCODE%

```
<ImsManagedObjectAttr
physicalname="attribute_name"
displayname="your_attribute_display_name"
description="your_attribute_description"
valuetype="String"
required="false"
multivalued="false"
wellknown="%PWRESETCODE%"
maxlength="0"
hidden="true"
system="true">
   <DataClassification name="ignore_on_copy"/>
   <DataClassification name=" AttributeLevelEncrypt"/>
   </ImsManagedObjectAttr>
```

Import Admin Tasks

Before mobile users can log in to CA Identity Manager, administrators register them in the User Console. The registration process generates an activation code and sends an email to the mobile user.

To support these activities, import a role definition file that adds the following functionality to an environment:

- Mobile configuration tasks
- Register User for Mobile App and Remove User from Mobile App tasks
- Policy Xpress policies that generate activation codes and unregister the mobile client from a user account.
- An email template for sending the email to mobile users

Follow these steps:

1. Log in to the Management Console.
2. Select Environments, then click the environment that supports the mobile app.
3. Select Role and Task Settings, then click Import on the next screen.

4. Select MobileApp-RoleDefinitions, then click Finish.
5. Restart the environment.
6. Add the following tasks to the System Manager role:
   - Create Mobile Configuration
   - Modify Mobile Configuration
   - View Mobile Configuration
   - Delete Mobile Configuration
   - Register User for Mobile App
   - Remove User from Mobile App

   The new tasks are in the User and System categories.

Create a Web Services Configuration

The mobile app uses REST web services to communicate with CA Identity Manager. To support the mobile app, a system administrator creates a web service definition in the User Console.

Note: REST calls do not work if encryption in the web service configuration is enabled.

Follow these steps:

1. Log in to the User Console as a user with system administrator privileges.
2. Create a web service definition as follows:
   a. Navigate to System, WebServices, Create Web Services Configuration.
   b. On the Profile tab, complete the following fields:
      - Name: *any name.* For example: RestMobile
      - Identifier: *unique identifier.* The default value is RestMobile.

        The value of the Identifier field must match the value of **restid** in the mobile app configuration.

        Consider changing the value of the Identifier and the restid for increased security.
      - Enable Attribute: Select this check box.

c. On the Security tab, complete the following:

- Determine if you need to select the "Require Secure Communication" option:

Note: Consider encrypting all mobile application http traffic. There are, typically, two ways to configure this traffic:

- Using a Proxy Server: In this use case, the CA Identity Manager server will be behind a firewall. You may decide not to secure the communication from the Proxy Server to the CA Identity Manager server. However, you should ensure the http communication between the mobile application and the proxy server is secure. For this use case, do NOT select the "Require Secure Communication".

Note: If not integrating CA Identity Manager and SiteMinder, select the "Require Secure Communication" option so that the SSL communication remains for the Web Services calls.

- Directly to the CA Identity Manager server: In this use case, the mobile client communicates directly to the CA Identity Manager server; this http communication should be encrypted. To enforce that requirement, select the "Require Secure Communication" option.
- Verify that Enable Encryption is not selected.

Note: If encryption is enabled, user details do not display in the mobile app.

d. On the Object Types tab, browse to USER, select USER, and click the Edit button.

e. Select only Allow View Access.

Remove other access permissions by clearing the Allow Modify Access, Allow Create Access and Allow Delete Access options.

f. On the Self Administration tab, complete the following steps:

- Select the Add button below Member Rule to create a member role and specify "all".

  Note: You can only create one member rule.

- Enable Password Reset to support the Change Password feature in the mobile app.

g. On the Member tab, build a member rule with the following criteria:

- Activation Code = Registered, or
- Activation Code >0

h. Submit and Save the web service.

Modify the Registration Email

Edit the default registration email to include the URL for the mobile configuration object.

Follow these steps:

1. In the User Console, navigate to System, Email, Modify Email.
2. Search for and select the Registered User for Mobile App email.
3. On the Content tab, click the Toggle HTML Source button.
4. Specify the URL for the mobile configuration object in the href entry for mobileregservidm as follows:

   <a href="mobileregservidm://{'Attribute:%ACTCODE%'}&https://FQN/iam/im/ws/Alias/mobile/ConfigName">

   FQN

   Specify the name or IP address of the CA Identity Manager server.

   Alias

   Specify the name of the environment.

   ConfigName

   Specify the name of the configuration object.
5. Click Submit.

How to Configure SiteMinder Support for the Mobile App

The Web Services used by the Mobile Application can support native authentication using username/password credentials passed by the Mobile Application via HTTP AUTHORIZATION header or SiteMinder Authentication. The Web Services Configuration as previously discussed defines the authorization policy for each of the REST resource and method requests.

IM REST Web Service URLs

The IM REST Services rely on the following base URL:

`http[s]://[FQN]/iam/im/ws/[Alias]`

- FQN – The fully qualified name and port of your CA Identity Manager Server access point
- Alias – The public alias of the CA Identity Manager Environment to connect to.

Mobile Application Configuration URL

The Mobile Application Configuration contains a specific URL that allows retrieval of bootstrap configuration information required for the Mobile App configuration download. The configuration URL is as follows:

`http[s]://[FQN]/ iam/im/ws/[Alias]/mobile/[ConfigName]`

ConfigName - The name of the Mobile Application configuration for the CA Identity Manager Environment for a given set of Mobile Application Users. The configuration name is made known to the Application via a link to the Configuration URL in the registration email sent upon approval of a user's request for Mobile Application access.

Non-authenticated REST APIs

Configuration APIs

The following Configuration APIs do not require authentication.

`http[s]://[FQN]/ iam/im/ws/[Alias]/mobile/[ConfigName]/image`
`http[s]://[FQN]/iam/im/ws/[Alias]/mobile/[ConfigName]/ver`

Reset Password API

`https://[FQN]/iam/im/ws/[Alias]/myself/resetpasswordWithResetCodeAndToken`

Note: The resetPasswordWithResetCodeAndToken API contains security tokens passed in http headers from the Mobile Application. The CA Identity Manager Server verifies the presence and validity of these tokens.

When integrating with SiteMinder to protect CA Identity Manager access, these URLS could be defined with a realm that is not protected or protected with an anonymous authentication scheme.

Authenticated REST APIs

The following URLS are used by the Mobile Application and require authentication and use the Web Service Configuration polices for authorization.

Configuration

`http[s]://[FQN]/iam/im/ws/[Alias]/mobile/[ConfigName]/conf`

Self Service User

`http[s]://[FQN]/iam/im/ws/[Alias]/myself`

Worklist

`http[s]://[FQN]/iam/im/ws/[Alias]/worklist`

User

`http[s]://[FQN]/iam/im/ws/[Alias]/mo/User`

Configure a Mobile App

System administrators configure the CA Identity Manager mobile app in the User Console.

An environment can include multiple mobile app configurations. Creating different configurations allows you to support different branding or functionality for different types of mobile users. For example, you can create one configuration for employee password changes, and another configuration for managers to approve work items.

Administrators can configure the following properties for the mobile app:

- Branding

  Specify the company logo in the mobile app.

- Functionality

  Enable the following functionality:

  - Forgotten password support
  - Change password support
  - Workflow approval queue
  - Show manager link

- Support information
- Attribute mapping

  Map attributes in the user store to attributes exposed in the mobile app.

Follow these steps:

1. Log into the User Console as a user who can use the mobile configuration tasks.
2. Click Tasks, System, Mobile Configuration, Create Mobile Configuration.
3. Accept the default option, Create a new object of type Mobile Configuration.
4. On the General tab, complete the required fields. You can specify an image for the mobile app.

   Base URL

   Verify the base URL of the current environment. The base URL is automatically populated when you create a mobile configuration.

   CA Identity Manager uses the base URL to retrieve the server name, port and protocol, which the mobile app uses to construct the URL for the REST calls.

   Configuration

   Browse for a configuration or enter a unique configuration name.

   Version

   Increase the version number every time you modify and save a configuration.

   The mobile app uses the version number to determine when to download a new version of the configuration. When the mobile app starts up, it compares the version number from the server with the version of the loaded configuration. If a new version is available, the mobile app updates the configuration.

   Note: Do not increment the version number when you initially modify the file.

   Branding Image

   Specify the full URL of a PNG image, with a suggested size of 222 by 222 pixels. The image appears in the splash screen, the password management screen, and at the top of the screen in the mobile app.

5. On the Features tab, select the features for the mobile app.

   Password Reset Behavior

   Select the method to use for the behavior, which is determined when you configure required attributes:

   - Default
   - PIN Challenge
   - QnA Challenge

   Note: If you select QnA Challenge, you must go to Tasks, Environment Administrator, and then select 'Question and Answer Configuration'. Make sure to check the Enable box, enter the number of authentication questions (1 through 5), and then click Submit. You must click the Submit button for the configuration settings to take effect, even if you make no changes to the default settings.

6. On the Support tab, specify support information for mobile users.
7. On the Attribute Mapping tab, map mobile app attributes to attributes in the CA Identity Manager user store. You can map attributes to physical attributes or well-known attributes.
8. On the Additional Properties tab, specify additional property value pairs to support new functionality or fields in the mobile app.

   Use the following format:

   Key1=value1

   Key2=value2

   Key3=value3

   Note: CA Technologies will provide instructions when administrators need to add additional properties. In this release, you do not need to specify any additional properties.

9. On the Members tab, specify rules that determine the set of users who see this configuration on their mobile app.
10. Click Submit.

Configuring Additional Properties

After you configure the mobile app, you can optionally specify additional property key-value pairs to support new functionality in the mobile app. You do this using the Additional Properties tab.

Use the following format:

- demoMode="Disable/Enable"
- maxPinRetries=<any positive numerical value>
- multiAccount="Disable/Enable"
- managerTraversal="Disable/Enable"
- startupWithBrandLogo="true/false"

Note: CA Technologies will provide instructions when administrators need to add additional properties.

However, these three features are enabled by default with mobile configurations:

- DemoMode: Allows you view a demonstration-version of the mobile app. This option is available in the Settings section of mobile app.
- maxPinRetries: Allows administrator to configure the number of wrong or failed PIN entry-attempts for mobile users. The default number of failed attempts is 5.
- MultiAccount: Allows you to add multiple accounts, specifically by adding multiple registered mobile users with their activation codes.
- ManagerTraversal: Displays the manager details of the approver and requester in the work item details.
- startupWithBrandLogo: Allows the user to specify custom account logo (the account's branding image) to appear instead of the default CA logo. If this key-value is set to true, but for some reason the brand logo field has an empty or invalid url, the launch screen will remain blank at startup. The CA logo always appears when the app is first launched after installation. This additional property is part of an account's data, and no account data is available on first launch.
  Note: These changes will be reflected on a subsequent launch only after successfully communicating with the CA Identity Manager Server.

You have to add the following Key-Value Pair in the Additional Properties tab on the CA Identity Manager mobile configuration to disable those features in the mobile client.

- To enable or disable the Demo Mode feature

  Set DemoMode to equal Enable or Disable

  - demoMode="Disable/Enable"

- To enable or disable the maxPinRetries feature

  Set maxPinRetries to equal any positive numerical value

  - maxPinRetries=<equal any positive numerical value> Note that the default number of failed attempts is 5.

- To enable or disable the multi-account feature

  Set MultiAccount to equal Enable or Disable

  - multiAccount="Disable/Enable"

- To enable or disable the Manager Traversal feature

  Set ManagerTraversal to equal Enable or Disable

  - managerTraversal="Disable/Enable"

- To enable or disable the startupWithBrandLogo feature

  Set startupWithBrandLogo to true or false

  - startupWithBrandLogo="true/false"

Follow these steps:

1. Log into the CA Identity Manager User Console as an administrator (superuser).
2. Click Tasks, System, Mobile Configuration, Create Mobile Configuration.
3. On the Additional Properties tab, specify additional property key-value pairs to support new functionality in the mobile app.
   - demoMode="Disable/Enable"
   - maxPinRetries=<any positive numerical value> The default number of failed attempts is 5.
   - multiAccount="Disable/Enable"
   - managerTraversal="Disable/Enable"
   - startupWithBrandLogo="true/false"

Download the Mobile App

Once the mobile app is configured, end users can download it from the Apple store. To locate the mobile app in the Apple store, search for CA Identity Manager.

The end user can then register their device, such as a smart phone or a tablet, by using the instructions and code they received in email.

Troubleshooting the Mobile App

Let Support Request a Log File

If a user has an issue with the mobile app, Support engineers can request a log file to help with troubleshooting.

The mobile user enables debugging through their iPhone or iPad. Once debugging is enabled, the mobile user can use the mobile app to send the log to an email address for Support.

To enable the mobile app to generate a log, the mobile user completes the following steps.

1. On the phone or iPad, navigate to Settings, Identity Manager, Debug.
2. Tap Enabled.
3. Restart the application and perform the actions that you want to appear in the log.
4. On the Settings tab of the CA Identity Manager mobile app, tap Email Log.

   The mobile app creates an email with the attached log file. The email can be sent to the email address configured for Support in the User Console.

QnA as "Reset password behavior" fails using the default Question and Answer Configuration setting, under the environment administrator of Identity Manager Tasks.

Symptom

Upon selecting the QnA as "Reset password behavior" with the default Question and Answer configuration settings, the reset password fails to with the following error message:

"ERROR [im.webservices.QuestionAndAnswerResource] (http-/0.0.0.0:8443-1) Failed to process get user credential questions. Message:java.lang.NullPointerException in the server log file"

Solution:

Perform the following steps to make reset password work with the QnA as Reset password behavior:

Follow these steps:

1. Login to CA Identity Manager as SuperAdmin.
2. Navigate to Tasks, Environment Administrator, and then select 'Question and Answer Configuration'.

3. Click the Submit button.

   Note: Even the default values of 'Enable' option and 'Number of Authentication questions' apply only after performing this step.

Chapter 17: CA User Activity Reporting

This section contains the following topics:

CA UAR Functionality (see page 499)
Integrate Additional CA UAR Reports or Queries with CA Identity Manager (see page 508)

CA UAR Functionality

When CA User Activity Reporting (CA UAR) integrates with CA Identity Manager, you get the following functionality:

- The CA UAR Agent collects CA Identity Manager auditing information and converts it into CA Common Event Grammar (CEG).
- The User Console can retrieve CA UAR reports and queries with CA Identity Manager context information used to filter the information returned.
- CA Identity Manager is shipped with a number of default reports, and infrastructure for adding CA UAR reports and queries to an existing or new task.

Note: Previously, CA UAR was called CA Enterprise Log Manager. In some cases in the User Console, the CA Enterprise Log Manager name is still used.

CA UAR Components

When CA Identity Manager integrates with CA UAR, the following components are added to the CA Identity Manager architecture:

- A CA Elm Viewer tab lets you embed CA UAR objects in any new or existing task.

  Note: A CA UAR server connection is required.
- Role definitions that can be imported.

Integration Limitations

The following are known limitations of the integration with CA UAR:

- Retrieving query and report lists at runtime for task configuration can be slow.
- The CA UAR APIs only recognize default Java named time zones.
- EQUAL operation is case-sensitive when used in a compound filter.
- Only one connection to a CA UAR server at a time is supported.

How to Integrate CA UAR with CA Identity Manager

Before you can view and manage CA UAR reports and queries, an administrator must complete the following steps:

1. Install the CA UAR Agent.
2. Create a connector.
3. Enable auditing in CA Identity Manager.
4. Configure the CA UAR Server.

CA Enterprise Log Manager Agent Installation Prerequisites

Complete the following steps before installing the CA UAR Agent:

- Make sure the CA UAR Server machine is reachable from the machine running CA Identity Manager or hosting the CA Identity Manager auditing database.
- Verify that the agent machine is reachable from the server machine.
- Configure the data source (see page 500) on the agent machine.
- Verify that Adobe Flash Player is version 9.0.28 or higher. You can download the player from here:

  http://www.adobe.com/go/getflash
- Download agent binaries (see page 501).
- Get an agent authentication key (see page 501).
- Make the server name/IP readily accessible.
- Make account information readily accessible, but do not jeopardize security. The agent uses this account when it runs as a service (Windows).
- If the connector exists, export default connector information and have it readily available.
- Verify that the machine has 4 GB of RAM.

Configure Data Source on the Agent Machine

Follow this procedure to configure Data Source on the agent machine.

To configure Data Source

1. Navigate to Control Panel, Administrative Tools, Data Sources (ODBC)
2. From the System DSN tab, add the following:

   imsauditevent12 data source (ODBC) pointing to the auditing database.
3. Click Apply/OK.

   The Data Source is configured.

Download Agent Binaries

Follow this procedure to download agent binaries.

Follow these steps:

1. Log in to the CA UAR Server with the following URL:

   https://<host>:5250/spin/calm/CALMSpindle.csp

2. Navigate to Administration, Log Collection, Agent Explorer, Download Agent Binaries, *OS version*.

3. Save to File.

Get Agent Authentication Key

Use this procedure to get the agent authentication key.

Follow these steps:

1. From the CA UAR Server, navigate to Administration, Log Collection, Agent Explorer, Agent Authentication Key.

2. Make the key readily accessible, but do not jeopardize security.

Install the CA UAR Agent

The CA UAR agent is responsible for collecting events and dispatching that information to the CA UAR Server. Install the agent on a CA Identity Manager database server or endpoint machine to enable logging.

Note: The CA UAR Agent is supported on Windows and Linux.

Follow these steps:

1. On the database server, run the ca-elmagent-<version>.exe installation and specify the following information:

   - Server name or IP address
   - Authentication code
   - Agent server account information (used to run the agent as a service/demon)

2. Specify default connectors list file, if available.

3. Log in to the CA UAR Server with the following URL:

   https://*host* :5250/spin/calm/CALMSpindle.csp

4. Navigate to Administration, Log Collection, Agent Explorer, Default Agent Group.

5. Select the agent machine and launch Status and Command view.

Importing Role Definitions

Before you can configure the Enterprise Log Manager Connection in the User Console, you must import the CA Enterprise Role Definitions first.

To Import the role definitions:

1. Log onto the Management Console with the following URL.

   `http://host:port/iam/immanage`

2. Navigate to Environment, Role and Task Settings, Click Import Button, and select Enterprise Log Manager - Enterprise Log Manager Role Definitions.xml.
3. Click Save and Close.
4. From the System Tab in the User Console, click on Configure Enterprise Log Manager Connection, fill out the required information and click Submit.

Create a New Connector

Follow this procedure to create a connector.

Follow these steps:

1. Log in to the CA UAR Server at the following URL:

   `https://host:5250/spin/calm/CALMSpindle.csp`

2. Navigate to Administration, Log Collection, Agent Explorer, Default Agent Group.
3. Select the agent machine.
4. Switch to Connectors view.
5. Click the Create a new Connector button and enter the following information:

   Connector Details

   Select Integration type CAIdentityManager and change the connector name if desired.

   Connector Configuration

   Connection String

   - Driver={SQL Server} ; Server=<Auditing DB Server> ; Database=<Auditing DB>
   - Driver={Microsoft ODBC for Oracle} ; Dbq=<Auditing DB TNSname>

   Username: *Auditing DB User*

   Password: *Auditing DB User Password*

6. Apply the following connection configuration changes to the CA Identity Manager Connector for use with 12.6.5.

   - SourceName: the name of Data Source on the agent machine - imsauditevent12
   - AnchorSQL: select max(id) from imsauditevent12
   - AnchorField: IMS_EVENTID
   - EventSQL:

     ```
     select imsauditevent12.id as IMS_EVENtid ,imsauditevent12.audit_time as
     IMS_AUDITTIME ,imsauditevent12.envname as ENVNAME
     ,imsauditevent12.admin_name as ADMINUNIQUENAME ,imsauditevent12.admin_dn as
     ADMINID ,imsauditevent12.tasksession_oid as TRANSACTIONID
     ,imsauditevent12.event_description as EVENTINFO
     ,imsauditevent12.event_state as EVENTSTATE
     ,imsauditevent12.tasksession_oid as TASKOID
     ,imsauditttasksession12.task_name as TASKNAME
     ,imsauditeventobject12.object_type as OBJECTTYPE ,
     imsauditeventobject12.object_name as
     ```

```
OBJECTUNIQUENAME ,imsauditobjectattributes12.attribute_name as ATTRNAME
,imsauditobjectattributes12.attribute_oldvalue as ATTROLDVALUE
,imsauditobjectattributes12.attribute_newvalue as ATTRNEWVALUE
,imsauditobjectattributes12.attribute_newvalue as ATTRVALUE from
imsauditTasksession12, imsauditevent12, imsauditeventobject12,
imsauditobjectattributes12 where imsauditevent12.id >? and
imsauditevent12.tasksession_id = imsauditTasksession12.id and
imsauditevent12.tasksession_oid = imsauditTasksession12.tasksession_oid
and
imsauditeventobject12.parent_event_id = imsauditevent12.id and
imsauditobjectattributes12.parent_object_id = imsauditeventobject12.id
ORDER BY
imsauditevent12.id ASC;
```

7. Save and Close.

To verify that the connector is working

1. Navigate to Administration, Log Collection, Agent Explorer, Default Agent Group.
2. Select the agent machine
3. Switch to Connectors View and click the Launch Status and Command View button.

   The status should be running.

Enable Auditing in CA Identity Manager

To enable auditing in CA Identity Manager

1. Open the Management Console

   `http://host:port//iam/immanage`

2. Navigate to Environments, <Environment>, Advanced Setting, Auditing.
3. Export existing settings and save the file.
4. Modify the saved file with the following and save the modifications:
   - <Audit enabled="true" auditlevel="BOTH" datasource="java:/auditDbDataSource"
   - Add audit profile for Password policies under the last audit profile already defined:

     <AuditProfile objecttype="FWPASSWORDPOLICY" auditlevel="BOTHCHANGED"/>
5. Import the file back into the Management Console and do any of the following to trigger aggregation of auditing information:
   - Tasks performed on User managed object
   - Tasks performed on Group managed object
   - Tasks performed on Password Policies managed object
6. Log in to the CA UAR Server with the following URL:

   https://*host*:5250/spin/calm/CALMSpindle.csp
7. To exercise existing reports, navigate to Queries and Reports, Queries, CA Identity Manager

   Note: You must have the CA UAR Server already configured.
8. Depending on what tasks you have performed, open the following default reports to verify that events are coming:
   - System All Events by User task invokes 'CA Identity Manager - System All Events' filtered by user ID
   - Account Management by Host task invokes 'Account Management by Host' as is
   - Account Creations by Account task invokes 'Account Creations by Account' as is
   - Account Deletions by Account task invokes 'Account Deletions by Account' as is
   - Account Lockouts by Account task invokes 'Account Lockouts by Account' as is
   - Certification Process Activity by Host task invokes 'CA Identity Manager - Process Activity by Host' as is
   - Password Policy Modify Activity task invokes 'CA Identity Manager - Policy Modify Activity' as is

Configure the CA UAR Server

Before you can configure the CA UAR Server to manage, verify the following requirements:

- You must have EiamAdmin credentials.
- You must have Adobe Flash Play version 9.0.28 or higher.

After the CA UAR server is configured, the following functionality is available:

- A single CA UAR server or federated hierarchy can consume multiple environments producing auditing events.
- Data authorization for remote systems can be implemented through the CA UAR Data Access Filter.

Follow these steps:

1. Log in to the CA UAR server product registration page with Administrator credentials using the following URL:

   `https://host:port/spin/calmapi/products.csp`

2. Register a CA Identity Manager environment by clicking the Register button and supplying your certificate name and password.

   Note: Each environment must have separate registration (certificate name/password) pairs.

3. Navigate to Administration, User and Access Management, New Data Access Filter and provide a name for the filter.
4. Proceed to the next step.
5. Leave Selected Identities at "All Identities" and proceed to the next step.
6. Create an access filter by clicking New Event Filter.

   Configure the Data Access Filter by restricting the certificate that is created to machine or environment name only for logs that are collected from CA Identity Manager. You can also restrict the certificate to access native endpoint information for managed endpoints only.

7. Save and close.
8. Open Access Policies by clicking Open Access Policies.
9. Select Obligation Policies and click the single policy available.
10. Remove the "All Identities" and add the certificate name.
11. Save the policy.
12. Log into the CA Identity Manager User Console and configure the Enterprise Log Management Connection.

Configure Enterprise Log Manager Connection

Use this screen to manage newly added CA UAR connection tasks.

This screen contains the following fields.

Connection Name

Specifies the unique name for the single CA UAR connection managed object.

This field is read-only.

Host Name (required)

Specifies the CA UAR server hostname or IP address.

Port # (required)

Specifies the CA UAR server connection port.

Default: 52520

Certificate Authority Signed SSL Certificate

When checked, specifies a strict SSL certificate check when connecting to a CA UAR server.

If you have a self-signed SSL certificate, such as the one installed with CA UAR by default, clear this check box. The trusted path to the root certificate authority does not exist.

Certificate Name (required)

Specifies the name of the CA UAR certificate to use for authentication.

Certificate Password (required)

Specifies the CA UAR password.

Attribute

Not supported. Version is retrieved on an attempt to save connection information as a test.

Delete Enterprise Log Manager Connection

Select a connection from the list and click Delete. The CA Enterprise Log Manager connection task is deleted.

Integrate Additional CA UAR Reports or Queries with CA Identity Manager

You can integrate additional reports or queries with CA Identity Manager using the Enterprise Log Manager Viewer tab. These new reports or queries can be combined with existing tasks (including wizards) and new tasks. CA UAR federated data can also be included if needed. Using the Enterprise Log Manager View tab, you can apply filters to the information retrieved. These filters can use:

- Constant values
- Managed object attributes
  - For example, physical - ::MyPhysicalAttribute::

    logical - ::|MyLogicalAttribute|::
- Any field as described by Common Event Grammar (CEG)
  - dest_username
  - dest_objectname
  - dest_uid
  - source_username
  - source_objectname
  - source_uid

Configure the Enterprise Log Manager Viewer Tab

Configure the CA Enterprise Log Manager Viewer tab to include one or more of the following fields:

Name

A name you assign to the tab.

Tag

An identifier for the tab that is unique within the task. It must start with a letter or underscore and contain, letters, numbers, or underscores only. The tag is mainly used for setting data values through XML documents or HTTP parameters.

Hide Tab

Prevents the tab from being visible in the task. This option is useful for applications that need to hide the tab, but still have access to attributes on the tab.

Enterprise Log Manager Query

Specifies that CA UAR queries are displayed.

Note: You can specify either CA Enterprise Log Manager Query or CA Enterprise Log Manager Report, but not both.

Enterprise Log Manager Report

Specifies that CA UAR reports are displayed.

Enterprise Log Manager id

Species the id for either the query or report.

Include Federated Data

Includes or excludes federated data in the results. By default, this field is unchecked.

Show Prompt

Specifies CA UAR prompt queries only. By default, this field is unchecked.

Filter

Specifies SQL-based advanced conditions that are used to narrow results returned by CA UAR queries or reports. Constant and dynamic values can be included. The following code is a sample expression:

```
((source_uid EQUAL ::logical.attribute.X:: ) AND (source_username EQUAL
::logical.attribute.Y:: ))
```

Supported operations include:

- equals (EQUAL)
- not equals (NEQ)

- less (LESS)
- greater (GREATER)
- less or equals (LEQ)
- greater or equals (GREATEQ)
- like (LIKE)
- not like (NOTLIKE)
- in set (INSET)
- not in set (NOTINSET)

Support conjunctions include:

- AND
- OR

Parentheses are mandatory. If the value on the left side in condition expression does not have the "::" marker on both ends, the value is considered a constant and the value is sent to CA UAR as is.

Parameter/Value Table

Specifies the fields and values for scoping.

Only queries or reports matching tags and tags logic of scoping are selected.

Parameter

Specifies the values for the Start, Stop, and Limit parameters. The following parameters are supported:

- Time granularity (for trends only)
- Start time
- End time
- Earliest group event is dated after (for grouped queries only)
- Latest grouped event is dated after (for grouped queries only)
- Latest grouped event is dated before (for grouped queries only)
- The minimum number of events in the grouping (for grouped queries only)
- The maximum number of events in the grouping (for grouped queries only)

Chapter 18: Access Roles

Access roles provide an additional way to provide entitlements in CA Identity Manager or another application. For example, you can use access roles to accomplish the following:

- Provide indirect access to a user attribute
- Create complex expressions
- Set an attribute in a user profile, which is used by another application to determine entitlements

Access roles are similar to identity policies in that they apply a set of business changes to a user or group of users. However, when you use an access role to apply business changes, you can see which users the changes apply to by viewing the members of the access role.

In most cases, access roles are not associated with tasks.

Note: When CA Identity Manager integrates with CA SiteMinder, access roles can also provide access to applications that are protected by CA SiteMinder. In this case, access roles do include access tasks. For more information, see the chapter on SiteMinder integration in the *Configuration Guide*.

This section contains the following topics:

How Access Roles Manage Entitlements (see page 511)
Example: Indirect Profile Attribute Modification (see page 512)
Create an Access Role (see page 512)

How Access Roles Manage Entitlements

You can use access roles to manage entitlements by specifying change actions, which occur when a user is added or removed as a member or administrator of a role.

To use access roles, you complete the following steps:

1. An administrator creates an access role.
2. On the Members tab, the administrator specifies add or remove actions, which determine the actions that CA Identity Manager takes when the access role is assigned to a user.
3. The administrator specifies administrator and owner policies, as needed, and submits the task to create the access role.

4. Access role administrators assign the access role to users.
5. CA Identity Manager completes the add actions specified in the role.

Example: Indirect Profile Attribute Modification

You can use access roles to indirectly change an attribute in a user's profile. For example, a company may not want to allow any user to directly change another user's title. That company can create an access role that changes a title when an administrator assigns the role to a user.

To indirectly change an attribute, you set the change actions for the access role. When an administrator assigns the role, the change action can make one or more changes to an attribute in the user's profile.

To use an access role to indirectly modify an attribute, do the following:

1. Create an access role.
2. On the Members tab, select the Administrators Can Add or Remove Members of this Role checkbox, and click the arrow icon.

   CA Identity Manager displays additional Add Action and Remove Action fields.
3. In the Add Action or Remove Action fields, select an action from the list box.

   CA Identity Manager displays additional fields based on the option you selected.
4. Configure the Add or Remove actions as needed.
5. Select the Administrator tab to specify the administrators who can add members to the access role you are creating.
6. Select the Owners tab to specify the administrators who can modify the access role definition.
7. Click Submit to complete the access role creation.
8. Assign the access role to users, as needed.

Create an Access Role

Creating an access role involves these steps:

- Begin Access Role Creation (see page 513)
- Define the Profile of an Access Role (see page 513)
- Define Member Policies for an Access Role (see page 513)
- Define Admin Policies for an Access Role (see page 514)
- Define Owner Rules for an Access Role (see page 514)

Begin Access Role Creation

Follow these steps:

1. Log in to a CA Identity Manager account with a role that includes a task for creating access roles.
2. Click Access Roles, Create Access Role.

   Choose the option to create a role or a copy of role. If you select Copy, search for the role.
3. Continue with next section, Define the Profile of an Access Role.

Define the Profile of an Access Role

Follow these steps:

1. Enter a name, description, and complete any custom attributes defined for the role.

   Note: You can specify custom attributes on the Profile tab that specify additional information about access roles. You can use this additional information to facilitate role searches in environments that include a significant number of roles.
2. Select Enabled if you are ready to make the role available for use as soon as you create it.
3. Continue with the next section, Define Member Policies for an Access Role (see page 513).

Define Member Policies for an Access Role

On the Members tab:

1. Select Add to define the member policies.
2. (Optional) On the Member Policy page, optionally define a member rule for who should be able to use this role.

   This automatically assigns the role to users who match the criteria in the member policy.

3. Verify that the Member Policy appears on the Members tab.

   To edit a policy, click the arrow symbol on the left. To remove it, click the minus sign icon.

4. On the Members tab, enable the Administrators can add and remove members of this role check box.

   Once you enable this feature, you define the Add Action and Remove Action. These actions define what happens when a user is added or removed as a member of the role.

5. Continue with the next section, Define Admin Policies for an Access Role (see page 514).

Define Admin Policies for an Access Role

On the Administrators tab:

1. If you want to make the Manage Administrators option available, enable the Administrators can add and remove administrators of this role check box.

   Once you enable this feature, define the actions for when a user is added or removed as an administrator of the role.

2. On the Administrators tab, add admin policies that include admin and scope rules and administrator privileges. Each policy needs at least one privilege (Manage Members or Manage Administrators).

   You can add several admin policies with different rules and different privileges for administrators who meet the rule.

3. To edit a policy, click the arrow symbol on the left. To remove it, click the minus sign icon.

4. Continue with the next section, Define Owner Rules for an Access Role (see page 514).

Define Owner Rules for an Access Role

On the Owners tab:

1. Define owner rules, which determine which users can modify the role.

2. Click Submit.

   A message appears to indicate that the task has been submitted. A momentary delay may occur before a user can use the role.

Chapter 19: System Tasks

This section contains the following topics:

Default System Tasks (see page 515)
How to Add Users with a Feeder File (see page 516)
Loader Records Details Tab (see page 521)
Loader Actions Mapping Tab (see page 521)
Loader Notification Details Tab (see page 522)
Acknowledge Bulk Loader Task Changes (see page 522)
Configure Email Notifications for Bulk Loader Tasks (see page 523)
Schedule a Bulk Loader Task (see page 524)
Modify the Parser File for the Bulk Loader (see page 524)
Web Service Support for the Bulk Loader (see page 525)
JDBC Connection Management (see page 525)
Logical Attribute Handlers (see page 526)
Select Box Data (see page 529)
Configure Correlation Attributes Task Screen (see page 530)
Configure Global Policy Based Workflow for Events Task Screen (see page 531)
Task Status in CA Identity Manager (see page 532)
Cleanup Submitted Tasks (see page 547)
Delete Recurring Tasks (see page 551)
Configure Enterprise Log Manager Connection (see page 552)
Delete Enterprise Log Manager Connection (see page 553)
Manage Secret Keys (see page 553)

Default System Tasks

CA Identity Manager includes the following tasks that help administrators to manage CA Identity Manager environment:

- View Submitted Tasks tasks

  Allows administrators to view the status of tasks in the environment. Also removes obsolete tasks from the View Submitted Task screens.

- Bulk Loader tasks

  Uploads feeder files that are used to manipulate large numbers of managed objects simultaneously.

- Bulk Task

  Runs a task on an object, such as User, based on the attributes of the object, such as department, city, termination date, and so on. You can run this task periodically, such as every Saturday.

  You can also use this task to make bulk user changes.

- Select Box Data tasks

  Allows administrators to upload files that are used to populate options in fields, such as select boxes, in admin tasks.

- Logical Attribute Handler tasks

  Allows administrators to manage logical attributes, which are used to display user store attributes (called physical attributes) in a user-friendly format on task screens.

- JDBC Connection Management tasks

  Configures the database server connection details in CA Identity Manager.

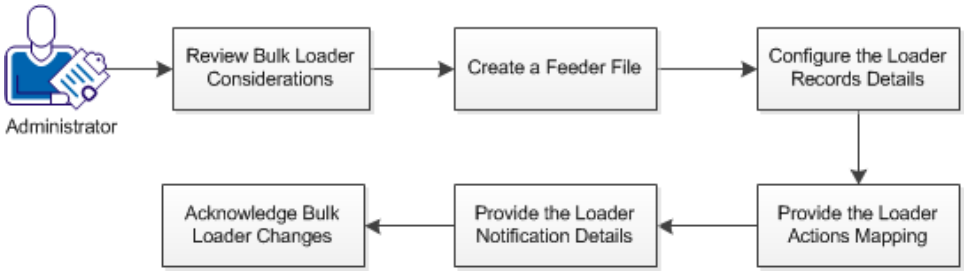
- Email Tasks

  Manages email notification policies.

How to Add Users with a Feeder File

You can use the Bulk Loader tab to upload feeder files that are used to manipulate large numbers of managed objects simultaneously. For example, you can create 1000 users in the system manually, or you can use the Bulk Loader. The Bulk Loader task can also be mapped to a workflow process.

The Bulk Load Client is a command line utility that exists for batch processing. We recommend using the Bulk Load Client if your environment is in a cluster (for load-balancing purposes). The Bulk Load Client can be found on the Provisioning Components media.



Follow these steps:

1. Review the Bulk Loader considerations (see page 517).
2. Create a CSV or XLS feeder file (see page 519) and upload it.
3. Configure the Loader Records Details (see page 521).

   This tab allows you to specify the action and identifier fields in the feeder file.

4. Provide the Loader Actions Mapping (see page 521).

   This tab allows you to select the primary object and specify what task to execute for the action on an object.

5. Provide the Loader Notification Details (see page 522).

   This tab allows you to select users to certify Bulk Loader task changes.

6. Acknowledge and modify the progress of the Bulk Loader task changes (see page 522).

Bulk Loader Considerations

You can use the Bulk Loader tab to upload feeder files that are used to manipulate large numbers of managed objects simultaneously. Note the following considerations when using the Bulk Loader:

- Consider scheduling large bulk loads during non-peak times, such as overnight. Large bulk loads can affect performance. In some cases, a bulk load that includes many sub tasks can prevent user submitted tasks from completing until the bulk load finishes.
- If the server goes down during a long-running task, such as uploading many objects, restart the task under View Submitted Tasks. When the task restarts, it begins from the last successfully executed record.
- If you are using LDAP as a user store with Solaris, the Bulk Loader can hang during an import. To fix this issue, see the Specify LDAP Connection Settings topic in the *Configuration Guide* and apply the settings that are outlined there.
- The Bulk Loader does not set or update relationships such a group memberships, provisioning roles, and admin roles. Instead, use Policy Xpress for this purpose.
- If you use the Bulk Loader to import a large number of users, you may see out-of-memory exceptions. To address this issue, tune the following heap size memory parameters:
  - -Xmx
  - -XX:maxPermSize

    Note: For more information about tuning memory parameters, see your application server documentation.

- Using the bulk loader to manipulate many managed objects, such as creating many users, can affect performance. To improve performance, consider the following recommendations:
  - Divide one large CSV file into multiple small files when using the User Console to do bulk loads. For example, doing ten bulk loads of 10,000 users is quicker than doing one bulk load of 100,000 users.

    Note: A CSV file with more than 10,000 entries may cause issues in the system.
  - Limit the number of tasks that the user who is performing the bulk load has. For example, performance improves when the administrator who initiates the bulk load has only a few tasks. When the administrator has many tasks, CA Identity Manager has to do more extensive permissions checks, which can affect performance.
  - Limit the number of Policy Xpress policies, which are associated with the bulk changes, that involve provisioning. Also, consider creating simple Policy Xpress policies, which do not affect performance as much as complex policies during a bulk load operation.
  - Verify that you have sufficient system resources.

Limit Data Validation to Improve Bulk Load Performance

An admin task typically includes multiple tabs. By default, bulk operations validate data on each tab in a task.

Validation can affect the performance of bulk operations. To improve performance, you can disable data validation for task tabs, if validation is not required.

Follow these steps:

1. Log in to the User Console as a user who can modify admin tasks.
2. Select Tasks, Roles and Tasks, Admin Tasks, Modify Admin Task.
3. Search for and select the task that applies in the bulk operation.
4. Select Tabs, then select the tab that you want to modify.
5. Select Do Not Validate in Bulk Operations, then click OK.
6. Repeat steps 4 and 5 for each tab that does not require data validation.
7. Click Submit.

   Data validation is disabled for the tabs that you modified.

Limit Custom Business Logic

Including custom business logic, such as business logic task handlers and event listeners, in tasks that are used in bulk operations can affect performance.

To improve performance, disable the custom business logic in bulk load operations.

Follow these steps:

1. Open the Management Console.
2. Select the applicable environment that includes the event listener or business logic task handler.
3. Select Advanced Settings, Business Logic Task Handlers (if applicable).
4. Set the value of the UseInBulkOperation property to false, then click Save.
5. Repeat step 4 for Event Listeners.
6. Once you have completed the modifications for business logic task handlers and event listeners, restart the environment.

Create a Feeder File

A Bulk Loader file is used to automate repeated actions performed on a large number of managed objects. When you upload a feeder file, the system parses and reads the feeder file.

The feeder file must have a CSV or XLS extension, and have the following properties:

- The file must contain a header line which specifies physical attributes, logical attributes, or well-known attribute names of a managed object.
- The header line must include a column that indicates the action to be performed on the records.
- Each row in the feeder file is named a record. The records contain the values for each of the attributes specified by the header line. The following options are acceptable values for an attribute:
  - Value—the attribute is set to the value you specify.
  - Value;Value;Value;...—the attribute is set to the multivalued attribute you specify.

- ' ' (blank)—the attribute is not changed.
- NULL—the attribute is deleted. The deletion sequence is set to NULL by default, but can be edited in the Bulk Loader File Upload Search screen.

Note: To use a hash (#) in the feeder file, enclose the hash mark in double quotes, for example, user#1 should be specified as "user#1".

Important! The feeder file must be saved with UTF-8 encoding.

Sample Feeder File for Creating Users

This sample feeder file creates users with certain required attributes.

```
action,%USER_ID%,%FIRST_NAME%,%LAST_NAME%,%FULL_NAME%,%PASSWORD%,%EMAIL%
create,JD,John,Doe,John Doe,mypassword,Johndoe@a.com
create,BD,Baby,Doe,Baby Doe,mypassword2,Babydoe@a.com
```

In the preceding code, the feeder file has the following properties:

Header

The first line of the code is the header line. The header line has physical attributes or well-known attributes for the managed object 'User'.

Action

The action column identifies the task to be performed for each record. For example, the preceding file specifies that a 'create' action should be performed on the First Name 'John'.

Sample Feeder File for Enabling Users

This sample feeder file changes the value of the |enabled| logical attribute. You specify the logical attribute in the header, and the value (in this case, true or false) in each user entry in the file.

```
action,%USER_ID%,|enable|

MODIFY,user1,false

MODIFY,user2,true
```

Loader Records Details Tab

The Loader Records Details tab displays a short preview of the records available in your feeder file. The preview table displays a maximum of 5 records. The preview table is to help users identify if they are uploading the correct file. Also, this tab allows you to identify the action you want to perform on the managed objects specified in your feeder file. You must complete the following fields:

What field represents the action to perform on the object?

Identifies the fields from the feeder file that mention the action you want to perform on the managed objects. For example, you can use a feeder file with a field 'action' that takes the values Create, Modify, and Delete. You must map each of these actions to an admin task in Loader Actions Mapping (see page 521).

What field will be used to uniquely identify the object?

Identifies the field from the feeder file that can uniquely identify the primary object.

Note: If the feeder file has an invalid header line, the feeder file records will not be displayed in the Loader Records Details tab. Select another feeder file in the case of invalid header lines. If the feeder file contains some invalid records, the detailed status of the upload will be in View Submitted Tasks under the System tab.

Loader Actions Mapping Tab

The Loader Actions Mapping tab allows you to select a primary object on which the actions specified in the feeder file will be performed. You must also map the actions from the feeder file to admin tasks for the selected primary object.

What is the Primary Object?

Identifies the primary object to be manipulated by CA Identity Manager using the feeder file. You can select any one of the following primary objects:

- User
- Groups
- Organization

Select a task to execute for 'action'

Identifies the admin tasks to be performed for each action specified by the feeder file, such as the Delete or Modify tasks.

Note: You have to map all the actions in the feeder file to an admin task. Also, the admin tasks displayed in this field are dependent on the primary object selected. For example, if you select 'User' as the primary object, only the admin tasks related to 'User' are displayed.

Select a task for non-existing object for 'action'

Identifies the alternate admin tasks to be performed for an action specified in the feeder file in the event that the managed object does not yet exist within CA Identity Manager, such as the Create task.

Loader Notification Details Tab

Important! By default, this tab isn't included in the Bulk Loader wizard. You must add it manually by modifying the Bulk Loader task and adding the Loader Notification Details tab. Also, this tab requires you to enable workflow in the environment.

The Loader Notification Details tab allows you to select certification managers for the Bulk Loader task. When a Bulk Loader task completes, CA Identity Manager creates a Bulk Loader Notification for all certification managers configured for the task. This notification appears in the Home tab under Bulk Loader Notifications. Clicking on the notification displays details for tasks initiated by the bulk load operation. Certification managers can then review and acknowledge the changes detailed in the notifications.

Note: To provide a list of certification managers, use any of the available participant resolvers in the drop-down list. For more information about Participant Resolvers, see the Workflow section of this guide.

Acknowledge Bulk Loader Task Changes

The Bulk Loader Notifications contain details on all the changes that the Bulk Loader task initiated. Certification managers can review and acknowledge any changes initiated by a Bulk Loader task.

To review and acknowledge Bulk Loader task changes

1. Log in to the User Console as a user that is listed as a certification manager for a Bulk Loader task.
2. Go to Home, View my Bulk Loader Notifications.

3. Select the Bulk Loader Notification you want to review.

   The Manage Bulk Loader Notifications screen appears and displays a table listing all the Bulk Loader task changes that were initiated.

   From this screen, you can do the following:

   - To review specific task details for a create or modify object, click the hyperlink under the Description column.
   - If there are compliance violations, or if you want to remove a role that was added to a user, you can edit the user directly from the notification screen by clicking the Edit icon next to the User ID.
   - To review any roles added to a user, click the hyperlink under the Requested Role Assignments column associated with the User ID.

4. Once you have reviewed all the changes for a specific object, select the Acknowledge check box for that object.
5. Once you are done acknowledging changes, click Acknowledge to remove all selected change notifications from the list.

   Note: You can select Acknowledge All to acknowledge all of the changes in a Bulk Loader notification. This deletes the Bulk Loader Notification from the Home tab. Also, you can select the check box at the top of the Acknowledge column to select all of the change notifications on the screen at that time, and acknowledge changes screen by screen.

   When all user changes associated with a Bulk Loader task are acknowledged, the Bulk Loader Notification disappears from the Home tab.

Configure Email Notifications for Bulk Loader Tasks

In some environments, bulk operation email notifications are configured by default. To check if bulk operation email notifications are configured in your system, go to System, Email, View Email, and search on the term 'bulk'.

If no email notifications are configured in your environment, configure the email that is sent when a bulk operation completes.

Follow these steps:

1. Navigate to System, Email, Create Email in the User Console.
2. Complete the required fields on the Profile tab.

3. On the When to Send tab, complete the following steps:
   a. Select Task Completes in the first field.
   b. Select Bulk Loader in the second field.
4. Complete the Recipients and Content tabs, then click Submit.

   Email notifications are configured for bulk loader tasks.

Schedule a Bulk Loader Task

The Bulk Loader task can be scheduled in the system. To schedule the Bulk Loader task, add a Scheduler tab (see page 60) to the task.

Modify the Parser File for the Bulk Loader

To modify the parser used to parse feeder files, configure the corresponding admin task.

To modify the Bulk Loader admin task

1. Navigate to Roles and Tasks, Admin Tasks, Manage Admin Task.
2. Search for the Bulk Loader task.
3. Select the Bulk Loader task, and click Select.
4. Select the Search tab for the Bulk Loader task.
5. Click Browse to locate search screens.

   The list of available search screens is displayed.
6. Select a Search screen and click Edit.

   The Search screen details appear.
7. (Optional) Edit the Parser Fully Qualified Name.

   The Parser Fully Qualified Name must match the name of your parser file.

   Note: For more information about creating a custom CSV parser, see the Javadoc for the FeederParser class. If you use JBoss as your application server and you create a custom parser, the custom parser file must be in the iam_im.ear/user_console_war/WEB-INF/classes directory.
8. Click OK.

Web Service Support for the Bulk Loader

The Bulk Loader has a web service API that can be called using the CA Identity Manager Task Execution Web Service (TEWS) interface. TEWS allows client applications to submit remote tasks to CA Identity Manager for execution. This interface implements the WSDL and SOAP open standards to provide remote access to CA Identity Manager.

CA Identity Manager includes Java client samples that demonstrate calling the Bulk Loader as a web service. The Java samples are located in the following source file:

admin_tools\samples\WebService\Axis\optional\ObjectsFeeder.java

Data samples and documentation for calling the Bulk Loader as a web service are located in the following directory:

admin_tools\samples\Feeder\

Note: For more information, see the *Programming Guide for Java*.

JDBC Connection Management

Information for CA Identity Manager reports can come from multiple sources and each report should be associated with a specific data source, depending on the information you want to view in the report.

To establish different data sources for reporting (such as an auditing database or task persistence database), create a connection managed object in CA Identity Manager. After creating the connection, you can associate a report with a specific connection managed object by modifying the report task and setting the Connection Object for the Report under the report task's search tab.

Create JDBC Connection

Use the following steps to provide connection details within CA Identity Manager.

To create a JDBC Connection

1. Click System, JDBC Connection Management, Create JDBC Connection.
2. Create a new connection object, or choose a connection object based on a specific JNDI data source.
3. Complete all the necessary fields, and click Submit.

   A new JDBC Connection is created.

Logical Attribute Handlers

CA Identity Manager logical attributes allow you to display user store attributes (called physical attributes) in a user-friendly format on task screens. CA Identity Manager administrators use task screens to perform functions in CA Identity Manager. Logical attributes do not exist in a user store. Typically, they represent one or more physical attributes to simplify presentation. For example, the logical attribute date may represent the physical attributes month, day, and year.

Logical attributes are processed by logical attribute handlers, which are Java objects that are written using the Logical Attribute API. (See the *Programming Guide for Java*.) For example, when a task screen is displayed, a logical attribute handler might convert physical attribute data from the user store into logical attribute data, which is displayed on the task screen. You can use pre-defined logical attributes and logical attribute handlers included with CA Identity Manager, or create new ones using the Logical Attribute API.

Note: For more information on logical attributes, see the *Programming Guide for Java*.

In the User Console, the Environment category contains tasks for managing logical attribute handlers. The list includes pre-defined handlers shipped with CA Identity Manager and any custom handlers defined at your site.

From the Environment task category, you can do the following:

- Create a new logical attribute handler with CA Identity Manager
- Copy a handler
- Delete a handler
- Modify an existing handler configuration

Note: To change the order of execution for logical attribute handlers, use the Management Console.

Create a Logical Attribute Handler

To create a logical attribute handler

1. Navigate to System, Logical Attributes, Create Logical Attribute Handler.
2. In the Create Logical Attribute Handler screen, select Create Standard Logical Attribute Handler and click OK.

3. In the Create Logical Attribute Handler screen, configure the settings for the logical attribute handler.

   For a description of each field, click the Help link from this screen.

4. Click Submit.

   The handler is added to the list of handlers on the Logical Attribute Handlers screen.

Note: You do not need to restart the application server after configuring logical attribute handlers using the User Console.

Copy a Logical Attribute Handler

To copy a logical attribute handler

1. Navigate to System, Logical Attributes, Create Logical Attribute Handler.
2. In the Create Logical Attribute Handler screen, select Create a copy of a logical attribute handler definition and click Search.
3. Select a logical attribute handler (for example, ConfirmPasswordHandler) and click OK.
4. In the Create Logical Attribute Handler screen, configure the settings for the logical attribute handler.

   For a description of each field, click the Help link from this screen.

5. Click Submit.

   The handler is added to the list of handlers on the Logical Attribute Handlers screen.

Note: You do not need to restart the application server after configuring logical attribute handlers using the User Console.

Create a ForgottenPasswordHandler Logical Attribute Handler

The ForgottenPasswordHandler logical attribute handler uses separate logical attributes for the following:

- configuration
- runtime questions and answers

To create a ForgottenPasswordHandler logical attribute handler

1. Navigate to System, Logical Attributes, Create Logical Attribute Handler.
2. In the Create Logical Attribute Handler screen, select Create Standard Logical Attribute Handler and click Search.

3. Select the ForgottenPasswordHandler and click OK.
4. In the Create Logical Attribute Handler: ForgottenPasswordHandler screen, configure the settings for the logical attribute handler.

   For a description of each field, click the Help link from this screen.
5. Click Submit.

   The handler is added to the list of handlers on the Logical Attribute Handlers screen.

Note: You do not need to restart the application server after configuring logical attribute handlers using the User Console.

Delete a Logical Attribute Handler

To delete a logical attribute handler

1. Navigate to System, Logical Attributes, Create Logical Attribute Handler.
2. In the Delete Logical Attribute Handler screen, select the check box to the left of each logical attribute to delete.
3. Click Select.

   CA Identity Manager displays a confirmation message.
4. Click Yes to confirm the deletion.

Modify a Logical Attribute Handler

To modify a logical attribute handler

1. Navigate to System, Logical Attributes, Create Logical Attribute Handler.
2. In the Modify Logical Attribute Handler screen, select the handler that you want to modify and click Select.
3. Select a logical attribute handler (for example, ConfirmPasswordHandler) and click OK.
4. In the Modify Logical Attribute Handler screen, configure the settings for the logical attribute handler.

   For a description of each field, click the Help link from this screen.
5. Click Submit.

Note: You do not need to restart the application server after configuring logical attribute handlers using the User Console.

View a Logical Attribute Handler

To view a logical attribute handler

1. Navigate to System, Logical Attributes, Create Logical Attribute Handler.
2. In the View Logical Attribute Handler screen, select the handler that you want to view and click Select.
3. View the logical attribute handler's properties and click Close.

Select Box Data

You can populate the options that are available in the following fields:

- Check Box Multi-Select
- Dropdown
- Dropdown Combo
- Multi-Select
- Option Selector
- Option Selector Combo
- Radio Button Single-Select
- Single-Select

These options are stored in Select Box Data XML files. For example, you can use the Select Box Data XML files to populate options for a City or State drop down box on a Profile tab for the Create User task.

You can also use the Select Box Data XML file to configure a dependency between two fields in an admin task. For example, the options that are available in the City field may depend on the option a user chooses in the State field.

Note: For more information about select box data, see the *User Console Design Guide.*

Configure Correlation Attributes Task Screen

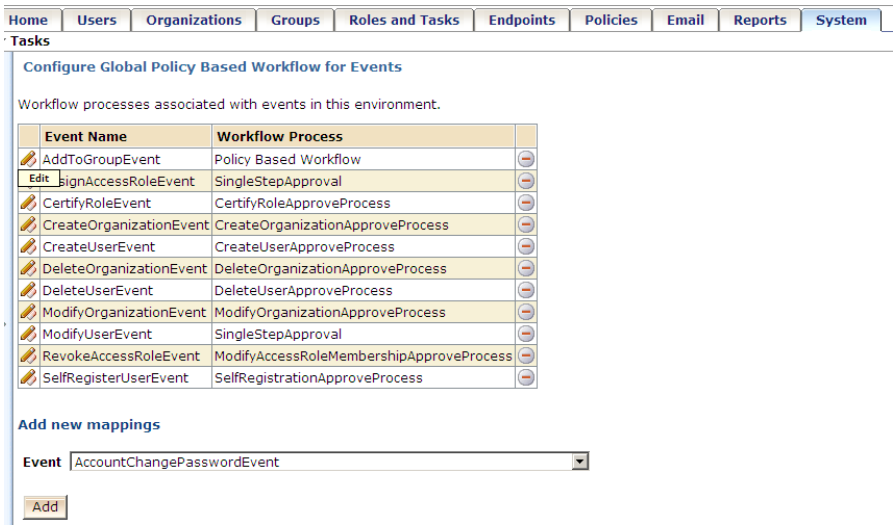
This topic applies only to CA CloudMinder.

Use the Configure Correlation Attributes Task Screen to configure correlation rules for the environment.

CA Identity Manager reads configuration parameters into memory and periodically synchronizes the memory version with the database version of the common DSA. Since the Correlation Attributes is tenant specific, the Provisioning Server reads the Correlation Attributes from the corresponding tenant DSA during an Explore and Correlate operation. The updated Correlation rules take effect immediately with no need to wait for the Parameters Update Time.

Configure Global Policy Based Workflow for Events Task Screen

The Configure Global Policy Based Workflow for Events tasks lets an administrator configure policy or non-policy based workflow for all events in the current environment. Clicking the task displays the default event mapping to workflow process definitions. Each event mapping can be modified or deleted, and new event mappings can be added for events that have not been configured.



The fields on this screen are as follows:

Workflow processes associated with events in this environment.

Specifies the workflow processes associated with approval policies.

Add New Mappings

Specifies an approval policy to map to a workflow process.

Add Button

Adds the new mapping.

Adding or modifying a mapping opens the Workflow Mapping screen where you can select the process mappings and approval policies. The behavior is the same as the event level workflow configuration. Clicking the Add button on the Workflow Mappings page brings up another page where you can configure an approval policy.

More Information

How to Configure Policy-Based Workflow for Events (see page 317)
How to Configure an Approval Policy (see page 320)

Task Status in CA Identity Manager

Administrators may want to track the status of CA Identity Manager tasks once they are submitted for processing. CA Identity Manager provides the following methods for viewing task status:

- **View Submitted Tasks Tab**

  This tab allows you to search for and display CA Identity Manager tasks that have been submitted for processing.

  Administrators can view task details at a high level or view additional levels of detail.

  The View Submitted Tasks tab is included in two default tasks:

  - View My Submitted Tasks

    Allows administrators to search for and display information about tasks that they submitted for processing.

  - View Submitted Tasks

    Allows administrators to search for and display information about tasks that other administrators have submitted for processing.

- **User History Tab**

  This tab, which you can add to user tasks, such as View or Modify User, lets administrators view the following information for a selected user:

  - Tasks performed on the user
  - Tasks performed by the user
  - Workflow approvals by the user

- **Reports**

  CA Identity Manager reports enable you to see the current state of a CA Identity Manager environment. You can use this information to ensure compliance with internal business policies or external regulations.

  Reporting (see page 387) provides additional information about setting up and using reports.

- **Logs**

  Display information about all of the components in a CA Identity Manager installation, and provide details about all operations in CA Identity Manager.

  See the *Configuration Guide* for more information about CA Identity Manager logs.

How CA Identity Manager Determines Task Status

A *task* is an administrative function that a user can perform in CA Identity Manager. Tasks include *events*, actions that CA Identity Manager performs to complete the task. A task may include multiple events. For example, the Create User task may include events that create the user's profile, adds the user to a group, and assigns roles.

CA Identity Manager tasks and events can be associated with a workflow process, which determines how CA Identity Manager performs the required actions, and other custom business logic. Tasks may also be associated with other tasks, called nested tasks. In this case, CA Identity Manager processes the nested tasks with the original task.

The status of a task depends on the status of its associated events, workflow processes, nested tasks, and custom business logic.

View Submitted Tasks

CA Identity Manager includes a View Submitted Tasks feature that provides information about tasks in a CA Identity Manager environment. You can use this feature to search for and view high-level details about actions that CA Identity Manager performs. Detail screens provide additional information about each task and event.

Depending on the status of the task, you can use View Submitted Tasks to abort or resubmit a task.

View Submitted Tasks allows you to track the processing of a task from beginning to end. For example, if a CA Identity Manager task includes provisioning role assignment, and that assignment triggers the creation of accounts in other systems, The View Submitted Tasks tab displays all of the details of the original task and the details of the account creations.

View Submitted Tasks includes details of operations performed in the system. These operations could be the result of a CA Identity Manager event, such as EnableUserEvent. The notifications sent by the system are grouped under this event. View Submitted Tasks displays a message indicating the notifications are In Progress until the End Detail notification is sent. Then, the message changes to Completed.

By default, CA Identity Manager includes the View Submitted Tasks tab in two tasks:

- View Submitted Tasks
- View My Submitted Tasks

Search for Submitted Tasks

Perform the following steps to search for submitted tasks.

To search for submitted tasks

1. Navigate to System, View Submitted Tasks.

   The View Submitted Tasks page appears.

2. Specify search criteria, enter the number of rows to be displayed, and click Search.

   The tasks that satisfy your search criteria are displayed.

   Note: For more information on specifying attributes in the search criteria, see Search Attributes for Viewing Submitted Tasks (see page 534).

Search Attributes for Viewing Submitted Tasks

To review tasks that have been submitted for processing, you can use the search feature in View Submitted Tasks. You can search for tasks based on the following criteria:

Initiated By

Identifies the name of the user who has initiated a task as the search criteria. Searches are based on the user name. To ensure that you entered a valid user name, use the Validate button.

Approval Tasks Performed By

Identifies the name of the task approver as the search criteria. Searches are based on the user name. To ensure that you entered a valid user name, use the Validate button.

Note: If you select Approval Tasks Performed By criteria to filter the tasks, the Show approval tasks criteria is also enabled by default.

Task Name

Identifies the task name as the search criteria. You can refine the search by specifying conditions such as equals, contains, starts with, or ends with the value of the Where Task Name field. For example, you can specify the search criteria "task name equals Create User" by selecting the equals condition, and entering Create User in the text field.

Task Status

Identifies task status as the search criteria. You can select the task status by enabling Where task status equals, and selecting the condition. You can further refine the search based on the following conditions:

- Completed
- In Progress
- Failed

- Rejected
- Partially Completed
- Aborted
- Scheduled

Note: See Task Status Description (see page 536) for more information.

Task Priority

Identifies task priority as the search criteria. You can select the task priority by enabling Where task priority equals, and selecting the condition. You can further refine the search based on the following conditions:

Low

Specifies that you can search for tasks that have a low priority.

Medium

Specifies that you can search for tasks that have a medium priority.

High

Specifies that you can search for tasks that have a high priority.

Performed On

Identifies tasks that are performed on the selected instance of the object. If you do not select an instance of the object, the tasks that were performed on all the instances of that object will be displayed.

Note: This field appears only when the Configure Performed On field is populated in the Configure Submitted Tasks screen. You use this screen to configure the Submitted Tasks tab. See the online help for that screen for more information.

Date range

Identifies the dates between which you want to search submitted tasks. You must provide the From and To dates.

Show unsubmitted tasks

Identifies the tasks in the Audited state. Identifies the tasks that have initiated other tasks or tasks that have not been submitted. All such tasks will be audited and displayed if you select this tab.

Show approval tasks

Identifies the tasks that have to be approved as part of a workflow.

Search archive of submitted tasks

Identifies the submitted tasks that have been archived.

More Information:

Task Status Description (see page 536)

Task Status Description

A submitted task exists in one of the states described below. Based on the state of the task, you can perform actions such as cancelling or resubmitting a task.

Note: To cancel or resubmit a task, you must configure View Submitted Tasks to display the cancel and resubmit buttons based on the tasks status. For more information on cancelling and resubmitting tasks, see Customize the View Submitted Tasks Tab (see page 539).

In progress

Displayed when any of the following occurs:

- Workflow is initiated but not yet completed
- Tasks, which are initiated before the current tasks, are in progress
- Nested tasks are initiated but not yet completed
- The primary event is initiated but not yet completed
- Secondary events are initiated but not yet completed

You can cancel a task in this state.

Note: Cancelling a task will cancel all the incomplete nested tasks and events for the current task.

Cancelled

Displayed when you cancel any of the tasks or events in progress.

Rejected

Displayed when CA Identity Manager rejects an event or task that is part of a workflow process. You can resubmit a rejected task.

Note: When you resubmit a task, CA Identity Manager will resubmit all the failed or rejected nested tasks and events.

Partially Completed

Displayed when you cancel some of the events or nested tasks. You can resubmit a partially completed event or nested task.

Completed

Displayed when a task is completed. A task is completed when the nested tasks and nested events of the current task are completed.

Failed

Displayed when a task, nested task, or event nested in the current task are invalid. This status is displayed when the task fails. You can resubmit a failed task.

Scheduled

Displayed when the task is scheduled to execute at a later date. You can cancel a task in this state.

Audited

Displayed when the current task is audited.

View Task Details

CA Identity Manager provides task details, such as the status of a submitted task, nested tasks, and events associated with a task.

To view details of a submitted task

1. Click the right arrow icon next to the selected task in the View Submitted Tasks tab.

   The task details appear.

   Note: Events and nested tasks (if any) are displayed in the Task Details page. You can view the task details for each of the tasks and events.

2. Click Close.

   The Task Details tab closes and CA Identity Manager displays the View Submitted Tasks tab with the tasks list.

View Event Details

CA Identity Manager provides events details, such as the status of a submitted event, event attributes, and any additional information about the events.

To view details of a submitted event

1. Click the right arrow icon next to an event in the View Task Details page.

   The event details appear.

2. Click Close.

   The Event Details page is closed.

Description of Event Status

Events in CA Identity Manager can be in one of the states described below. Based on the event status, you can cancel or resubmit an event for execution.

Note: To allow administrators to cancel or resubmit an event, you must configure View Submitted Tasks to display the Cancel and Resubmit Events buttons. When you configure the task, you can specify which administrators can cancel and resubmit events. For more information on cancelling and resubmitting events, see Customize the View Submitted Tasks Tab (see page 539).

In progress

Displayed when any of the following occurs:

- Workflow or pre-events are initiated, in progress, or approved
- CA Identity Manager is executing the event
- CA Identity Manager executes post events

You can cancel an event in this state.

Rejected

Displayed when CA Identity Manager rejects an event that is part of the workflow. You can resubmit a rejected event.

Cancelled

Displayed when you cancel any of the events in progress. You can resubmit a cancelled event.

Completed

Displayed when an event is completed.

Failed

Displayed when CA Identity Manager encounters an exception during execution of an event. You can resubmit a cancelled event.

Note: You cannot resubmit a secondary event until the primary event is in the completed state.

Scheduled

Displayed when the event is scheduled to execute at a later date. You can cancel an event in this state.

Audited

Displayed when the current event is audited.

Customize the View Submitted Tasks Tab

You can customize the View Submitted Tasks tab as follows:

- Specify a different task name and tag.
- Change the default display properties. As installed, users see a search screen where they can enter criteria that determine the tasks that appear in the tab. You can configure the tab to automatically display the submitted tasks for a current day, preventing users from having to enter search criteria.
- Determine whether audit events appear in the Task Details page.
- Add an additional column to the task display.
- Specify the criteria for cancelling or resubmitting tasks and events.

Note: Certain task and event details may include data, such as salaries or passwords, that should not be displayed in clear text in the View Submitted Tasks tab. You can hide those attributes by specifying data classification parameters when you define the attributes in the directory.xml file. For more information about the directory.xml file, see the *Configuration Guide*.

You can configure the View Submitted Tasks tab by modifying the corresponding admin task.

To configure the View Submitted Tasks tab

1. Click Roles and Tasks, Admin Tasks, Modify Admin Tasks.

   The Select Admin Task page appears.

2. Select Name or Category in the Search Admin Task where field, enter the string you want to search, and click Search.

   CA Identity Manager displays the admin tasks that satisfy the search criteria.

3. Select View Submitted Tasks, and click Select.

   CA Identity Manager displays the task details for the View Submitted Tasks admin task.

4. Click the Tabs tab.

   The tabs that are used for View Submitted Tasks tab are displayed.

5. Click the right arrow icon to edit the Submitted Tasks tab.

   The tab details appear.

6. Edit the fields to customize the View Submitted Tasks tab as needed. See Configuration Settings for the Submitted Tasks tab (see page 540).

Configuration Settings for the View Submitted Tasks Tab

Use the following fields to change the appearance and functionality of the View Submitted Tasks tab.

Name

Defines the name of the task.

Tag

Defines a unique identifier for the task. It is used in URLs, web services or properties files. It must consist of letters, numbers, or underscores, beginning with a letter or underscore.

Hide Tab

Identifies that the tab is visible to the users, but will not be executed. If you select this option, CA Identity Manager will display an error to the users.

Show task lists on load

Displays the tasks that have been submitted for the current day.

Note: If you have enabled this option, users clicking on View Submitted Tasks will directly see the tasks that were submitted on the same day.

Show audit events

Specifies if audited events are included in tasks in the View Submitted Tasks page.

Allow custom column

Indicates that you can append a custom column to the tasks table that you can view from the View Submitted Tasks tab and the User History tab. For example, you can append a column "User ID" to the tasks table that is displayed on the User History tab.

Custom column heading

Indicates the display name of the custom column.

Custom column attribute

Indicates the attribute that will be used to populate the custom column in the tasks table. For example, if you are searching for tasks that are performed on employees of an organization, you can append an organization column that displays the organization for each of the employees.

Cancel Tasks and Events

Identifies the criteria for canceling tasks or events. You can set the scope for this field by selecting one of the following options:

Task creator must be current user

Identifies that you can cancel or resubmit tasks or events that you have created.

Task creator must be in scope

Identifies that you can cancel or resubmit tasks that have been initiated by other users who match the user scope rules for the admin role that gives you access to the tab.

For example, you received the User Manager role, which includes View Submitted Tasks, because you met the criteria in a membership rule that includes scope over all users in the Employee organization. You can cancel or resubmit tasks that are submitted by all users in the Employee organization.

No restrictions

Identifies that any user can cancel or resubmit a task or event.

Not allowed

Specifies that a task or event cannot be cancelled or resubmitted.

Resubmit Tasks and Events

Identifies the criteria for resubmitting a task or event. You can set the scope of this field by selecting one of the following options:

Task creator must be current user

Identifies that you can cancel or resubmit tasks or events that you have created.

Task creator must be in scope

Identifies that you can cancel or resubmit tasks that have been initiated by other users who match the user scope rules for the admin role that gives you access to the tab.

For example, you received the User Manager role, which includes View Submitted Tasks, because you met the criteria in a membership rule that includes scope over all users in the Employee organization. You can cancel or resubmit tasks that are submitted by all users in the Employee organization.

No restrictions

Identifies that any user can cancel or resubmit a task or event.

Not allowed

Specifies that a task or event cannot be cancelled or resubmitted.

User History Tab

The User History tab allows you to view tasks that are related to a user. The task details that are displayed in this tab can also be viewed in the View Submitted Tasks tab.

Note: You cannot add this tab to create tasks, such as Create User.

You can use this tab to view a history of the following tasks:

- **Tasks performed on the user**

  Displays all the tasks that are performed on the selected user.

- **Tasks performed by the user**

  Displays all the tasks that are performed by the selected user.

- **Workflow approvals by the user**

  Displays all the tasks that the user has approved as part of a workflow.

Note: The type of tasks that you can view in this tab depend on the tab's configuration. Customize the User History Tab (see page 543) provides more information.

Search Attributes for Viewing User History

To review tasks that have been submitted for processing, you can use the search feature in View Submitted Tasks. You can search for tasks based on the following criteria:

Task Name

Identifies the task name as the search criteria. You can refine the search by specifying conditions such as equals, contains, starts with, or ends with the value of the Where Task Name field. For example, you can specify the search criteria, task name equals Create User by selecting the equals condition, and entering Create User in the text field.

Task Status

Identifies task status as the search criteria. You can select the task status by enabling Where task status equals, and selecting the condition. You can further refine the search based on the following conditions:

- Completed
- In Progress
- Failed
- Rejected
- Partially Completed
- Cancelled
- Scheduled

Note: See Task Status Description (see page 536) for more information.

Task Priority

Identifies task priority as the search criteria. You can select the task priority by enabling Where task priority equals, and selecting the condition. You can further refine the search based on the following conditions:

Low

Specifies that you can search for tasks that have a low priority.

Medium

Specifies that you can search for tasks that have a medium priority.

High

Specifies that you can search for tasks that have a high priority.

Date range

Identifies the dates between which you want to search submitted tasks. You must provide the From and To dates.

Customize the User History Tab

Administrators can customize the User History tab as follows:

- Specify a different task name and tag.
- Change the default display properties. By default, users can enter criteria that determines which tasks appear in the tab. Administrators can configure the tab to display the tasks for a current day automatically, preventing users from having to enter search criteria.

- Determine whether audit events appear in the Task Details page.
- Add a column to the task display.
- Specify the criteria for canceling or resubmitting tasks and events.

Follow these steps:

1. Navigate to Roles and Tasks, Admin Tasks, Manage Admin Tasks.

   The Select Admin Task page appears.

2. Select Name or Category in the Search Admin Task where field, enter the string you want to search, and click Search.

   CA Identity Manager displays the admin tasks that satisfy the search criteria.

3. Select the task that includes the User History tab, and click Select.

   CA Identity Manager displays the task details for the admin task.

4. Click the Tabs tab.

5. Click the Edit icon next to the User History tab.

   The tab details appear.

6. Edit the fields to customize the User History tab.

Configuration Settings for the User History Tab

Use the following fields to change the appearance and functionality of the User History tab.

Name

Defines the name of the task.

Tag

Defines a unique identifier for the task. It is used in URLs, web services or properties files. It must consist of letters, numbers, or underscores, beginning with a letter or underscore.

Hide Tab

Identifies that the tab is visible to the users, but will not be executed. If you select this option, CA Identity Manager will display an error to the users.

Show task lists on load

Displays the tasks that have been submitted for the current day.

Note: If you have enabled this option, users clicking on View Submitted Tasks will directly see the tasks that were submitted on the same day.

Show audit events

Specifies if audited events are included in tasks in the View Submitted Tasks page.

Allow custom column

Indicates that you can append a custom column to the tasks table that you can view from the View Submitted Tasks tab and the User History tab. For example, you can append a column "User ID" to the tasks table that is displayed on the User History tab.

Custom column heading

Indicates the display name of the custom column.

Custom column attribute

Indicates the attribute that will be used to populate the custom column in the tasks table. For example, if you are searching for tasks that are performed on employees of an organization, you can append an organization column that displays the organization for each of the employees.

Cancel Tasks and Events

Identifies the criteria for canceling tasks or events. You can set the scope for this field by selecting one of the following options:

Task creator must be current user

Identifies that you can cancel or resubmit tasks or events that you have created.

Task creator must be in scope

Identifies that you can cancel or resubmit tasks that have been initiated by other users who match the user scope rules for the admin role that gives you access to the tab.

For example, you received the User Manager role, which includes View Submitted Tasks, because you met the criteria in a membership rule that includes scope over all users in the Employee organization. You can cancel or resubmit tasks that are submitted by all users in the Employee organization.

No restrictions

Identifies that any user can cancel or resubmit a task or event.

Not allowed

Specifies that a task or event cannot be cancelled or resubmitted.

Resubmit Tasks and Events

Identifies the criteria for resubmitting a task or event. You can set the scope of this field by selecting one of the following options:

Task creator must be current user

Identifies that you can cancel or resubmit tasks or events that you have created.

Task creator must be in scope

Identifies that you can cancel or resubmit tasks that have been initiated by other users who match the user scope rules for the admin role that gives you access to the tab.

For example, you received the User Manager role, which includes View Submitted Tasks, because you met the criteria in a membership rule that includes scope over all users in the Employee organization. You can cancel or resubmit tasks that are submitted by all users in the Employee organization.

No restrictions

Identifies that any user can cancel or resubmit a task or event.

Not allowed

Specifies that a task or event cannot be cancelled or resubmitted.

Show Tasks

Determines the tasks that appear in the User History tab.

Tasks performed on the user

Displays all the tasks that are performed on the selected user.

Tasks performed by the user

Displays all the tasks that are performed by the selected user.

Workflow approvals by the user

Displays all the tasks that the user has approved as part of a workflow.

The View User Activity Task

User activity is a history of tasks that involve a specific user. Administrators can use the View User Activity task to track the following user information:

- Tasks performed on the user
- Tasks performed by the user
- Workflow approvals performed by the user

To view user activity

1. Navigate to Users, Manage Users, View User Activity.

   The Select User screen appears.

2. Search for a user and click Select.

   The View User Activity screen appears.

Note: For more information on the user activity displayed, see the User Console Online Help.

Cleanup Submitted Tasks

With each task submitted, the runtime performance of tasks and events slows as the task persistence database grows. The garbage collecting of stored procedures mitigates the potential for performance problems or system outages due to the task persistence database running out of storage space. The ability to archive the tasks, gives the administrator the ability to view both current task and event information, as well as tasks and events that have been deleted.

In the User Console, CA Identity Manager administrators can schedule jobs to automatically perform garbage collection and archive on a recurring basis.

Recurrence Tab

Use this tab to schedule your job. The fields in this tab are as follows:

Execute now

Runs the job immediately.

Schedule new job

Schedules a new job.

Modify existing job

Specifies that you want to modify a job that already exists.

Note: This field appears only if a job has already been scheduled for this task.

Job Name

Specifies the name of the job you want to create or modify.

Time Zone

Specifies the server time zone.

Note: If your time zone is different from the server's time zone, a drop-down box is displayed so you can select either your time zone or the server's time zone when scheduling a new job. You cannot change the time zone when modifying an existing job.

Daily schedule

Specifies that the job runs every certain number of days.

Every (number of days)

Defines how many days between job runs.

Weekly schedule

Specifies that the job runs on a specific day or days and time during a week.

Day of Week

Specifies the day or days of the week the job runs.

Monthly schedule

Specifies a day of week or day of month that the job runs on a monthly basis.

Yearly schedule

Specifies a day of week or day of month that the job runs on a yearly basis.

Advanced schedule

Specifies additional scheduling information.

Cron Expression

For information about filling out this field, see the following:

http://quartz-scheduler.org/api/2.1.0/org/quartz/CronExpression.html

Execution Time

Specifies the time of day, in 24-hour format, that the job is run. For example, 14:15.

Execute a Job Now

To execute a job immediately, use the Cleanup Submitted Tasks wizard.

Follow these steps:

1. Navigate to System, Cleanup Submitted Tasks.

   The Recurrence step of the wizard appears.

2. Select Execute Now and Next.

   The Cleanup Submitted Tasks step of the wizard appears.

3. Enter the minimum age, archive, audit timeout, time limit, and task limit information and click Finish.

   The job is submitted immediately.

Schedule a New Job

To schedule a new job, use the Cleanup Submitted Tasks wizard.

Follow these steps:

1. Navigate to System, Cleanup Submitted Tasks.

   The Recurrence step appears.

2. Select Schedule a new job, enter the job name and scheduling information for the job and click Next.

   The Cleanup Submitted Tasks step appears.

3. Enter the minimum age, archive, audit timeout, time limit, and task limit information and click Finish.

   The new job is scheduled.

Modify an Existing Job

To modify an existing job, use the Cleanup Submitted Tasks wizard.

Follow these steps:

1. Navigate to System, Clean Up Submitted Tasks.

   The Recurrence step appears.

2. Select Modify an existing job and choose an existing job, modify the scheduling information, and click Next.

   The Cleanup Submitted Tasks step appears.

3. Modify the minimum age, archive, audit timeout, time limit, and task limit information and click Finish.

   The existing job is modified.

Delete a Recurring Task

To delete a recurring task, follow this procedure.

Follow these steps:

1. Navigate to System, Select Delete Recurring Task.
2. Select the task you want to delete.
3. Click Submit.

Cleanup Submitted Tasks Tab

Use this tab to specify the minimum age, archive, audit timeout, time limit, and task limit of the task. Click Finish once you have completed all required fields. The fields in this tab are as follows:

Minimum Age

Specifies the minimum age of tasks that are in a final state (Completed, Failed, Rejected, Cancelled, or Aborted) to be cleaned up. For example, if 1 month is specified, any tasks that have reached a final state in the last month are retained. Any tasks that have reached a final state more than a month ago are subject to cleanup and archiving.

This is a required field.

Archive

Backs up tasks to the archive database before deleting them from the runtime database.

Once the job is run, if archive is selected, the data is committed to the archive database and removed from the runtime task persistence database. Data is not removed until a successful commit to the archive database happens.

Audit Timeout

Specifies the length of time before tasks in the audit state are subject to cleanup. Tasks in the audit state are not considered to be in a final state until this length of time has elapsed. Tasks in the audit state have not been submitted

Time Limit

Limits cleanup to a specific amount of time.

Task Limit

Limits cleanup to a specific number of tasks.

Delete Recurring Tasks

When a task no longer needs to be run on a recurring basis, the CA Identity Manager administrator has the ability to delete the task. Once the task has been deleted, garbage collection and archiving is not performed for that task.

All tasks scheduled using the Cleanup Submitted Tasks:Recurrence wizard are listed on this page and the CA Identity Manager administrator can choose which tasks to delete.

Note: The tasks are still present in the database, only the scheduling recurrence is deleted.

Configure Enterprise Log Manager Connection

Use this screen to manage newly added CA User Activity Reporting (CA UAR) connection tasks.

Note: CA Enterprise Log Manager has been renamed. It is now called CA UAR.

The fields on this screen are listed below:

Connection Name

Specifies the unique name used for the single CA UAR connection managed object.

This is a read-only field.

Description

Describes the CA UAR connection.

Host Name

Specifies the CA UAR server hostname or IP address.

This is a required field.

Port #

Specifies the CA UAR server connection port.

Default: 52520

This is a required field.

Certificate Authority Signed SSL Certificate

When checked, specifies a strict SSL certificate check when connecting to a CA UAR server.

If you have a self-signed SSL certificate, for example one installed with CA UAR by default, this check box must not be selected since the trusted path to the root certificate authority does not exist.

Certificate Name

Specifies the name of the CA UAR certificate to use for authentication.

This is a required field.

Certificate Password

Specifies the CA UAR password.

This is a required field.

Attribute

Not supported. Version is retrieved on an attempt to save connection information as a test.

Delete Enterprise Log Manager Connection

Select a connection from the list and click Delete. The CA UAR connection is deleted.

Manage Secret Keys

Use Secret Keys to manage dynamic keys that encrypt or decrypt data. If you suspect that a user gained unauthorized access to a key, you can change the password for the keystore. The keystore is the database that stores secret keys. Once you change this password, CA Identity Manager re-encrypts the values of the keys.

Each environment has a set of dynamic keys and a keystore password. If environments share a user directory, use the same dynamic keys and keystore password for each environment.

Keystore passwords are encrypted using keys embedded in encryption code or the parameters that are entered during installation of the CA Identity Manager server. In a cluster, all nodes share the values for dynamic keys and the keystore password.

Encryption operations use the latest dynamic key for the correspondent algorithm and environment. Decryption operations check if a Key ID exists in the encrypted data, so that the right key is used. The Encrypted Text Formats section of the *Configuration Guide* provides more details.

Follow these steps:

1. Enter or modify the password to the Keystore.
2. Click Add a Key if you need another key.
3. Select an algorithm.
4. Enter a password for the key.

   For PBE and RC2, the maximum key length is 128 bytes.

   For AES, the valid key sizes are 16, 24, and 32 bytes.
5. Click Submit.
6. If you modified the Keystore Password, click Submit.

   CA Identity Manager encrypts the values of the keys again.

Chapter 20: Task Persistence

This section contains the following topics:

Automated Task Persistence Garbage Collection and Archiving (see page 555)
Recurrence Tab (see page 556)
Cleanup Submitted Tasks Tab (see page 557)
Execute a Job Now (see page 558)
Schedule a New Job (see page 558)
Modify an Existing Job (see page 559)
Delete a Recurring Task (see page 559)
How to Migrate the Task Persistence Database (see page 559)

Automated Task Persistence Garbage Collection and Archiving

In this release, an administrator is able to schedule and modify jobs with specific parameters using the Cleanup Submitted Tasks task to clean up and archive task and event information in the task persistence database and also delete these recurring tasks as needed.

From the System Tab, you can launch a wizard by selecting Cleanup Submitted Tasks. From there, the wizard walks you through setting up and scheduling jobs and whether or not to archive the data. You can also choose to delete the recurring jobs when needed by selecting Delete Recurring Tasks from the System Tab.

By scheduling the tasks to clean up and archive task data, the potential for performance problems or system outages are greatly reduced. With the archive feature, you can back up the tasks to the archive database before deleting them from the runtime database. If you need to go back and view these deleted tasks, select the Search the archive check box on View Submitted Tasks to search and view a list of all tasks that have been deleted and archived.

Recurrence Tab

Use this tab to schedule your job. The fields in this tab are as follows:

Execute now

Runs the job immediately.

Schedule new job

Schedules a new job.

Modify existing job

Specifies that you want to modify a job that already exists.

Note: This field only appears if a job has already been scheduled for this task.

Job Name

Specifies the name of the job you want to create or modify.

Time Zone

Specifies the server time zone.

Note: If your time zone is different from the server's time zone, a drop-down box is displayed so you can select either your time zone or the server's time zone when scheduling a new job. You cannot change the time zone when modifying an existing job.

Weekly schedule

Specifies that the job is run on a specific day or days and time during a week.

Advanced schedule

Specifies additional scheduling information.

Day of Week

Specifies the day or days of the week the job is run.

Execution Time

Specifies the time of day, in 24-hour format, the job is run. For example, 14:15.

Cron Expression

For information on filling out this field, see the following:

http://www.quartz-scheduler.org/documentation/quartz-2.1.x/tutorials/crontrigger

Note: This field appears when Advanced schedule is selected.

More Information

Delete a Recurring Task (see page 550)
Schedule a New Job (see page 549)
Modify an Existing Job (see page 550)
Execute a Job Now (see page 549)

Cleanup Submitted Tasks Tab

Use this tab to specify the minimum age, archive, audit timeout, time limit, and task limit of the task. Click Finish once you have completed all required fields. The fields in this tab are as follows:

Minimum Age

Specifies the minimum age of tasks that are in a final state (Completed, Failed, Rejected, Cancelled, or Aborted) to be cleaned up. For example, if 1 month is specified, any tasks that have reached a final state in the last month are retained. Any tasks that have reached a final state more than a month ago are subject to cleanup and archiving.

This is a required field.

Archive

Backs up tasks to the archive database before deleting them from the runtime database.

Once the job is run, if archive is selected, the data is committed to the archive database and removed from the runtime task persistence database. Data is not removed until a successful commit to the archive database happens.

Audit Timeout

Specifies the length of time before tasks in the audit state are subject to cleanup. Tasks in the audit state are not considered to be in a final state until this length of time has elapsed. Tasks in the audit state have not been submitted

Time Limit

Limits cleanup to a specific amount of time.

Task Limit

Limits cleanup to a specific number of tasks.

Execute a Job Now

To execute a job immediately, use the Cleanup Submitted Tasks wizard.

Follow these steps:

1. Navigate to System, Cleanup Submitted Tasks.

   The Recurrence step of the wizard appears.

2. Select Execute Now and Next.

   The Cleanup Submitted Tasks step of the wizard appears.

3. Enter the minimum age, archive, audit timeout, time limit, and task limit information and click Finish.

   The job is submitted immediately.

Schedule a New Job

To schedule a new job, use the Cleanup Submitted Tasks wizard.

Follow these steps:

1. Navigate to System, Cleanup Submitted Tasks.

   The Recurrence step appears.

2. Select Schedule a new job, enter the job name and scheduling information for the job and click Next.

   The Cleanup Submitted Tasks step appears.

3. Enter the minimum age, archive, audit timeout, time limit, and task limit information and click Finish.

   The new job is scheduled.

Modify an Existing Job

To modify an existing job, use the Cleanup Submitted Tasks wizard.

Follow these steps:

1. Navigate to System, Clean Up Submitted Tasks.

   The Recurrence step appears.

2. Select Modify an existing job and choose an existing job, modify the scheduling information, and click Next.

   The Cleanup Submitted Tasks step appears.

3. Modify the minimum age, archive, audit timeout, time limit, and task limit information and click Finish.

   The existing job is modified.

Delete a Recurring Task

To delete a recurring task, follow this procedure.

Follow these steps:

1. Navigate to System, Select Delete Recurring Task.
2. Select the task you want to delete.
3. Click Submit.

How to Migrate the Task Persistence Database

In previous releases, migration was done 'on the fly' and using the Management Console. A command line migration tool has been provided to remove performance bottlenecks when migrating large amount of tasks. You can also fine tune your migration to a specific environment, state of the task, and the tasks that were created and run during a specific date range. The command line tool, runmigration is located in the following folder:

```
admin_tools/tools/tpmigration
```

In order to migrate the task persistence database, you must do the following:

1. Update the tpmigration125.properties file
2. Set the JAVA_HOME variable.
3. Run the runmigration tool.

Update the tpmigration125.properties File

To set up the task persistence database migration, you must update the tpmigration.properties file with the object store and task persistence information including the store values. The tpmigration125.properties file is located in the following location:

<IAM suite folder>/tools/tpmigration/com/ca/tp/migratetpto125

To set up migration, complete the following information in the properties file:

```
############################################################
# The object store is required to obtain the environment details.
############################################################
os.db.hostname=<hostname>
os.db.dbname=<database-name or SID>
os.db.username=<db user name>
os.db.password=<db user's password>
os.db.port=<db port number>
os.db.dbType=<type of the database.  For ex. for SQL server sql2005 and for oracle
'oracle'>

############################################################
# Task persistence data where the old and new tables are.
############################################################
tp.db.hostname=<hostname>
tp.db.dbname=<database-name or SID>
tp.db.username=<db user name>
tp.db.password=<db user's password>
tp.db.port=<db port number>
tp.db.dbType=<type of the database.  For ex. for SQL server sql2005 and for oracle
'oracle'>
```

Set the JAVA_HOME Variable

In order for the runmigration tool to run properly, you must make sure the environment variable JAVA_HOME is set.

Run the runmigration Tool

To start the migration, use the following procedure.

From a command line

1. Run the runmigration tool.

   For windows:

   ```
   runmigration.bat
   ```

   For UNIX:

   ```
   runmigration.sh
   ```

2. Enter the following information:

   - The Environment protected Alias ('all' for all environments).

     Note: If you do not specify all, only one environment can be entered.

   - The task state.
     Note: If you do not specify all, only one task state can be entered.
   - The CA Identity Manager version to migrate from (1-8.x, 2-12.0).
   - Do you want to specify a date range for the tasks to be migrated (y/n).

     Note: If you choose 'y', you must enter the following:

     - Enter the Start Date (mm/dd/yy)
     - Enter the End Date (mm/dd/yy)

   The migration starts.

After the migration completes, the status indicates how many tasks were migrated.

Index

<

<% %> HTML tag extension • 366
<%= %> HTML tag extension • 366

A

ACCESSROLE object type • 368
ACCESSTASK object type • 368
account synchronization
  about • 234
Actions on Apply/Remove policies • 432, 435
Active Directory
  creating task screens • 61
  sAMAccountName requirements • 62
add() • 368
Add/Remove Action • 25
ADMIN notification rule • 368
admin tasks
  Active Directory considerations • 61
  inserting into email • 380
administrators
  inserting into email • 368, 380
ADMINROLE object type • 368
ADMINTASK object type • 368
API
  Email Template • 368
  inheriting methods from CA Identity Manager API • 380
application functions and external tasks • 63
Apply Once setting • 431
approval status in email • 368
APPROVAL_STATUS_APPROVED • 368
APPROVAL_STATUS_REJECTED • 368
Approved template • 362
  retrieving information for • 368

B

_bcc email template object • 368

C

CA Identity Manager
  email template objects • 368
_cc email template object • 368
CertificationNonCertifiedActionCompletedNotification.tmpl • 362
CertificationNonCertifiedActionPendingNotification.tmpl • 362
CertificationRequiredFinalNotification.tmpl • 362
CertificationRequiredNotification.tmpl • 362
CertificationRequiredReminderNotification.tmpl • 362
Certify Employee.tmpl • 362
commonattribute
  in User Manager Notification Adapter • 368
Completed template • 362
  retrieving information for • 368
compliance check box
  in identity policy sets • 430
configuring
  password composition requirements • 99
context information
  events • 368
  tasks • 368
CreateProvisioningUserNotificationEvent.tmpl • 362
customizing CA Identity Manager
  email generation • 360
  email templates • 365

D

defaultEvent.tmpl • 362
defaultTask.tmpl • 362
deploying email templates • 383
description
  dynamic groups • 146
  nested groups • 148
  parent groups • 148
  static groups • 145
dynamic email messages • 365
dynamic groups
  description • 146
  example • 150

E

email notifications
  about • 345
  Email Template API • 368
  enabling for a task • 360
  enabling for an event • 360
  enabling for the environment • 360
  generated from templates • 362

when generated • 345
Email Template API • 368
inheriting CA Identity Manager API methods • 380
email templates
about • 365
Approved template • 362
changing the From value • 368
Completed template • 362
contents • 362
customizing • 365
default • 362, 383
deploying • 383
elements • 366
Email Template API • 368
event states • 362
Java output stream • 382
JavaScript • 366
location • 362
names • 384
notification rules • 368
objects • 368
Pending template • 362
Rejected template • 362
sets of • 383
specifying for an environment • 384
tag extensions • 366
variables • 366
email.properties • 368
emailTemplates directory • 362, 383
_encoding email template object • 368
_eventContextInformation email template object • 368
events
context information for email • 368
inserting into email • 368
states, and email templates • 362
triggering email notifications • 360
examples
identity policy sets • 443
ExposedEventContextInformation class • 368
ExposedEventContextInformation interface • 368
ExposedTaskContextInformation interface • 368

F

ForgottenPassword.tmpl • 362

G

getAdminFriendlyName() • 368
getAdministrator() • 368, 380
getAdminName() • 368
getAdminTask() • 368, 380
getApprovalStatus() • 368
getApprovalTime() • 368
getEventName() • 368
getExposedEventContexts() • 368
getNotifiers() • 368
getObjectOrganizationFriendlyName() • 368
getOrgName() • 368
getPassword() • 368
getPrimaryObjectName() • 368
getPrimaryObjectTypeName() • 368
getSecondaryObjectName() • 368
getSecondaryObjectTypeName() • 368
getTaskFriendlyName() • 368
getTaskName() • 368
GROUP object type • 368
group type and scope in Active Directory • 62

I

identity policies
about • 427
Action on Apply Policy • 435
creating • 430
synchronizing users • 440
identity policy sets
about • 428
about the apply one setting • 431
Action on Apply/Remove Policy settings • 432
creating • 429
defining change actions • 435
defining policy conditions • 432
examples • 443
managing • 439
planning • 428
implicit message objects • 368

J

Java standard output stream • 382
Javadoc reference • 383
JavaScript in email templates • 366
JIAM
cache • 208
time-to-live • 209

M

managerattribute
in User Manager Notification Adapter • 368
ModifyUserEvent.tmpl • 362

N

nested groups
creating • 148
description • 148
example • 150
notification rules • 368
notification templates
See email templates • 365

O

objects for email templates • 368
ORGANIZATION object type • 368
organizations
adding to email • 368
owner rules
for an access role • 514
for an admin role • 33

P

parent groups • 148
description • 148
password policies
composition • 99
password synchronization • 233
passwords
inserting into email • 368
Pending template • 362
retrieving information for • 368
policy conditions
in identity policy sets • 432
primary objects in email • 368

R

Rejected template • 362
retrieving information for • 368

S

secondary objects in email • 368
Self Registration.tmp • 362
session pooling • 209
standard output stream • 382
static groups
creating • 145
description • 145
example • 150
_subject email template object • 368
Synchronize User task • 442

T

tags for email templates • 366
task screens
Active Directory considerations • 61
adding sAMAccountName • 62
_taskContextInformation email template object • 368
tasks
context information for email • 368
inserting into email • 368
triggering email notifications • 360
_template email template object • 368
templates for email messages
See email templates • 365
_to email template object • 368

U

User Manager Notification Adapter • 368
USER notification rule • 368
USER object type • 368
user synchronization
and identity policies • 440
automatic synchronization • 441
manual synchronization • 442
verifying • 442
USER_MANAGER notification rule • 368
users
synchronizing with identity policies • 440
_util email template object • 368

V

variables in email templates • 366